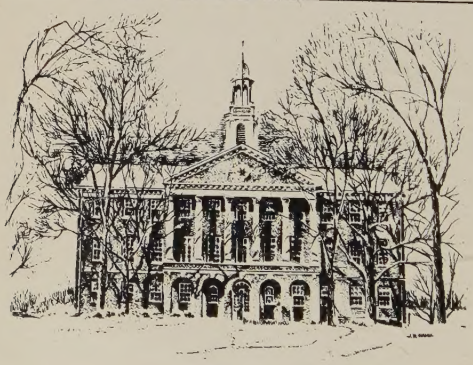
4437

Central Baptist Theological Seminary Library
Seminary Heights
Kansas City, Kansas 66102

Presented by

J.F. KUNCE



Horace W. Graves.

A HISTORY OF EGYPT

VOL. VI.

THE MIDDLE AGES

A

HISTORY OF EGYPT

IN THE MIDDLE AGES

BY

STANLEY LANE-POOLE, M.A., LITT.D.

PROFESSOR OF ARABIC AT TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN

WITH A MAP AND 101 ILLUSTRATIONS

NEW YORK

CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SON

153-157 FIFTH AVENUE

1901

Library
Central Baptist Theological Seminary
Seminary Heights
Kansas City, Kansas 66102

PREFACE

In this volume the History of Egypt in the Middle Ages, from its conquest by the Saracens in 640 to its annexation by the Ottoman Turks in 1517, is for the first time related in a continuous narrative apart from the general history of the Moḥammadan caliphate. In compressing the events of nearly nine centuries into a single volume, many interesting subjects are of necessity treated very briefly, but the list of authorities at the head of each chapter will enable the student to obtain fuller details, especially if he is acquainted with Arabic.

Besides the works thus cited, I am particularly indebted to M. Max van Berchem, not only for permission to reproduce his photographs of inscriptions, but for his invaluable assistance in preparing the lists of inscriptions which precede each chapter, for which he kindly sent me the proof-sheets of the forthcoming volume of his *Matériaux pour un Corpus Inscriptionum Arabicarum*, and also notes of the Mamlūk inscriptions he had collected in Syria. I have also to thank my colleagues Professor R. H. Charles and Professor J. B. Bury for their help in reference to the Ethiopic and Byzantine sources for the history of the Arab conquest ; and M. P. Casanova and M. Herz Bey for the use of some of the illustrations.

S. L.-P.

Trinity College, Dublin,
December 18th, 1900

83142

CONTENTS

CHAP.		PAGE
I.	The Arab Conquest, 639–641	1
II.	A Province of the Caliphate, 641–868	14
	Tables of Governors and Chief Ministers	45
III.	Ṭūlūn and Ikhshīd, 868–969	59
IV.	The Shī'a Revolution, 969	92
	Table of Alleged Descent of Fāṭimid Caliphs	116
V.	The Fāṭimid Caliphs, 969–1094	117
VI.	The Attack from the East, 969–1171	158
VII.	Saladin, 1169–1193	190
VIII.	Saladin's Successors (the Ayyūbids), 1193–1250	212
	Table of the Ayyūbid Dynasties	212
IX.	The First Mamlūks, 1250–1279	242
X.	The House of Ḳalā'ūn, 1279–1382	276
XI.	The Circassian Mamlūks, 1382–1517	323
	Index	359

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
1.	Mosque of 'Amr at Fusṭāṭ	16
2.	Glass weight of Osāma b. Zeyd [A.D. 720]	25
3.	Glass stamp of 'Obeydallāh b. el-Ḥabḥāb, dated 729	27
4.	Glass weight of el-Ḳāsim b. 'Obeydallāh, 730	29
5.	Glass weight of 'Abd-el-Melik b. Yezīd, 750	29
6.	Glass weight of Yezīd b. Ḥātim, 761	32
7.	Glass weight of Moḥammad b. Sa'īd, 769	33
8.	Glass weight of el-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ, 785	34
9.	Dīnār (gold coin) of caliph el-Ma'mūn, struck at Miṣr, (Fusṭāṭ), 814	37
10.	Glass weight of Ashnās, 834 ff.	38
11.	Section of Nilometer on island of Rōḍa, 9th century	62
12.	Mosque of Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn at Cairo, 877-79	64
13.	Founder's inscription in mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, 879	67
14.	Dīnār of Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn, Miṣr, 881	68
15.	Title-deed (on wood) to a shop, 882	70
16.	Dīnār of Hārūn b. Khumāraweyh, Miṣr, 904	76
17.	Dīnār of Moḥammad el-Ikhshīd, Palestine, 943	84
18.	Dirhem of Abū-l-Ḳāsim b. el-Ikhshīd, Damascus, 949	86
19.	Dīnār of Abū-l-Ḳā-im b. el-Ikhshīd, Miṣr, 950	88
20.	Dīnār of el-Mo'izz, Miṣr, 969	101
21.	¼-Dīnār of el-Mo'izz, Palestine, 974	106
22.	Door of el-Azhar mosque, 972	110
23.	Dīnār of el-'Azīz, Miṣr, 976	119
24.	¼-Dīnār of el-Ḥākim, Sicily, 1004	124
25.	Dīnār of el-Ḥākim, Miṣr, 1015	127
26.	Glass weight of el-Ḥākim, 1012	129
27.	Mosque of el-Ḥākim, 991-1003	130
28.	Dīnār of eẓ-Ẓāhir, Miṣr, 1030	135
29.	Glass weight of el-Mustanṣir	137
30.	Dīnār of el-Mustanṣir, Miṣr, 1047	138
31.	Inscription of Bedr el-G'emālī in mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, 1077	150
32.	Gate of Zawīla, Cairo, 1091	153
33.	Gate of Victory (Bāb-en-Naṣr), Cairo, 1087	155
34.	Dīnār of el-Musta'lī, Tripolis, 1101	162

FIG.		PAGE
35.	Glass weight of el-Āmir	163
36.	Dīnār of el-Āmir, Ḳūṣ, 1123 or 1125	166
37.	Dīnār of "the expected Imām," Cairo, 1131	167
38.	Glass weight of eẓ-Ẓāfir	171
39.	Dīnār of eẓ-Ẓafir, Miṣr, 1149	172
40.	Glass weight of el-'Āḍid	175
41.	Dīnār of el-'Āḍid, Cairo, 1168	183
42.	Glass weight of caliph el-Mustaḍī, issued by Saladin, 1171	192
43.	Dīnār of Nūr-ed-dīn, issued by Saladin, Cairo, 1173	196
44.	Dīnār of Saladin, Cairo, 1179	200
45.	Citadel of Cairo (drawn in 1798)	201
46.	Saladin's inscription on the Gate of Steps in the Citadel of Cairo, 1183	203
47.	Gate of Steps in Citadel of Cairo, 1183	205
48.	Dirhem (silver coin) of Saladin, Aleppo, 1186	207
49.	Saladin's inscription at church of St. Anne, Jerusalem, 1192	208
50.	Dīnār of el-'Āḍil, Alexandria, 1199	215
51.	Carved border of a sheykh's tomb, 1216	219
52.	Eagle on Citadel of Cairo, probably early 13th century	228
53.	Dīnār of el-Kāmil, Alexandria, 1225	229
54.	Dīnār of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, Cairo, 1239	230
55.	Inscription on tomb of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, 1252	231
56.	Dīnār of queen Sheǧer-ed-durr, Cairo, 1250	255
57.	Dīnār of Aybek, Alexandria, 1256	256
58.	Dīnār of Beybars, Alexandria, 1261	263
59.	Lion of Beybars on boss of mosque door, 1268	264
60.	Tomb-mosque of Ḳalā'ūn, 1284	283
61.	Dīnār of Khalīl, Cairo, date effaced	285
62.	Dīnār of Ketbughā, Cairo, 1294-95	290
63.	Inscription on medresa (college) of en-Nāṣir at Cairo, 1299	293
64.	Arms of a polo-master	302
65.	Bowl of an emīr of en-Nāṣir in the British Museum	303
66.	Inscription in medresa of princess Tatar el-Ḥiǧāziya, at Cairo, 1360	307
67.	Tower in Citadel of Cairo	309
68.	Kursī of en-Nāṣir, 14th century, in the Cairo Museum	311
69.	Mosque of Seng̀ar and Salār, 1323	313
70.	Arms of emīr el-Māridānī, 14th century, from a glass lamp	314
71.	Hall of Columns built by en-Nāṣir in Citadel of Cairo, 1313	315
72.	Arms of emīr Tukuzdemir, from a lamp in the British Museum, 14th century	316
73.	Dīnār of en-Nāṣir, Cairo, 1340	317
74.	Dīnar of sultan Ḥasan, Cairo, 1349	318
75.	Palace of emir Yeshbek at Cairo, 1476, adjoining mosque of sultan Ḥasan	319
76.	Memorial inscription in tomb of sultan Ḥasan, 1384	320
77.	Mosque of sultan Ḥasan, 1362, from the Citadel	321
78.	Arms of an emīr inlaid in ivory and coloured woods	329

FIG.		PAGE
79.	Dīnār of Barḳūḳ, Aleppo, 1385	330
80.	Pulpit (minbar) in tomb-mosque of Barḳūḳ outside Cairo, 1401-11	331
81.	Enamelled glass lamp of Barḳūḳ in Arab Museum at Cairo	333
82.	Dīnār of Faraǧ, Cairo, 1407	334
83.	Kufic inscription of el-Mu'ayyad	335
84.	Dīnār of el-Mu'ayyad, Alexandria, 1415	336
85.	Dīnār of Bars-Bey, Alexandria, 1425	340
86.	Dīnār of Ḳāït-Bey, 1468-96	342
87.	Tomb-mosque of Ḳāït-Bey, 1474	343
88.	Door of mosque of Ḳāït-Bey, 1474	345
89.	Wekāla or caravanserai of Ḳāït-Bey, 1477, near Azhar	346
90.	Arms of Ḳāït-Bey	347
91.	Arms of Ḳāït-Bey, from a lamp	348
92.	Arms of emīr Ezbek on his mosque, 1495	349
93.	Inscription of Tūmān-Bey I in Citadel of Cairo, 1500	350
94.	Sixteenth century house at Rosetta	351
95.	Dīnār of el-Ghūrī, Cairo, 1508	352
96.	Arms of commandant Aḳtūh, c. 1516	353
97.	Bāb-el-Azab, Gate of the Citadel of Cairo, 18th century	354
98.	Altūn of sultan Suleymān of Turkey, Miṣr, 1520	355
99.	Yigirmlik of 'Alī Bey, Miṣr, 1769	356
100.	The Citadel of Cairo in 1859	356
	Plan of Cairo and suburbs in the 12th century	202
	Map of Egypt and adjacent countries	1

*** The coins and glass weights are reproduced from plaster casts of the originals in the British Museum; the inscriptions are from M. Max von Berchem's *Corpus Inscriptionum Arabicarum* (*Mém. de la Miss. archéol. française au Caire* xix., where French translations are given), except fig. 49. which is from his *Inscriptions arabes de Syrie* (*Mém. de l'Institut Egyptien*, 1897); figs. 47 and 67 are from M. Paul Casanova's *Hist. de la Citadelle du Caire* (*Mém. de la Miss. archéol. française au Caire*, vi.); the coats of arms are from Rogers Bey's article in the *Bull. de l'Inst. Egypt.*, 1880, except fig. 92, which is from H. E. Artin Pasha's article on *Trois différentes armoiries du Kait Bay* (*ibid.*); fig. 52 is from an article by Mr. H. C. Kay in the *Journal* of the R. Asiatic Society, N.S., xiv. (1882); figs. 11, 33, 45, and 71 are from the plates of the *Description de l'Egypte*; the rest are from photographs, of which figs. 69, 75, 89 and 94 were kindly supplied by Herz Bey, chief architect of the Commission for the Preservation of Arab Monuments in Egypt.

PRINCIPAL AUTHORITIES

DIED

c. 695 John, Bishop of Nikiu: *Chronique*, ed. & tr. H. Zotenberg (*Notices et Extraits*, xxiv.), Paris, 1883.

871 Ibn-'Abd-el Ḥakam: *Futūḥ Miṣr* (Paris codex 655; cp. *Zeitschr. für Kunde d. Morgenl.* iii., 1840).

889 Ibn-Ḳutayba: ed. F. Wüstenfeld, Göttingen, 1850.

892 El-Bilādhurī: *Liber expugnationis regionum*, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Lugd. Bat., 1866.

923 Eṭ-Ṭabarī: *Annales*, ed. de Goeje et alii, 13 vols., Lugd. Bat. 1879-96.

956 El-Mas'ūdī: *Les Prairies d'or*, Arab. et Fr., ed. Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille, 9 vols., Paris, 1861-1873.

977 'Arīb b. Sa'd el-Ḳurṭubī: *Tabarī continuatus*, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Lugd. Bat., 1897.

1185 William of Tyre: *Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis gestarum* (*Rec. Hist. des Croisades*), Paris, 1844.

1188 Osāma ibn Munkidh: *Kitāb el-I'tibār*; *Vie d'Ousama*, ed. & tr. H. Derenbourg, 3 vols., Paris, 1886-93.

c. 1208 Abū-Ṣāliḥ: *Churches and Monasteries of Egypt*, Arab. and Engl., ed. B. T. A. Evetts, Anecd. Oxoniens., 1895.

1231 'Abd-el-Laṭīf: *Historiæ Ægypti Compendium*, Arab. et Lat., ed. J. White, Oxon., 1800; *Relation de l'Égypte*, tr. S. de Sacy, Paris, 1810.

1233 Ibn-el-Athīr: *Chronicon* (*el-Kāmil*), ed. C. J. Tornberg, 14 vols., Lugd. Bat., 1867-74.

1234 Bahā-ed-dīn ibn Sheddād: *Vita Saladini*, Arab. et Lat., ed. Schultens, Lugd. Bat., 1732; and in *Rec. Hist. des Croisades*, iii., 1884.

1267 Abū-Shāma: *Kitāb er-Rawḍateyn*, 2 vols., Cairo, 1870-1871.

1275 El-Mekīn: *Historia Saracenica*, Arab. et Lat., ed. T. Erpenius, Lugd. Bat., 1625.

1282 Ibn-Khallikān: *Weſayāt el-A'yān*, ed. F. Wüstenfeld, Göttingen, 1835-50; *Biographical Dictionary*, tr. M. de Slane, 4 vols., Paris, 1843-71.

1307 Joinville: *Mémoires*, ed. M. Francisque Michel, Paris, 1881.

1331 Abū-l-Fidā: *Annales Muslemici*, Arab. et Lat., ed. Reiske et Adler, Hafniae, 1788-93.

DIED
1377 Ibn-Baṭūṭa: *Voyages*, Arab. et Fr., ed. C. Defrémery et Sanguinetti, 4 vols., Paris, 1873-9.
1406 Ibn-Khaldūn: *Kitāb el-'Ibar*, 7 vols, Būlāḳ, 1867-8.
1418 El-Ḳalḳashandī: *Die Geographie und Vorwaltung von Aegypten*, tr. F. Wüstenfeld, Göttingen, 1879.
1441 El-Maḳrīzī: *Khiṭaṭ*, 2 vols., Būlāḳ. 1853-4.
,, *Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks*, tr. E. Quatremère, 2 vols., Paris, 1837-45.
1469 Abū-l-Maḥā-ln: *Annales* (*en-Nuǧūm ez-Zāhira*), ed. Juynboll, 3 vols., Lugd. Bat., 1855-61.
1505 Es-Suyūṭī: *Ḥusn el-Moḥāḍara*, 2 vols., Būlāk.
,, *History of the Caliphs*, tr. H. S. Jarrett, Calcutta, 1881.
1524 Ibn-Iyās: *Kitāb Ta'rīkh Miṣr*, Cairo, 1893.

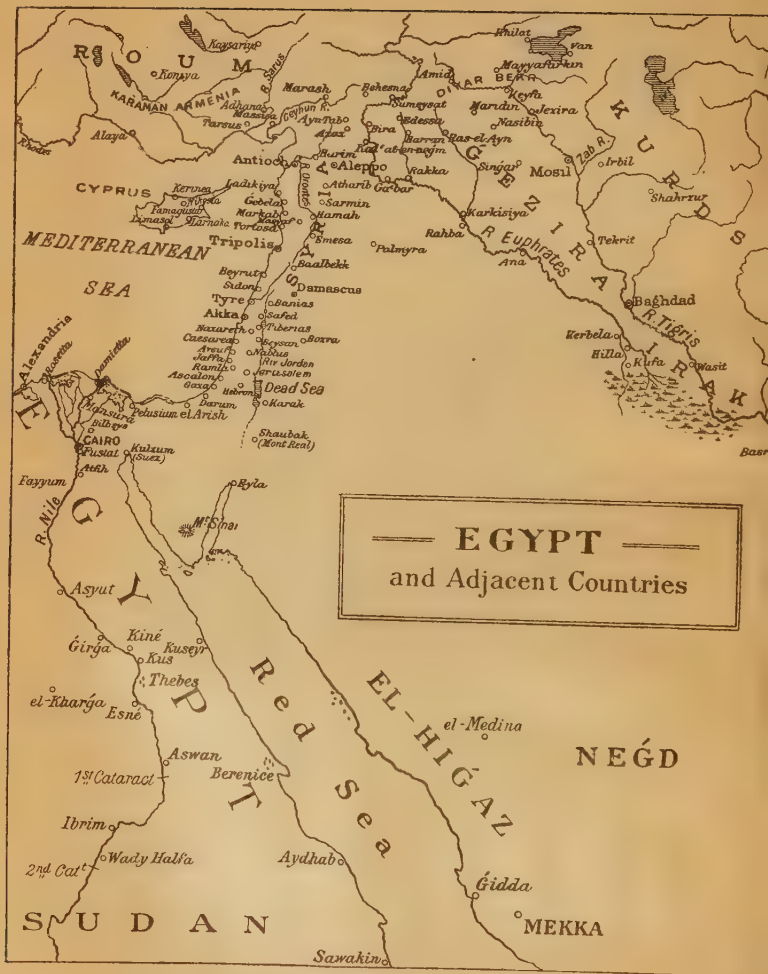
Other authorities are cited in footnotes.

NOTE ON TRANSLITERATION.

The Arabic alphabet is thus represented: أ in the middle of a word by · (as el-Ma·mūn), ب b, ت t, ث th, ج ǵ (English j, but in Lower Egypt pronounced as hard g in "get"), ح ḥ, خ kh, د d, ذ dh (as th in "this"), ر r, ز z, س s, ش sh, ص ṣ, ض ḍ, ط ṭ, ظ ẓ, ع ', غ gh, ف f, ق ḳ, ك k, ل l, م m, ن n, ه h, و w, ى y. The Persian گ is represented by g. The vowels and diphthongs are ـَ a or e (according to the rules of imâla), ـُ u or o, ـِ i; ـَا ā, ـُو ū, ـِى ī; اَوْ aw, اَىْ ey or ay. When a name is repeated the article is often omitted; as El-Ḥākim and Ḥākim. Ibn (son) is abbreviated as b. *D* stands for dīnār, a gold coin worth about half a guinea.

CORRIGENDA

PAGE				
40	*for*	Ghauth	*read*	Ghawth
48	,,	Ḥanḍhala	,,	Ḥanẓala
76	,,	Ḥārūn	,,	Hārūn
85	,,	Ghaṭās	,,	Ghiṭās
105	,,	Hiǵāz	,,	Ḥiǵāz
106	,,	Ṭyy	,,	Ṭayy
111	,,	el-Yāzurī	,,	el-Yāzūrī
129	,,	Ommayyad	,,	Omayyad
148	,,	Dābīk	,,	Debīḳ
151	,,	Amīr	,,	Emīr
155	,,	Aydhāb	,,	ʻAydhāb
160	,,	Hassān	,,	Ḥassān
166	,,	Abū-Nejāḥ	,,	Abū-Neǵāḥ
166	,,	ʻAbdu-el-Meǵīd	,,	ʻAbd-el-Meǵīd
179	,,	Atfīh	,,	Aṭfīḥ
192	,,	Akaba	,,	ʻAḳaba
296	,,	naptha	,,	naphtha
299	,,	Aradus	,,	Antaradus
330	,,	Sarkhab	,,	Sarkhad


EGYPT
and Adjacent Countries
R O U M
ARMENIA
KARAMAN
CYPRUS
MEDITERRANEAN
SEA
Tripolis
Antioch
Aleppo
Damascus
Baalbek
Palmyra
Mosul
Baghdad
Tekrit
Shahrizur
Irbil
Kirkisiya
Rahba
Euphrates
Tigris
Hilla
Kufa
Wasit
Kerbela
Alexandria
Rosetta
Damietta
Cairo
Fusiat
Suez
Fayyum
R. Nile
Asyut
Girga
Kiné
Kuseyr
Kus
Thebes
el-Kharga
Esné
Aswan
1st Cataract
Ibrim
2nd Cat.
Wady Halfa
SUDAN
Red Sea
EL-HIGAZ
NEGD
el-Medina
Aydhab
Gidda
MEKKA
Sawakin
Berenice
Mt. Sinai
Suez
Kaisariya
Konaya
Adjana
Tarsus
Alaya
Rhodes
Marash
Aintab
Sarmin
Mamah
Tortosa
Markab
Gebela
Ladikiya
Karvas
Tripoli
Tyre
Sidon
Beyrut
Banias
Safed
Akka
Tiberias
Nazareth
Caesarea
Nablus
Jaffa
Ramla
Ascalon
Gaza
Jerusalem
Hebron
Dead Sea
Karak
Shaubak
(Mont Real)
Pelusium
el Arish
Baruin
Bilbeis
Tanis
Damietta
Rosetta
Alexandria
Mareotis
Lake
Aleppo
Rurim
Atharib
Gabar
Sumeysat
Gesser
Ora
Barren
Ras el Ayn
Nasibin
Jezira
Mardin
Keyfa
Amida
Diar Bekr
Mayyafarikin
Van
Khilat
Sinjar
Rakka
Zab R.
Euphrates
Tigris
Jordan
Behesna
Ayntab
Adjana
Marash
Jihun R.
Sihun R.
Kurds
Mountains
Ana

A HISTORY OF EGYPT

UNDER THE SARACENS

CHAPTER I

THE ARAB CONQUEST

639—641

Authorities.—John of Nikiu, Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam, el-Bilādhurī, eṭ-Ṭabarī. Later accounts from el-Maḳrīzī, Abū-l-Maḥāsin, es-Suyūṭī.

Mohammad, the prophet of the Arabs, died in 632. In a few years his followers overran Arabia, Syria, and Chaldaea, defeating the forces of the Emperor of Constantinople and the "Chosroes" or Sāsānian king of Persia; and in 639 the Arabs invaded Egypt. The caliph 'Omar yielded with reluctance to the urgent representations of the general, 'Amr ibn el-'Āṣī, and even stipulated that if a letter of recall should reach the army before it entered Egyptian territory, it was to march back to Medīna. The letter was sent, but 'Amr contrived to cross the frontier before opening it, and thus effected his purpose. He had visited Alexandria in his youth, and had never forgotten its wealth. The expedition was arranged whilst the caliph and 'Amr 639 were together near Damascus on their return from

Jerusalem in the autumn of 639, and 'Amr kept the Feast of Sacrifice (10 Dhū-l-Ḥiǵǵa, A.H. 18), 12 Dec., 639, at el-'Arīsh, the frontier town of Egypt.

The invading army mustered 3500 or 4000 men, but was quickly reinforced by a second body of 4000. They were almost all horsemen, armed with lances and
640 swords and bows. The first opposition the Saracens met was at Pelusium (el-Faramā), where the Roman[1] garrison held out for a month, until the success of the besiegers was attained partly through the aid of the Copt or native Egyptian population, who were eager to welcome any prospect of release from the oppression of the eastern empire. The schism definitely opened at the council of Chalcedon in A.D. 451 had established a sharp hostility between the national monophysite or "Jacobite" church of Egypt and the official "Chalcedonian" or "Melekite" church which the emperors of Constantinople supported in Egypt; and the Melekite persecution of the Jacobites, who formed the great bulk of the Egyptians, had alienated whatever trace of loyalty the people might have retained towards their distant sovereigns, and had prepared the way for foreign intervention. Indeed, the Persians had quite lately (616) conquered the country, and had only been ejected by the Romans a few years (626) before the Arab invasion. The Egyptians had served many foreign masters, and had suffered under all, so that a change of rulers signified little, and any change from Byzantine intolerance would probably, in their eyes, be for the better. This widespread disaffection contributed to the easy triumph of the Arabs. It was first seen in the taking of Pelusium, when the patriarch, called by the Arabs "Abū-Miyamīn" (possibly meaning the banished Jacobite patriarch Benjamin), advised the Copts to support the invaders.

The Romans made a second stand at Bilbeys, some thirty miles from Miṣr, where another month was spent

[1] The term Roman is used throughout, in preference to Greek, for the east Roman or Byzantine empire. In Arabic the Byzantines are always called *er-Rūm*; in the sing. *Rūmī*.

in the siege[1]; and after the fall of Bilbeys, 'Amr had again to fight the Romans at Umm-Duneyn, a village or suburb which stood near the present 'Ab'dīn quarter of Cairo. The Saracens were once more successful; but before proceeding further 'Amr appealed to the caliph for more troops, and a second reinforcement was sent, bringing the army up to 12,000 men.[2] Part of this force was on the west bank of the Nile, advancing upon Asyūṭ and Behnesa, and trying to penetrate into the Fayyūm, where they were opposed by Theodosius the dux of the Thebaid, and by the general John of Mārōs; but the main body was on the east bank, posted in the neighbourhood of the city of Miṣr, or "Babylon of Egypt," a northern extension of the ancient Memphis.[3] The city was defended by a large Roman army, and guarded by a strong fortress, rebuilt by Turbo in 116, the remains of

[1] The romantic legend of the defence of Bilbeys by Armenosa, the daughter of the prefect George el-Muḳawḳis, rests only upon the authority of el-Wāḳidī, and cannot be accepted without reserve. It may be read in Mrs. Butcher's *Story of the Church of Egypt*, i. 359, 360, or more fully in Quatremère's *Mémoires sur l'Égypte*, i. 53, 54.

[2] According to another tradition, ez-Zubeyr brought 12,000 men to reinforce 'Amr. The figures cannot be relied on, but the total force of the Arabs was evidently small.

[3] Memphis itself existed, though in decay, at the time of the Arab conquest, but as it is never mentioned by the chroniclers, its inhabited portion must be intended when they speak of "Miṣr." There is much obscurity about this city of Miṣr at this period, which is increased by the word Miṣr being used also to signify Egypt. The Arabic writers speak constantly of Babylon (Babilyūn) as though it were a fortress and nothing else, and there is very little evidence for the independent existence of a city of Babylon or Miṣr apart from the fortress. It is only in John of Nikiu's chronicle that we find a distinction between the taking of Miṣr and the surrender of the fortress. In the sixth century, however, Hierocles and George the Cyprian both mention Memphis, but not Babylon; and there must have been an inhabited city representing the ancient Memphis, and probably forming a more modern and northern extension of it. One would expect to find it on the west bank of the Nile, but all the authorities concur in placing Miṣr on the east bank, in the neighbourhood of the fortress of Babylon. Ṭendūnyās, on the other hand, seems from John of Nikiu's account to have been on the west bank. Memphis was an immense city, and may have extended, with its suburbs of Miṣr and Ṭendūnyās, across the river as far as the fortress of Babylon.

which still stand under the name of Ḳaṣr-esh-Shema', "the castle of the candle." 'Amr divided his forces into three corps, one of which he posted to the north of Babylon, the second was stationed at Ṭendūnyās (apparently a fortified suburb on the west bank to the south-west of Babylon), and the third withdrew northwards to Heliopolis (On, 'Ayn-Shems), in the hope of tempting the Romans out of their fortifications, upon which the other two corps were to fall on their rear or flank. The manoeuvre succeeded. The Romans marched out of their fortifications, and attacked the Saracens at Heliopolis, but, being themselves taken in rear by the other divisions, were routed and driven to the Nile, where they took to their boats and fled down the river. Upon this the Muslims occupied Ṭendūnyās, the garrison of which had perished in the battle, except 300 men who shut themselves up in the fort, whence they retired by boat to Nikiu. The taking of Ṭendūnyās was evidently followed by, or synonymous with, the taking of the whole city of Miṣr, except its citadel, which was blockaded; for John of Nikiu, from whose almost contemporary chronicle this account is taken, mentions no subsequent siege or conquest of the city of Miṣr, but only the later reduction of the fortress.[1] The defeat of the Romans at Heliopolis was so complete that not only Miṣr, the chief city of that part, fell into the hands of the Saracens, but even in the Fayyūm Domentianus, the praeses of Arcadia, secretly escaped from the chief town, deserted the Roman troops scattered about middle Egypt, and hurried down the Nile to Nikiu; whereupon the Arabs took Medīnet-el-Fayyūm, Asyūṭ, and eventually Behnesa, with great slaughter.[1]

[1] In the rubric of John of Nikiu's chronicle the conquest of Miṣr is carefully distinguished from the conquest of the fortress of Babylon. The former is placed in Anno Indictionis XIV., which corresponds to 1 Sept. 640—31 Aug. 641, and the fall of Babylon in XV. The latter date cannot be sustained satisfactorily, but the distinction between the two events, and the emphasis laid on the interval between them, are important. The rubric is the work of the Arabic translator, according to M. Zotenberg, but it may be assumed that he had earlier data to go upon, otherwise he would scarcely have used the Indiction chronology.

The Arabic accounts of the conquest of Miṣr conflict with each other, and with that given above, in many details, but confirm the main fact of the victory at Heliopolis (which must have taken place before the inundation covered the land, i.e., before September), and record the subsequent occupation of Miṣr during the inundation. They add various stories of negotiations, and even entertainments, between the Egyptians and the Arabs, which ended in a formal treaty. We read of a certain Abū-Maryam, a "catholic" (*ǵathalīḳ*) of Miṣr, who joined 'Amr's army, accompanied by a bishop, and endeavoured to arrange terms. 'Amr showed them goodwill; enlarged on the friendly disposition of the late prophet Moḥammad towards the Copts,[1] in virtue of their traditional kinship through Hagar, the Egyptian mother of Ishmael, the ancestor of the prophet; and offered them the usual choice—to embrace Islām or to pay the special poll-tax levied by the conquerors on all non-Muslims. Abū-Maryam and the bishop were anxious that the latter alternative should be accepted; but the Roman commander "Artabūn"[2] would not listen to it. He was killed in attempting to surprise the Saracens by a night attack; the battle of Heliopolis followed; ez-Zubeyr escaladed Miṣr and opened a gate; and the Egyptians sued for peace. The treaty ran as follows, according to the Arab tradition recorded by Ṭabarī: "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful, this is the amnesty which 'Amr ibn el-'Āṣī granted to the people of Miṣr, as to themselves, their religion, their goods, their churches and crosses, their lands and waters: nothing of these shall be meddled with or minished; the Nubians shall not be permitted to dwell among them. And the people of Miṣr, if they enter into this treaty of peace, shall pay the *ǵizya* (poll-tax), when the inundation of their river

[1] For the traditions see Abū-Ṣāliḥ, . 286, and Mr. Evett's notes and references.

[2] Also called by the Arabs el-Mandakūr (or Mandhafūr) ibn Kurkub and in Arabic nicknamed el-A'raǵ or el-U'eyrīǵ, "the viper."

has subsided, fifty thousand thousand.[1] And each one of them is responsible for [acts of violence which] robbers among them may commit. And as for those who will not enter into this treaty the sum of the tax shall be diminished [to the rest] in proportion; but we have no responsibility towards such. If the rise of the Nile is less than usual, the tax shall be reduced in proportion to the decrease. Romans and Nubians who enter into their [the people of Miṣr's] covenant shall be treated in the like manner. And whoso rejects [the treaty] and chooses to go away, he is protected till he reach a place of safety or leave our kingdom. The collection of the taxes shall be by thirds, one third at each time. For [sureties for] this covenant stand the security and warranty of God, and the warranty of His Prophet, and the warranty of the caliph, the commander of the faithful, and the warranty of the believers . . . . Witnessed by ez-Zubeyr, and his sons 'Abdallāh and Moḥammad, and written by Wardān." (Ṭabarī i. 2588.)

The negotiation of this treaty of peace is attributed by most Arabic historians to a certain Girǵis (or G'ureyǵ) or George, son of Menas, el-Muḳawḳis, who has been magnified as the chief ruler of Egypt, and denounced as the supreme traitor to Christianity.[2] At first, indeed, he

[1] This is probably a slip for "pay the poll-tax [of two dīnārs a head] *and* fifty million dirhems in land-tax (*kharāǵ*)," for it would be the land-tax, not the poll-tax, that would be modified in proportion to the fertility dependent upon the extent of the inundation. Ibn-Khaldūn, quoting registers of the latter half of the 8th c., gives the land-tax of Egypt as nearly forty-four million dirhems. Abū-Ṣāliḥ says (f. 22*a*) that 'Amr imposed a yearly tax of 26⅔ dirhems (i.e. two dīnārs) on all, but two dīnārs and three *ardebbs* of wheat on all rich men; in this way the country produced twelve million dīnārs, as the population (he assumes), excluding children and aged men, was six millions. The dīnār, hence-forward generally abbreviated as *D.*, contained rather more gold than our half-sovereign, and may be roughly called a half-guinea.

[2] A "Muḳawḳis" had certainly been in communication with the Arabian prophet in 628, and had sent him two slave-girls, a white mule, a pot of Benḥā honey, and other gifts; one of the damsels, Mary the Copt, of the curly hair, became the Apostle's concubine; but since Muḳawḳis is stated by the Arabic writers to be only the title of the successive Roman governors of Egypt (possibly a corruption of the

opposed the Saracens, but after the fall of Miṣr, during which he and most of the troops are said to have retreated to the opposite island (afterwards called "the Island of the Garden," G'ezīrat-er-Rōḍa), he opened communications with 'Amr, hoping to obtain easier terms if he could manage to conclude a treaty before the inundation subsided, which then hemmed in the Muslims; and peace was made on the basis of a poll-tax of two dīnārs (about a guinea) per head, excluding women and children and aged men, together with a moderate land-tax, and the obligation of three days' hospitality to Muslims—apparently a form of contribution to the keep of the Arab army. The Egyptians accepted these terms, and the Romans were given the choice of acceptance or a retreat to Alexandria.[1] When the

Greek μεγαυχής, "most glorious," as suggested by Karabaček, *Mittheil. aus d. Samml. d. Papyr. Erzherzog Rainer*, i. 1-11), Moḥammad's correspondent may have been a different person from the Muḳawḳis of 640. That 'Amr had relations with a certain "George the prefect" is clear, for John of Nikiu states that, after the conquest of Miṣr and the Fayyūm, 'Amr "sent orders to George the prefect to make a bridge over the canal of Ḳalyūb," to facilitate further conquests in the delta, and adds that "it was then that they [the Egyptians] began to assist the Muslims." This George, who may have been praeses of Augustamnica (Milne, *Egypt under Roman Rule*, 225), was probably George, son of Menas, the Muḳawḳis of the Arab traditions (though they make him the governor of all Egypt, ruling from Alexandria), and his assistance after the taking of Miṣr supplies a clue to the elaborate stories related by the Arabic chroniclers. 'Amr's orders to George imply previous relations, and as some one must have conducted the peace negotiations on the Christian side, and as it was more likely to be an Egyptian than a Roman, there is no improbability in the Arab tradition that el-Muḳawḳis was the negotiator.

[1] Probably it is this treaty that is referred to by Nicephorus, who says (28, ed. Bonn) that the patriarch Cyrus (perhaps the "bishop" of the Arabic traditions) was recalled to Constantinople by the emperor Heraclius, and censured for having agreed to pay tribute to the Muslims. Theophanes (518, ed. Bonn) also mentions a treaty, by which Cyrus agreed to pay 'Amr 120,000 denaria, and did pay this tribute for three years; but he seems to refer to the second treaty on the surrender of Alexandria. In the confused accounts of the Greek writers there is a prevailing idea that the patriarch agreed at an early date to pay tribute to the Arabs. See J. B. Bury, *Later Roman Empire*, ii. 271.

emperor repudiated the treaty, the Muḳawḳis went to 'Amr, and said, though the Romans continued the war, he would stand by his word. He begged three things of the Arab general—that the covenant with the Egyptians should not be broken; that no peace should be made with the Romans until they were all made slaves, as they deserved, and their goods declared spoils; and that, if he died, he might be buried in the church of St. John at Alexandria. 'Amr agreed, and thenceforth most of the Egyptians, or Copts as they may now be called, abetted the Muslims in the war against the Romans, and helped in the transport and supplies.

'Amr's first proceeding after the taking of Miṣr was to make a bridge near the city so as to reopen communications with the west bank. The pontoon also served to arrest the procession of fugitive Romans down the river to Nikiu and Alexandria. Having got his men together, and brought the detachments from the west bank across to the east, he vigorously pressed the siege of the fortress of Babylon, which at length fell, on 9 April, 641.[1]

641 The Arabic historians relate various anecdotes of the siege of Babylon, which are chiefly interesting as representing current traditions as to the impression produced by the invaders upon the Romans and Egyptians. The simplicity of manners, devoutness, and heroic courage of the Arabs are chiefly dwelt upon. For example, it is told how an Arab dismounted one day from his horse to say his appointed prayers, when a party of Romans, richly accoutred, sallied out of the fortress to surprise him. As they drew near, he interrupted his devotions, mounted his horse, and charged upon them. Taken aback by his hardihood, they took to their heels, throwing down their arms and accoutrements in their haste. The Arab took no notice of these spoils, but

[1] This date is John of Nikiu's, who says it was the second day after Easter, though he gives the wrong year, XV. Ind., instead of XIV. (cp. Brooks, *Byz. Ztschr.* iv. 440). It is confirmed by the Persian version of Ṭabarī, which places the fall of Babylon in the month Rabī' II. of A.H. 20 (20 March—17 April, 641), but this is not in the Leyden edition of the Arabic text.

after chasing them into the fortress, quietly returned to the spot where he had been disturbed, and finished his prayers. Again, when the messengers from the Muḳawḳis, after being entertained some days in 'Amr's camp, returned to their master, he asked them to describe the Arabs. They answered, "We found a people who love death better than life, and set humility above pride, who have no desire or enjoyment in this world, who sit in the dust and eat upon their knees, but frequently and thoroughly wash all their members, and humble themselves in prayer: a people in whom the stronger can scarce be distinguished from the weaker, or the master from the slave."

When the fortress of Babylon was taken, the Arab general prepared to march north as soon as the Nile had returned to its banks. After the victory at Heliopolis, he had sent several detachments to different parts, to the Ṣa'īd (Upper Egypt) and the Fayyūm, as well as north towards Alexandria, Damietta, and Tinnīs on the coast. They met with little resistance in most parts, and imposed the usual terms (poll-tax and land-tax) upon the submissive population; the Roman troops were concentrated in a few large cities. 'Amr himself, after establishing a strong force at Miṣr, and mooring a fleet of boats under the wall of the fortress, at that time washed by the Nile, marched down the east bank to engage Theodorus the augustal prefect. He found however, that the prefect and most of the Roman army had retired to Alexandria, leaving Domentianus at Nikiu, and Dares of Semennūd to guard "the two rivers." On the approach of the Arabs Domentianus fled from Nikiu and took boat for Alexandria. The Arabs then entered Nikiu unopposed on 13 May, 641 (18 Genbōt, Ind. xv. [*lege* xiv.] according to John of Nikiu), and are said to have massacred all the inhabitants and perpetrated atrocious cruelty throughout the "island of Nikiu," enclosed between the arms of the Nile. From Nikiu 'Amr pressed northwards, taking Athribis and Busiris, Damsīs and Sakhā, anxious to subdue the whole of the delta before the inundation should check

operations. He was repulsed, however, at Damietta, and finding himself impeded by the canals and arms of the river, returned to Miṣr, whence he made a fresh start. Choosing this time the west bank, he marched by way of Terenuthis, fought three battles with the Romans, and reached Kiryawn, twenty miles south of Alexandria. The first attack was repulsed, but the capital was then torn by factions, "Blues" and "Greens," Byzantines and Nationals, Greeks and Copts, and was in no condition for resistance; Theodorus, the augustal prefect, was at Rhodes, and Domentianus was a poor substitute, and was at enmity with his colleague, Menas, the prefect of Lower Egypt. The distracted state of the city and the general panic can alone explain the surrender of a well-fortified stronghold which could be provisioned and reinforced at will by sea.

Accordingly, when the Arabs arrived near Alexandria, they found the enemy eager to treat. The report of a man who served under 'Amr at the taking of Miṣr and Alexandria has been handed down and preserved by Ṭabarī (i. 2581-3). This man, Ziyād ez-Zubeydī, said that after taking Babylon the Muslim army advanced into the Rīf (delta) between Miṣr and Alexandria, and arrived at Belhīb, where the governor of Alexandria sent to 'Amr, offering to pay the poll-tax on condition that the Roman prisoners should be surrendered. 'Amr replied that he must refer the proposal to the caliph at Medīna; he wrote what the governor had said, and the letter was read to the troops. They waited at Belhīb, during the armistice, till the caliph 'Omar's answer came. 'Amr read it aloud. It required the Alexandrians to pay the poll-tax; the prisoners were to be given the choice of accepting Islām or remaining true to the religion of their own folk; if they chose Islām, they belonged to the Muslims; if they held to their own creed, they should be sent back to Alexandria; but those prisoners who had already been sent to Arabia could not be returned. So they gave the remaining prisoners their choice, and when some chose Islām, the army shouted "*Allāhu Akbar*," "God is Most Great,"—

"it was the loudest Te Deum (tekbīr)," said Ziyād, "that we had shouted since we conquered the land." The rest returned to Alexandria, and the amount of the poll-tax was fixed. Thus Alexandria capitulated and the Muslims entered in.

John of Nikiu, like Ziyād, mentions no prolonged siege of Alexandria, but says that the patriarch Cyrus, who had returned from Constantinople armed with full powers to treat, went to 'Amr at Babylon[1] to propose terms of peace and offer tribute, and it was settled that the Alexandrians should pay a monthly tribute, and deliver up 150 soldiers and 50 civilians as hostages; that the Muslims should not interfere with the churches and affairs of the Christians; that the Jews (who doubtless helped to furnish the tribute money), should be allowed to remain at Alexandria; and that the Muslims should hold aloof from the city for eleven months, after which the Romans would embark and leave the city, and no other Roman army would be sent to regain it. They embarked on 17 September (642), which, if the term of eleven months was strictly observed, would make the date of the treaty of capitulation October, 641.[2]

[1] Possibly a transcriber's error for Belhīb; the two could be easily confounded in a careless Arabic MS., from which the Ethiopic version of John of Nikiu appears to have been made. But as Cyrus was back in Egypt before Easter, 641, he might have found 'Amr at Babylon, and there begun the negotiations which were continued at Belhīb.

[2] The received tradition, however, recorded by many of the Arab historians, is that Alexandria endured a siege of fourteen months, during which the Muslims lost more than 20,000 men; and many incidents of this siege have been handed down, some of which may really refer to the later reconquest of the city in 645. They state that at the time of the battle of Heliopolis several detachments were sent to various parts of Egypt, and one went to Alexandria. There may have been a corps of observation near Alexandria for fourteen months, but the story of a siege is contradicted by Ziyād's plain tale, as well as by John of Nikiu. The Arab siege material, moreover, must have been extremely weak. Though they early made use of mangonels and stone-slings, these could hardly have been powerful enough to reduce the forts of Alexandria. The legends of 'Amr being made prisoner, and eluding discovery by the presence of mind of his slave, and of his narrow escape in a bath, are improbable. What the relations were between the Muslims and the Romans during the eleven months of

The Muslim writers describe Alexandria as it was in 642 with their customary exaggeration: it had, they say, 400 theatres, 4000 public baths, &c., and its population numbered 600,000 (without reckoning women and children), of whom 200,000 were Romans, and 70,000 Jews. Of any destruction or spoliation by the Arabs there is not a word in any of the early authorities, nor, since the city capitulated on terms, was any spoliation permissible. John of Nikiu records that 'Amr levied the taxes agreed upon, but took nothing from the churches, nor wrought any deed of pillage or spoliation, but protected them throughout his government. The story of the destruction of "the Alexandrian library," and the distributing of the books to light the fires in the 4000 public baths, is found in no early record. It is not mentioned by any Greek writer, nor by John of Nikiu, Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam, or Ṭabarī. It first appears in the thirteenth century, six hundred years after the alleged event, in the works of 'Abd-el-Laṭīf and Abū-l-Faraǵ. It is absolutely contradictory to John of Nikiu's account of 'Amr's protecting policy. The legend may have had its origin in the destruction of books of the fire-worshippers during the Arab conquest of Persia.

grace we do not know. It is recorded by John of Nikiu that the Muslims came to Alexandria to collect the poll-tax, and that disturbances ensued, which were allayed by Cyrus the patriarch; but whether, after this, the Muslims occupied Alexandria, as the Arabic historians would have us believe, or (as seems more probable) received the tax outside the city, and observed the truce, there is no evidence to show. According to a tradition repeated by several Arabic historians, Alexandria was taken by storm, but almost immediately retaken by the Romans, who were then driven out a second time, and fled by sea and land, but this may refer either to the disturbances caused by the collection of the poll-tax, or to the second conquest of Alexandria from Manuel in 645. The fact, generally admitted, that the Alexandrians were allowed to pay the poll-tax, instead of having all their property confiscated, is presumptive evidence of a capitulation, though some of the chroniclers explain it away as an act of grace. There was an obvious motive on the part of the Arabs to represent that Egypt was conquered *vi et armis*, because a country so conquered would, according to Mohammadan law, be deprived of all rights, and be exposed to confiscations, which would not be the case if it had capitulated upon terms.

One anecdote of the alleged siege of Alexandria may be quoted as illustrating the spirit which inspired the Arab warriors. 'Amr's son 'Abdallāh was severely wounded, and groaning in his pain he let the regret escape that his father would not lead his army back to peace and rest. 'Amr's reply was typical of the race: "Rest," he said, "is in front of you, not behind."[1]

[1] The chronology of the Arab conquest of Egypt is almost hopelessly bewildering, and the difficulties are too complex to be discussed here. The account given above is based chiefly upon John of Nikiu and Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam, compared with Ṭabarī and later historians. John's chronicle, however, is obviously transposed in some of its chapters, and I have transferred chapters cxvi.-cxviii. to precede cxiv. I am glad to see that Mr. E. W. Brooks, who has carefully examined the subject in the *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, iv. 435-444, has arrived independently at the same conclusion with regard to this transposition. It implies the correction of the date XV. Ind. in ch. xv. for the northern march to Damietta, which must have been in the late spring or early summer (before the inundation) of 641 (i.e. XIV. Ind.). In the same way the XV. Ind. given in the rubric for the fall of Babylon fortress must be corrected to XIV. Such slips are not surprising in an Ethiopic version translated from a probable Arabic version of a probable Coptic original. The one valuable date supplied by the Arabic historians is Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam's statement that 'Amr celebrated the Feast of Sacrifice, 10 Dhū-Ḥ·ǵǵa, A.H. 18, i.e. 12 Dec., 639, at el-'Arīsh on entering Egypt; the other dates of Arabic writers frequently conflict with each other and cannot be relied upon; but the references to the Nile inundation help to fix the season and order of events. The one date in John of Nikiu on which there seems to be no ground for doubt is that of the death of the patriarch Cyrus on "25 Magabit, the Thursday before Easter," which can only be 21 March, 642. The importance of this date is that it fixes the last celebration of Easter by Cyrus (a ceremony specially described by John) as Easter, 641, and makes his negotiation of the capitulation of Alexandria, for which he had been sent back by the emperor armed with full powers, fall certainly in 641, not 642. Another important indication is furnished by the Arabic historians' statement that Alexandria capitulated nine months after the death of Heraclius. His death took place on Feb. 11, 641, and the ninth month would therefore fall in October to November, which allows the stated term of eleven months before the evacuation on Sept. 17, 642. The traditional Arabic date for the capitulation, 1 Moḥarram, 20 A.H. (21 Dec., 640), is incredible as to the *month*; but the *year* 20 given by the earliest chroniclers, Ibn-Isḥāḳ and el-Wāḳidī, as quoted by Ṭabarī (i. 2579 ff.), for the conquests of Babylon and Alexandria, agrees with the data given above, and is confirmed by Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam's statement that Alexandria fell in the eighth year

CHAPTER II

A PROVINCE OF THE CALIPHATE

641—868

Authorities.—Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam; Abū-Ṣāliḥ, Ibn-Khallikān, el-Maḳrīzī Abū-l-Maḥāsin, es-Suyūṭī.

Monuments.—Nilometer on island of er-Rōḍa.

Inscriptions.—Gravestones from Fusṭāṭ and Aswān in Cairo Museum, Miss. archéol française, Egypt. Inst., and private collections at Cairo, and a few in Europe (Brit. Mus., Louvre, Vatican).

Coins.—A few of the caliphate coins struck at Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ) bear the names of governors.

Glass weights and stamps.—Many show the names of governors, treasurers, and other officials (see pp. 47—56).

641 THE surrender of Alexandria was the last important act in the conquest of Egypt. No serious resistance was encountered elsewhere, and the whole country from Eyla on the Red Sea to Barḳa on the Mediterranean, and from the first cataract of the Nile to its embouchure, became a province of the Muslim caliphate. The Arabs spread over the country during the winter of 641-2, restoring order and levying taxes, for 'Amr was not the man to keep them idle: "Go forth," he said, "now that the season is gracious: when the milk curdles, and the

of the reign of 'Omar, which began in the middle of A.H. 20. The two dates, April and October, 641, for the taking of Babylon and the capitulation of Alexandria respectively, completely bear out the prevalent Arabic tradition that Babylon fell after a seven months' siege, and Alexandria after fourteen months. The siege of Babylon would thus have begun in Sept., 640, immediately after the fall of Miṣr, during the inundation, and the appearance of the Arabs in the neighbourhood of Alexandria (though not a siege) would be brought to the same month.

leaves wither and the mosquitoes multiply, come back to your tents." Even Nubia was made tributary by an expedition of 20,000 men, under 'Amr's lieutenant 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd. The Copts, who had aided the invaders, welcomed the change of masters, and were rewarded. 'Amr retained Menas the prefect in his government for a time, and appointed Shinūda and Philoxenos governors of the Rīf and the Fayyūm : all three were of course friendly with the Muslims, and exerted themselves to levy the taxes. Alexandria, the monthly tribute of which was rated at 22,000 pieces of gold,[1] was squeezed by Menas till it paid over 32,000. Many Egyptians became Moḥammadans to escape the poll-tax ; others hid themselves because they could not pay. In the country towns and villages, the conquerors mixed with the conquered, and the maidens of Sulṭeys in the delta became the mothers of famous Muslims by their willing union with Arab warriors.

The capital of Egypt was no longer to be Alexandria. The great commercial emporium was liable to be cut off by the Nile inundation from land communication with Medīna, then the seat of the caliphate ; and the caliph 'Omar was so far from thinking of permanent colonisation, and so averse from depriving himself of the services of 'Amr's fine army, that he forbade the soldiers to acquire land and take root in Egypt, in order that they might always be ready for a fresh campaign elsewhere. Alexandria, moreover, was the symbol of Roman dominion and the tyranny of the orthodox church, and was therefore distasteful to the Copts. 'Amr was ordered by the caliph to select a more central position, and he chose the plain close to the fortress of Babylon, and not far north of the old Egyptian capital Memphis, where his camp had been pitched during the siege of Miṣr. Here he

[1] These must be solidi, represented by the Arabic dīnār. Belādhurī mentions (223) that the poll-tax of Alexandria in about 730 was raised from the previous sum of 18,000 to 36,000 *D.* At the rate of two dīnārs a head per annum, this monthly payment implies a taxable male population not exceeding 192,000 in 'Amr's time, and 216,000 a century later.

Fig. 1.—Mosque of 'Amr at Fusṭāṭ.

built his mosque, which still stands, though repeatedly altered or restored;[1] and here he began the foundation of the city which he called el-Fusṭāṭ, "the tent," on the spot where, according to the story, when he marched north to take Alexandria, his tent had been left standing, because he would not suffer his farrāshes to disturb the doves which were building their nest there. Fusṭāṭ remained the capital of Egypt for more than three centuries, until el-Ḳāhira (Cairo) was founded close by in 969; and, even after that, it continued to be the commercial, as distinguished from the official, capital, until burned on the invasion of the crusading king Amalric in 1168. "The site of Fusṭāṭ," says el-Maḳrīzī (*Khiṭaṭ*, i. 286), the most learned authority on Egyptian topography, "which is now called the city of Miṣr, was waste land and sown fields from the Nile to the eastern mountain called G'ebel-el-Muḳaṭṭam; there were no buildings there except the fortress, now called the Castle of the Candle (Ḳaṣr-esh-Shema')[2] and el-Mo'allaḳa. There the Roman governor who ruled Egypt for the Caesars used to stay when he came from Alexandria . . . This fortress overlooked the Nile, and the boats came close up to the western gate . . . In the neighbourhood of the fortress on the north were trees and vineyards, and this became the site of the Old Mosque [or Mosque of 'Amr]. Between the fortress and the mountain were many churches and convents of the Christians." The new

[1] Nothing of the original structure remains. It was "a simple oblong room, 28.9 metres by 17.3; the low roof, no doubt, supported by a few columns, ... the walls probably of baked, but very possibly only unbaked, bricks, and unplastered; the floor pebble strewn; the light probably supplied, as in the great colonnade at the present day, through square apertures in the roof. It possessed no minarets or other attractive outside feature; no niche nor any other internal decoration" (E. K. Corbet, *J.R.A.S.*, N.S., xxii.). In this humble building the conqueror of Egypt, as the caliph's representative, led the public prayers, and preached the sermon, standing on the floor, for the caliph forbade the elevation of a pulpit. 'Amr's own house was opposite the main entrance of the mosque.

[2] Possibly from the candles used in the Coptic churches there. Mr. A. J. Butler suggests (Abū-Ṣāliḥ, f. 21*a*) that the name may be a corruption of Ḳaṣr-el-*Khemī*, the "castle of Egypt."

capital spread rapidly, and soon became one of the chief cities of the Mohammadan empire.

Henceforward, for two centuries and a quarter, Egypt was but one of the provinces of the Muslim caliphate. The Arabs appear to have made no sweeping changes in its administration : they were a conspicuously adaptive folk, and were generally content to accept other people's ideas. In Egypt they found a system of government ready-made, and they adopted the plan of their Roman predecessors—a plan doubtless moulded on time-honoured precedent—with little modification.[1] The system lasted in all essentials down to the present century, and developed into a completely decentralized series of inferior governments loosely related to the chief government at Fusṭāṭ. The village sheykhs were subordinate to the district governors, who in turn reported to the governor-in-chief ; but the central government interfered little with the district officers, or these with the peasants (*fellāḥīn*), so long as the taxes were paid ; and the whole machinery of government was directed to the end of collecting as large a revenue as possible. A special department, however, had charge of the irrigation, and appointed inspectors annually to see to the maintenance of the government dikes and dams ; but the local dikes were left to the management of each separate village or town, and paid for out of the local funds. The governor was appointed by the caliph ; and the governor usually appointed the three great officers of state, for war, justice, and finance — the marshal, the chief ḳāḍī, and the treasurer. The marshal had command of the guard, controlled the army and police, and maintained order. The ḳāḍī was the chief judge, he was also the controller of the mint (at least down to the 13th century), and represented religion and law ; the treasurer looked to the

[1] Mr. Milne (*Egypt under Roman Rule*, 216) has shown that the mudīrs, or governors of provinces, corresponded to the epistrategoi ; the ma'mūr, or sub-provincial governor, performed the duties of the toparch, and partly of the strategos ; and the land-inspector, khūlī, was the ancient sitologos. The taxation, however, seems to have been much heavier under late Roman rule than under the Arabs.

collection of the taxes, and so important was his office that he was often appointed directly by the caliph, and held a position independent of the governor. It was his duty, after collecting the taxes and paying the expenses of government, to hand over the surplus to the supreme treasury of the caliph. Sometimes he farmed the revenues for a fixed payment to the caliph's treasury, and made what he could out of the taxes. Sometimes the governor combined the office of treasurer with his proper political functions. In any case, no doubt a considerable balance stuck in the pockets of the officials, and did not find its way to the caliph. The frequent changes of governors and the uncertainty of their tenure rendered some such economy almost inevitable, as is still the case in the Ottoman empire.

'Amr, from his new capital of Fusṭāṭ, directed the raising of the necessary revenue. He collected one million dīnārs from the poll-tax alone in the first year, four million in the second, and eight in the third year (642, 643, and 644), a progression which shows that the country was not immediately brought under financial control. The total revenue he was able to raise amounted to 12,000,000 *D.*, on a population estimated by Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam at from six to eight millions, excluding women and children. The total was probably made up of about 3,000,000 land-tax on a million and a half of cultivated acres, 8,000,000 poll-tax on four million male adults, and 1,000,000 various duties and contributions.[1]

[1] It is impossible to reconcile the various estimates of the Arab historians satisfactorily. 'Amr is stated to have raised eight million dīnārs from the poll-tax, which implies a taxable male population of four (not six or eight) millions. But Ya'ḳūbī places the poll-tax of Egypt in about 670 at five million dīnārs, implying a population of two-and-a-half million adult males, or else a very large conversion of the Copts to Islām in order to evade the tax, which according to all authorities was not the case. The land-tax in the latter part of the 8th c. was forty-four million dirhems (or three-and-one-third million dīnārs), which tallies well enough with the fifty millions fixed by 'Amr in the treaty of 640. In the first half of the 9th c. the land-tax had increased to nearly four-and-three-quarter million *D.* El-Bilādhurī says

The policy of the caliph enjoined a generous treatment of the cultivators of the soil, and we hear of harshness only where wealthy Copts endeavoured to conceal their resources and evade the taxes; the consequence was confiscation, sometimes to a fabulous amount. 'Amr developed the productiveness of the land by irrigation, and the immemorial *corvée* system was enforced: 120,000 labourers were kept at work winter and summer in maintaining and improving the dams and canals. The old canal, traditionally called the Amnis Trajanus, connecting Babylon with the Red Sea, which had long been choked up, was cleared and reopened in less than a year,[1] and corn was sent by ships to Medīna, instead of by caravan as in the previous year. In spite of this efficient and prudent administration, the caliph was dissatisfied with the small revenue received from Egypt,[2] and reduced 'Amr to the inferior office of governor of the delta, whilst the Ṣa'īd, or Upper Egypt, was placed under the authority of 'Abdallāh ibn Sa'd, who was soon afterwards (on the murder of the caliph 'Omar) appointed governor of all Egypt.

Before he left, however, 'Amr achieved another signal success. A Roman fleet of 300 sail, under Manuel, an Armenian, supported by the Roman population in the
645 delta, seized Alexandria in 645, and the Copts, dreading

that at the end of the 8th c. the total revenue was fixed at four dīnārs a head, but this looks like a mere combination of the two dīnār tax per head and the two dīnār tax per acre.

[1] In A.H. 23 (begining in Nov., 643) according to el-Kindī. It ran past Bilbeys to the Crocodile Lake and then down to Kulzum, the port at the head of the Red Sea. It remained open for about eighty years, after which it was neglected and again became choked up, until reopened in the caliphate of el-Mahdī, c. 780. The picturesque but malodorous canal (el-Khalīǧ) flowed through Cairo for some distance to the N.E. until 1899, when it was filled up for sanitary reasons. Its connection with the Crocodile Lake had long ceased, and its place was taken by the still older Busiris or "Freshwater Canal."

[2] The authentic correspondence on this subject between the caliph and 'Amr is preserved in Ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam, and shows that 'Omar regarded Egypt chiefly in the light of a milch-cow, whose milk was to nourish the faithful at Medīna rather than fatten the governor at Fusṭāṭ.

a restoration of the hated Melekite domination, entreated that their old champion might be sent against the enemy. 'Amr hastened with an army by land and water towards Alexandria, and encountered the Romans near Nikiu. The imperial archers covered the landing of the troops from the river, and the Arabs suffered heavy loss. Amr's horse was shot under him, and some noted warriors began to fly. At this moment a Roman captain challenged the Muslims to single combat; a champion rode out from their ranks, and both armies stood under arms while the duel was fought out. After an hour's sword-play, the Arab killed his opponent with a knife. Encouraged by this, the Muslims attacked the enemy with such fury that they broke and fled to Alexandria with the loss of their general. The spot where the victory was won was commemorated by the building of the 'Mosque of (Divine) Pity." The walls of Alexandria were then destroyed, as 'Amr said, "so that men could go in at every side as to the house of a harlot." As a reward for this service the successful general was offered the command of the troops of Egypt, but not the governorship: he declined the honour in the pithy phrase, "I might as well hold the cow by the horns whilst another milked her."

The new governor, 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd,[1] bestirred himself to emulate the deeds of his predecessor. In 651-2 he 652
invaded Nubia, laid siege to Dongola, battered down the Christian church with his stone slings, and compelled the blacks to sue for peace. The treaty then concluded has been preserved by Ibn-Selīm, as quoted by Maḳrīzī, and is a curious document:—

"In the name of God, &c.—This is a treaty granted by the emīr 'Abdallāh ibn Sa'd ibn Abī-Sarḥ to the chief of the Nubians and to all the people of his dominions, a treaty binding on great and small among them, from the

[1] The abbreviation *b.* stands for *ibn*, "son of." The classical form of this name is 'Abdu-llāhi-bnu-Sa'd, but in this history the inflexional terminations are disregarded, as they are in Egyptian colloquial usage.

frontier of Aswān to the frontier of ʿAlwa. ʿAbdallāh b. Saʿd ordains security and peace between them and the Muslims, their neighbours in the Saʿīd [Upper Egypt], as well as all other Muslims and their tributaries. Ye people of Nubia, ye shall dwell in safety under the safeguard of God and his apostle, Moḥammad the prophet, whom God bless and save. We will not attack you, nor wage war on you, nor make incursions against you, so long as ye abide by the terms settled between us and you. When ye enter our country, it shall be but as travellers, not as settlers, and when we enter your country it shall be but as travellers not settlers. Ye shall protect those Muslims or their allies who come into your land and travel there, until they quit it. Ye shall give up the slaves of Muslims who seek refuge among you, and send them back to the country of Islām; and likewise the Muslim fugitive who is at war with the Muslims, him ye shall expel from your country to the realm of Islām; ye shall not espouse his cause nor prevent his capture. Ye shall put no obstacle in the way of a Muslim, but render him aid till he quit your territory. Ye shall take care of the mosque which the Muslims have built in the outskirt of your city, and hinder none from praying there; ye shall clean it, and light it, and honour it. Every year ye shall pay 360 head of slaves to the leader of the Muslims [i.e. the caliph], of the middle class of slaves of your country, without bodily defects, males and females, but no old men nor old women nor young children. Ye shall deliver them to the governor of Aswān. No Muslim shall be bound to repulse an enemy from you or to attack him, or hinder him, from ʿAlwa to Aswān. If ye harbour a Muslim slave, or kill a Muslim or an ally, or attempt to destroy the mosque which the Muslims have built in the outskirt of your city, or withhold any of the 360 head of slaves—then this promised peace and security will be withdrawn from you, and we shall revert to hostility, until God decide between us, and He is the best of umpires. For our performance of these conditions we pledge our word, in the name of God, and our compact and faith, and belief in the name

of His apostle Moḥammad, God bless and save him. And for your performance of the same ye pledge yourselves by all that ye hold most sacred in your religion, by the Messiah and by the apostles and by all whom ye revere in your creed and religion. And God is witness of these things between us and you. Written by 'Amr b. Shuraḥbīl in Ramaḍān in the year 31." (May-June, 652 A.D.)

Before this treaty the *baḳt*, or annual tribute of "360 head of slaves," had been paid to 'Amr b. el-'Āṣī, together with forty slaves whom he declined to accept as a present, but paid for in corn and provisions. This exchange continued for a long time. The *baḳt* of 360 slaves was regularly paid every year to an Egyptian officer at el-Ḳaṣr, five miles from Aswān, the frontier town of Egypt, and forty slaves in addition were exchanged for wheat, barley, lentils, cloth, and horses. The treaty and the slave tribute remained in force down to Mamlūk times, more than six centuries later.

Three years after the Nubian campaign, a Roman fleet of 700 to 1000 sail appeared off Alexandria. The Muslims had only 200 ships to oppose the invasion, but after volleys of arrows, and, when these were exhausted, of stones, they came to close quarters and fought sword to sword, till the Romans were put to flight. From the forest of rigging the engagement acquired the name of "the Battle of the Masts." Henceforth, for centuries, in spite of occasional raids by the emperors' fleets, Egypt was secure from foreign attack. Meanwhile 'Abdallāh pressed the taxes, and succeeded in raising a revenue of 14,000,000 *D.* The caliph 'Othmān, at Medina, observed to 'Amr that "the camel yields more milk now." "Yes," was the reply, "but to the hurt of her young." The result, indeed, was widespread disaffection. The people rose, drove the vice-governor out of Fusṭāṭ, proclaimed the deposition of the caliph, refused to admit 'Abdallāh when he returned from a journey to Palestine, and sent a force of rebels to Medina to demand the appointment of a governor of their own choice. An intercepted letter, which seemed to argue double-dealing on the caliph's

part, embittered the controversy, and the Egyptian Arabs at Medīna took a leading share in the events which ended in the murder of 'Othmān. The contest over the
656 succession to the caliphate was fought out in Egypt, as elsewhere; 'Alī, the new caliph, was strongly supported, and sent a governor to Fusṭāṭ, who read his commission aloud in the mosque of 'Amr. He was removed by intrigues, and the next governor was poisoned before he even reached his seat of government. Ten thousand men, pledged to avenge the murder of 'Othmān, established themselves at Kharibtā, in the Ḥawf (or eastern part of the delta) and defied authority. With their support, and backed by 5000 Syrian troops, joined by as many Egyptians, 'Amr, the nominee of the rival
658 caliph Mo'āwiya, re-entered Fusṭāṭ in July, 658, after defeating the governor's army, and put an end to the authority of 'Alī in Egypt. The conqueror's second government lasted over five years, but was marked by few important events beyond a couple of expeditions against the Berbers of Libya. In view of his great services, Mo'āwiya, first of the Omayyad caliphs of Damascus, granted him the entire revenue of Egypt, after payment of the cost of administration; and so large was the surplus that when 'Amr died, in January,
664 664, at the age of ninety, he left seventy sacks of dīnārs, each of which weighed ten bushels (two ardebbs.) At about 160 lbs. to the ardebb, this would amount to the wholly impossible amount of ten tons of gold! It is said (but, in the Arab historians' qualifying phrase, "God knows best") that his sons refused to inherit their ill-gotten treasure.

A record of the several reigns of the ninety-eight governors who ruled Egypt under the successive caliphs of Medīna, Damascus and Baghdād, up to the time when Ibn-Ṭūlūn established a practically independent dynasty in 868, would serve little purpose.[1] The system was the same all through, but mildness and

[1] Their jejune annals may be read in F. Wüstenfeld's *Die Statthalter von Aegypten zur Zeit der Chalifen*, published in the *Abhandl. der Kön. Gesellsch. der Wissensch. zu Göttingen*, Bd. xx., 1875.

severity alternated according to the disposition of the governor, or the character of his treasurer and other officials. Several governors are described as generous and upright, benevolent towards the people, and beloved by them. Such were commonly followed by martinets, who restored the treasury balance by fresh exactions. Honesty was not likely to be the salient virtue among men who were liable to sudden dismissal at the caprice of a caliph; yet it is recorded of Ḳeys b. Sa'd that on his demission he refused to appropriate the house he had built at Fusṭāṭ because "it was erected with the money of the Muslims" to be the official residence of future governors. Another exceptional ruler, a "God-fearing man, just and incorruptible," used to say, "When presents come in at the door, honesty flies out of the window." Yet it was under this very man that Osāma b. Zeyd carried on a peculiarly oppressive policy, acting on the caliph's instructions, "Milk till the udder be dry, and let blood to the last drop." The normal taxation was not excessive; non-Muslims paid about a guinea a year in poll-tax, and the same amount per cultivated acre (*feddān*, rather more than an English acre) in land-tax. The taxes brought in annually from twelve to fourteen million dīnārs; and in the first half of the 9th c. the land-tax (of two dīnārs per acre) amounted to 4,857,000 *D.*, or about 2,500,000*l.* But in Egypt the tax-gatherer did not always content himself with the legal taxes; and apart from such extortion, there were various other duties, on trades and markets, etc., increased and varied from time to time, which swelled the revenue. The Muslim subjects moreover had to pay a tithe as poor-tax, and also a property-tax. At the beginning of the 8th c. the district officials reported the extraordinary intelligence that their treasuries were so full that they could hold no more, and the caliph gave orders that the superfluity should be expended on building mosques. Among

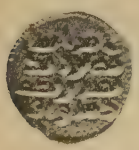


Fig. 2.—Glass weight of Osāma b. Zeyd [A.D. 720].

others, the Mosque of 'Amr was restored, and it is mentioned that when the workmen turned out of an evening and went home, the governor, Ḳurra, had wine brought into the sacred building, and tippled all night to the strains of music—another way of disposing of the surplus. Some governors, however, rigorously suppressed all wine-shops and places of public amusement.

The vast majority of the people of Egypt were of course the Christian Copts, and whatever oppression existed was mainly borne by them. There is very little evidence, however, to show that they were grossly ill-treated. 'Amr, the conqueror, received an embassy of monks, who asked for a charter of their liberties and the restoration of their patriarch Benjamin; he granted the charter and invited the exiled patriarch to return. The Muslims naturally favoured their allies of the national or Jacobite church, rather than the orthodox church of Constantinople, which was still represented in Egypt. The governor Maslama allowed the Copts to build a church behind the bridge at Fusṭāṭ, to the scandal of the faithful; and when 'Abd-el-'Azīz b. Marwān removed for
686 his health to Ḥulwān, near Memphis, he chose the Coptic monastery at Ṭamweyh on the opposite bank of the Nile as his residence,[1] and paid the monks 20,000 *D.* for it. This is worth noting, because, according to the Muslim theory, Egypt was a conquered country and its inhabitants had no rights, could not own land, and were

[1] Here he is stated to have struck the first purely Arabic coins issued in Egypt in A.H. 76 (695), in accordance with the monetary reform of the caliph 'Abd-el-Melik. Abū-Ṣāliḥ says (f. 52*b*) that 'Abd-el-'Azīz b. Marwān wished to make Ḥulwān the capital, and built several mosques there, a pavilion of glass, a Nilometer, a lake and aqueduct, and planted trees. His physicians sent him there for the alleviation of his lion-sickness (elephantiasis), on account of the sulphur springs. He also built a palace with a gilt dome, "the Golden House," at Fusṭāṭ. Osāma b. Zeyd built the *first* Nilometer on the island of Rōḍa, formerly called G'ezīrat-es-Ṣinā'a, "the island of the artisans" (boat-builders), in 716, which superseded the old Nilometer of Memphis, and was still in use in 944 (Mas'ūdī, ii. 366). Another Nilometer was erected at the upper end of Rōḍa in 861, and improved by Ibn-Ṭūlūn in 873; it registered eighteen cubits' rise, each cubit divided into twenty-four inches (Egyptian).

liable (and too often subjected) to confiscation. On the other hand, his nephew and successor, 'Abdallāh, bore heavily upon the people, forbade Christians to wear the burnus, and ordered Arabic to be used in all public documents, instead of Coptic as heretofore. Exactions, arbitrary fines, torture and vexatious passports are recorded, and a system of badges to be worn by monks, by way of licence, was devised: if a monk were found without the brand, his monastery was liable to be sacked.

Fig. 3.—Glass stamp [1] of 'Obeyd-allāh b. el-Ḥabḥāb, dated 729.

A still worse oppressor was the treasurer 'Obeyd-allāh b. el-Ḥabḥāb, who in 722, by the caliph's order, carried out a general destruction of the sacred pictures of the Christians. Such persecutions led to a rising of the Copts in the Ḥawf, between Bilbeys and Damietta, which, although suppressed for the time, broke out again and again in later years, and the imprisonment of a Coptic patriarch aroused such indignation among his co-religionists in Nubia that the king (Cyriacus) marched into Egypt at the head of 100,000 Nubians, and was only induced to return to his own country by the request of the patriarch, who was hastily liberated. 722

The Muslim historian Maḳrīzī does not attempt to minimize these persecutions, and himself repeats a story of the heroism of one of the religious women who were

[1] These stamps were impressed on glass bottles by the government as guarantees of standard capacity. The glass weights were used to test the weight of the coins. The inscriptions on both usually include the name of the ruling governor or treasurer, the measure or weight indicated, a word or formula referring to the justness of the weight or measure, and occasionally the date.

dragged out of their convents by the Arab soldiers. Febronia was a virgin of such surpassing beauty that her captors could not decide who was to own her. Whilst they were consulting she offered to reveal to their leader the secret of an unguent with which her ancestors used to anoint themselves, and thereby became invulnerable. The captain of the troop agreed to let her go back to her convent if she let him prove the efficacy of the ointment upon herself. "So he went with her into the convent, and she approached the picture of the Lady, and prayed before it, and begged the Virgin to assist her to obtain deliverance." Then she anointed her neck with the oil, and one of the soldiers drew a sharp sword. "And the maiden bent her knees and displayed her neck; but they did not know that which was in her heart. Then she covered her face and said, 'If there is any strong man among you, let him strike with his sword upon my neck, and you will see the power of God in this great secret.' So the man . . . struck with all his might; and her head immediately fell from her body; for it was her purpose by this means to preserve her maidenhood, that she might appear before Christ a pure virgin, as she had been created, without earthly stain. So when the ignorant Bashmurites saw what had befallen the maiden, they knew at last what had been her intention; and they repented and were exceeding sad, and did no injury henceforth to any of those virgins, but let them go."[1]

It is remarkable that in spite of such intermittent oppression and their invariable position of inferiority, and also the temptation to escape the poll-tax and all
732 disabilities by the simple process of conversion to Islām, the Copts in general remained steadfast to their faith (they still numbered five millions about 725)[2]; insomuch that about 732 the treasurer 'Obeydallāh, finding that Islām was making no progress among them, imported 5000 Arabs of the tribe of Ḳeys and settled them in the Ḥawf

[1] Abū-Ṣāliḥ, f. 84*b*-86*a*. The story comes from John the Deacon.
[2] El-Kindī in Abū-Ṣāliḥ, f. 266.

to the north-east of Fusṭāṭ, where they presently formed a hot-bed of revolt. The Arab population, however, apart from this small addition, must have been considerable, though for the first century of Moḥammadan rule they were almost confined to the large cities. Most governors appear to have come to Egypt escorted by an Arab army, estimated at different times at 6000, or 10,000, or even 20,000 men; and many of these soldiers most probably settled in the towns, and some certainly intermarried with Copt women. These Arabs were no doubt favoured by government at the expense of the Christians; and at one time we read that 25,000 *D.* were distributed among the Muslims to pay their debts. Arab tribes from time to time migrated bodily into Egypt. Thus the tribe of el-Kenz (a branch of Rabī'a) settled chiefly in the Ṣa'īd in the middle of the ninth century, intermarried with the people, and became an important political factor in later insurrections in the time of the Fāṭimids and of Saladin.

Fig. 4.—Glass weight of el-Ḳāsim b. 'Obeyd-allāh [730].

The governors of Egypt under the Omayyad caliphs were all Arabs, and four of them were sons or brothers of the reigning caliphs. Two of the Omayyad caliphs themselves visited Egypt: Marwān I. in 684, to defeat the party supporting the rival caliph 'Abdallāh b. Zubeyr; and Marwān II., who came there in his flight from his victorious

Fig. 5.—Glass weight of 'Abd-el-Melik b. Yezīd [750].

supplanters, the 'Abbāsids, crossed at G'īza to Fusṭāṭ, and sent troops to hold the Ṣa'īd and Alexandria; but was pursued to the death by the 'Abbāsid general, Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī, who took possession of Fusṭāṭ for the new dynasty in August, 750. The partisans of the late caliph were driven out of the country, or killed at sight.

750 The change from the Omayyad to the 'Abbāsid caliphs was thus effected in Egypt with little difficulty: indeed some governors who had served the old line were quite willing to accept office under the new, and other leading men of the old *régime* were taken to the caliph's court to become acclimatized. Their tenure of power, however, was even more precarious, and an 'Abbāsid governor generally ruled only half the brief time that an Omayyad governor had kept his seat.[1] Under the new dynasty a considerable number of the governors belonged to the 'Abbāsid family, and of the others most were Arabs; but in 856 the caliphs began to send Turks, and since then, with the exception of the Fāṭimid caliphs, hardly any Arabs have ever ruled in Egypt. From 834 to the independent rule of Ibn-Ṭūlūn in 872, the province was given in fief to one or other of the commanders of the caliphs' Turkish bodyguard, or to the caliph's son or brother; these fiefees did not govern in person but appointed a deputy governor to do the work and pay them the surplus revenue.[2]

The change of dynasty was marked by a change of residence. The Omayyad governors had generally lived at Fusṭāṭ, though two had temporarily removed the seat of government to Alexandria, leaving a deputy at Fusṭāṭ. The 'Abbāsid governors built a new official capital (a military suburb rather than a city) at a place called el-Ḥamrā el-Ḳuṣwā ("the further red way") on the plain to the north-east of Fusṭāṭ, where the soldiers of some of the

[1] Under the Omayyads there were thirty-one changes of governors in 109 years; under the 'Abbāsids, sixty-seven in 118 years.

[2] These fiefees were Ashnās, 839—844; Itāsh, 845—849; el-Muntaṣir 850—856; el-Feṭḥ, 856—868; Bāḳbāḳ, 868; Barġūġ, 869—872; el-Muwaffaḳ, 872.

Arab tribes had formerly built houses of defence; whence the place was known as el-'Askar, "the army." Ṣāliḥ, the 'Abbāsid general, camped there in 750; his lieutenant, Abū-'Awn, built houses there; and el-'Askar became the official residence of the governor, his guard, and ministers.[1] Suburbs connected it with Fusṭāṭ, from which the Nile had already (by 725) retreated some little distance westward. Another palace, called the Ḳubbat-el-Hawā ("Dome of the Air"), was built in 809-810 by the governor Ḥātim on the spur of the Muḳaṭṭam hills, where the Citadel of Cairo now stands, and here the governors often resorted for the cool breezes.

The period of the government of Egypt under the 'Abbāsid caliphs of Baghdād was distracted by frequent insurrections. These were due less to the Copts (who joined in, rather than caused rebellion) than to the Muslims themselves. There were already serious schisms in Islam. Not to speak of the slight differences of the four orthodox schools of theology—of which the Mālikī, or school founded on the teaching of the great divine Mālik, was most widely followed in Egypt from the eighth to the tenth century, though after the coming of the Imam esh-Shāfi'ī to Fusṭāṭ, at the beginning of the ninth century, the Shāfi'īs began gradually to acquire the predominance which they still enjoy in Egypt—the bitter enmity between the Shī'a and the Sunnis, between the upholders of the divine right of 'Alī's family to the caliphate and the defenders of the caliphate actually in power, already divided the Muslims. The supporters of the claim of 'Alī's descendants to the caliphate, and the Khāriǵīs (or "revolters"), a sect of puritans who had a large share in the downfall of 'Alī himself, were strongly represented in Egypt, and the Arab tribes who had been imported into the Ḥawf were continually in a state of rebellion. In 754 Abū-'Awn, Ṣāliḥ's general, who had 754
been campaigning against the Berbers in Barḳa, was

[1] Maḳr. i. 304. El-'Askar decayed after Ṣāliḥ's departure, but was restored and enlarged by Mūsā b. 'Īsā el-'Abbāsī forty years later. Cf. Lane, *Cairo fifty years ago*, 7 ff.

obliged to return to put down a great rising of the Khāriǵīs in Egypt, and the result was the despatch of 3000 rebels' heads to Fusṭāṭ. In 759 there was another campaign in Barḳa, where the Khāriǵīs had made common cause with the Berbers and the supporters of the late Omayyad dynasty, and the Egyptian army was defeated. The next governor, Ḥumeyd, who brought 20,000 men with him, and was shortly further reinforced, carried on the war, and after some reverses succeeded in beating the rebels and killing the Khāriǵī leader. The 'Alawīs or 'Alids, adherents of 'Alī's faction, next came on the scene, and one of the family ('Alī b. Moḥammad b. 'Abdallāh) was near becoming caliph in Egypt, till the 'Abbāsid caliph el-Manṣūr, after catching and killing another rebel of the family at Baṣra, adopted the deterring expedient of sending the victim's head to be exposed in the mosque at Fusṭāṭ, which so daunted the 'Alids that the movement collapsed. So serious was the ferment, however, that Yezīd b. Ḥātim, the governor, forbade the annual pilgrimage to Mekka in 764. In the following year he had to suppress a Khāriǵī insurrection
765 in Abyssinia, and as a reward for his services the province of Barḳa was in 766 for the first time joined to his government of Egypt.

Fig. 6.—Glass weight of Yezīd b. Ḥātim [761].

It was now the turn of the Copts. They had already twice risen at Semennūd in the delta, and in 767 they rebelled at Sakhā, twice defeated the governor's troops, and drove out the tax-gatherers. A considerable district of Lower Egypt was in open insurrection, and was not restored to order until several years later. The result was naturally more stringent suppression and persecution. Tranquillity was restored for a while under the gentle rule of Mūsā b. 'Olayy, who treated the people with

benevolence, and delighted in discoursing in the mosque and reciting the prayers, for he was a noted divine. A violent alterative was supplied in 779 by Abū Ṣāliḥ, 779 known as Ibn-Memdūd, the first governor who came of Turkish race, a most capable and energetic ruler, but stern and severe. He found the roads infested by robbers of the Ḳeys Arabs of the Ḥawf, and immediately put a stop to their exploits by summary executions. It was his theory that under his sway thieving could not exist, and he therefore issued orders that all gates and house-doors, and even taverns, should be left open at night. People used to stretch nets before their open doors to keep the dogs out. He interdicted the employment of watchmen at the public baths, and announced that if anything were stolen he would replace it out of his own pocket. When any one went to the bath, he would lay down his garments in the dressing-room and call out, "O Abū-Ṣāliḥ, take care of my clothes!" and would then go and bathe in perfect confidence that when he came out no one would have dared to touch them. But Ibn-Memdūd's severity caused more fear than it allayed, and his ridiculous sumptuary laws, prescribing special head-dresses for judges and other officials, and his constant interference, so harassed the people that his dismissal was universally applauded.

Fig. 7.—Glass weight of Moḥammad b. Sa'īd [769].

A grave political rebellion occured in 782 in the Ṣa'īd, 782 where Diḥya b. Mus'ab, the Omayyad, proclaimed himself caliph. Most of Upper Egypt joined his faction, and the government troops were repulsed. A new governor was sent out, who first mulcted his unsuccessful predecessor in the sum of 350,000 *D.* for his failure to suppress the revolt, and then adopted the strange method of ingratiating

his rule with the people by doubling the land-tax, and imposing fresh duties on markets and beasts of burthen. Mūsā thus made himself so generally detested that even his own soldiers deserted. The Arab tribes in the Ḥawf seized the opportunity to take up arms again, and the governor was defeated and killed. His successor was not more fortunate. He failed to reduce the rebels in the Ṣa'īd, but the campaign was memorable for a curious incident. The governor's brother challenged the rebel general to single combat, each ran the other through, both died, and the two armies fled from each other in panic. It was not till el-Faḍl, the son of Ṣāliḥ, the 'Abbāsid conqueror of Egypt, took the matter in hand, that this wide-spread rebellion was put down. El-Faḍl tried no half-measures, but brought a loyal army from Syria, which gained a series of victories in the Ṣa'īd, and captured the pretender. Diḥya was executed at Fusṭāṭ, his body crucified, and his head sent to the caliph at Baghdād.

Fig. 8.—Glass weight of el-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ [785].

Unfortunately el-Faḍl grew so puffed up by his triumph that he had to be removed, and his nephew, who succeeded, though a just man and benevolent (save towards the Copts, whose churches he demolished), following in his ambitious steps received a similar recall from Hārūn er-Rashīd. Both these men were members of the 'Abbāsid family, and were consequently disposed to cherish dreams of election to the caliphate, which was not so entailed that er-Rashīd could afford to despise them. The same ambition was discovered in the next
791 governor, Mūsā b. 'Īsā the 'Abbāsid, a man of great official experience, and well disposed towards the Copts, whom he allowed to rebuild their ruined churches

When it was reported that he was harbouring designs against the caliph, Hārūn exclaimed, with his usual levity, "By Allāh, I will depose him, and in his place I will set the meanest creature of my court." Just then 'Omar, the secretary of the caliph's mother, came riding on his mule. "Will you be governor of Egypt?" asked G'a'far the Barmecide. "Oh, yes," said 'Omar. No sooner said than done; 'Omar rode his mule to Fusṭāṭ, followed by a single slave carrying his baggage. Entering the governor's house, he took his seat in the back row of the assembled court. Mūsā, not knowing him, asked his business, whereat 'Omar presented him with the caliph's despatch. On reading it Mūsā exclaimed, in Ḳorānic phrase, "God curse Pharaoh, who said 'Am I not king of Egypt?'" and forthwith delivered up the government to "the meanest creature." The story is too like one of Hārūn's practical jokes to be quite disbelieved, and it is at least certain that Mūsā retired in 792.

During these changes of government, the Arabs of the Ḥawf pursued their career of insubordination. In 802 and 806 there was severe fighting; the nomads refused to pay taxes, plundered travellers, lifted cattle, and made raids into Palestine, with the support of the frontier Arabs. A treacherous decoy of some of their chiefs in 807 checked them for the moment, but the contest for the caliphate, which arose on Hārūn's death in 808, between his sons, el-Amīn and el-Ma'mūn, divided the allegiance of the Egyptians, and led to fresh outbreaks in the Ḥawf. The two claimants appointed rival governors, and el-Amīn shrewdly nominated the chief of the Ḳeys Arabs to the office, thus securing the support of the party most disaffected to the government. El-Ma'mūn's representative was accordingly defeated and killed.

To this official recognition the Arabs of the Ḥawf now added a new source of strength by the arrival in Alexandria in 798 of over 15,000 Andalusians, besides women 798
and children. These refugees had been banished from Spain by the Omayyad prince el-Ḥakam, in consequence of a rebellion at Cordova, which had gone near to over-

throwing his monarchy.[1] They were allowed to land, but not to enter Alexandria, and they supported themselves as best they could by sea commerce. They soon became a factor in the political situation, and having leagued themselves with the powerful Arab tribe of
815 Lakhm, seized Alexandria in 815. Here they fought and treated alternately with the government and with malcontents of the Ḥawf, until at last the task of suppressing the obnoxious colony was placed in the hands of a strong man. The caliph el-Ma'mūn sent 'Abdallāh the son of Ṭāhir, one of the most famous generals of the age, to Egypt in 826, with an army officered by trusty veterans from Khurāsān. A siege of fourteen days brought Alexandria to terms, in 827, and the Andalusians agreed to embark on their ships, taking every soul belonging to them, free and slave, woman and child, on pain of death. They sailed away to Crete, where they settled and ruled till the eastern emperor recovered the island in 961.

826 Ibn-Ṭāhir had undertaken a difficult task. Before exiling the Andalusians he had fought the governor, 'Obeydallāh b. es-Sarī, who refused to accept his dismissal until Ibn-Ṭāhir had starved him out of Fusṭāṭ. As a last hope, he sent his besieger in the dead of night an offering of a thousand slaves and slave-girls, each carrying a thousand dīnārs in a silk purse; but Ibn-Ṭāhir sent them back, saying "I would not accept your gifts by day, still less by night." After the surrender of Fusṭāṭ
827 and the expulsion of the Andalusians from Alexandria, the successful general, whom the caliph had prophetically named "Victorious" (el-Manṣūr), restored order throughout the country, reorganized the army, and made Egypt loyal once more. In return for his great services, the caliph allowed him to enjoy the full revenue of Egypt, amounting to 3,000,000 *D.*[2] He is described as a just and

[1] Dozy, *Hist. des Musulmans d'Espagne*, ii. 68-76; Quatremère, *Mem. sur l'Egypte*, i.

[2] 3,000,000 *D.* cannot be the gross revenue, but it might be the amount derived from the land-tax. But as it appears that the land-tax about this time reached the sum of 4,857,000 *D.*, it is more probable

humane governor, a man of learning, and a staunch friend to poets, of whom several were always in his train. His name has been preserved in the 'Abdallāwī melons of Egypt, a variety which he specially introduced.

The brief rest which the land enjoyed under his strong and judicious rule was broken upon his departure for his own province of Khurāsān, in the north-east of Persia. The Arabs of the Ḥawf speedily renewed their outrages, and advancing close to the capital, at Maṭarīya, defeated the new governor, who burned his baggage and took refuge behind the walls of Fusṭāṭ. When el-Mo'taṣim, brother of the caliph, and afterwards caliph himself, came to the rescue with 4000 Turkish troops, he found the city blockaded by the Arabs; and though he dispersed them (829) and killed their chiefs, as soon as he had returned to Baghdād, five months later (driving a crowd of wretched barefoot prisoners before his savage troopers), the insurrection broke out afresh, and spread among the Copts; and at last the caliph resolved to go to Egypt in person.

Fig 9.—Dīnār (gold coin) of caliph. el-Ma·mūn, struck at Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ), 814.

It was the first time that an 'Abbāsid caliph had visited 832
the Nile, the praises of which poets had constantly been dinning in his ears; and when el-Ma·mūn surveyed the view from the "Dome of the Air," he was frankly disappointed. "God curse Pharaoh," he cried, "for saying, 'Am I not king of Egypt!'[1] If only he had seen 'Irāḳ and its meadows!" "Say not so," replied a divine, "for it is also written, 'We have brought to nought what Pharaoh and his folk reared and built so skilfully';[2] and what must have been those things which God

that the 3,000,000 *D.* represents the excess of revenue over the cost of administration—the surplus (after paying the army, officials, etc.) which would in the ordinary course have been sent to the caliph.

[1] Ḳorān, xliv. 50. [2] *Ibid*, vii. 133.

destroyed, if these are but their remnants!" The caliph then disgraced the ineffective governor, beheaded a leader of the revolt, and sent an army under the Turk Afshīn into the Ḥawf, where the rebellious Copts were massacred in cold blood, their villages burnt, and their wives and children sold as slaves. This stern repression broke the spirit of the Copts, and we hear no more of national movements. Many of them apostatized to Islām, and from this date begins the numerical preponderance of the Muslims over the Christians in Egypt, and the settlement of the Arabs in the villages and on the land, instead of as heretofore only in the great cities. Egypt now became, for the first time, an essentially Moḥammadan country.

Meanwhile, the caliph had visited Alexandria and Sakhā; there is also a legend, resting on no early authority, that he attempted to open the great pyramid of G'īza in search of treasure, but gave it up on finding that his workmen could make no perceptible impression on the vast mass.[1] After over a month's stay, el-Ma'mūn returned to Baghdād. He left the country in a state of peace, which, save for a brief outbreak among the Lakhmī Arabs of the delta, was not disturbed for many years. Whatever dissensions arose were caused by theological differences among the Muslims themselves. El-Ma'mūn's enforcement of the doctrine of the createdness of the Ḳorān, as a test without which no ḳāḍī or judge could be enrolled, produced more heart-burning than the subject seems to merit. A chief ḳāḍī, who would not conform to the established doctrine, was shorn of his beard, whipped, and driven through the city on an ass. His

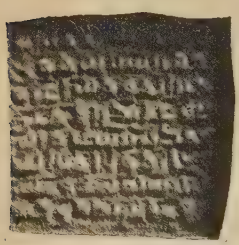


Fig. 10.—Glass weight of Ashnās [834 ff.].

[1] Cf. 'Abd-el-Laṭīf, 176, and de Sacy's note, 219; Wüstenfeld, *Statthalter*, 43 n.

successor continued to scourge him at the rate of twenty cuts a day, till he extorted the desired *bakhshīsh*. Followers of the (orthodox) sects of the Ḥanafīs and Shāfi'īs were driven out of the mosque. A suspicious slip in reading the Ḳorān brought a flogging.

A similar system of petty interference vexed the Copts a little later. A series of new regulations of the caliph el-Mutawekkil was promulgated throughout the provinces of Egypt in 850. The Christians were ordered to wear honey-coloured clothes, with distinguishing patches, use wooden stirrups, and set up wooden images of the devil or an ape or dog over their doors; the girdle, the symbol of femininity, was forbidden to women, and ordered to be worn by men; crosses must not be shown nor processional lights carried in the streets, and their graves must be indistinguishable from the earth around. They were also forbidden to ride horses. Such childish persecution could only be designed to furnish occasion for disobedience, and thus for fines and extortion.

The independent spirit of the ḳāḍī, who was whipped for non-compliance with superior orders, was typical of his class and office. In a period of grasping governors and extortionate treasurers, when corruption and injustice prevailed throughout the administration, the chief ḳāḍī, or lord chancellor and primate of Egypt, could almost always be trusted to maintain the sacred law, despite threats and bribes. The law may have been narrow, and the ḳāḍī a bigot, but he was at least a man of some education, trained in Moḥammadan jurisprudence, and generally of high character and personal rectitude. So important was his office and so great his influence that when other ministers were changed with the rapid succession of governors, the ḳāḍī frequently remained in office for a series of administrations, and even when deposed he would often be restored by a later governor or caliph. Sooner than submit to any interference with his legal judgments, he would resign his post, and so beloved were many of the ḳāḍīs that a governor would think twice before he risked the unpopularity which

would follow any meddling with their jurisdiction. Indeed in 'Abbāsid times he had scarcely the power to dismiss them, for from the time of Ibn-Laḥī'a, who was appointed ḳāḍī by the caliph el-Manṣūr in 771-2, the nomination to the office seems generally to have been made at Baghdād, and the salary fixed, if not paid, by the caliph. The salary of Ibn-Laḥī'a was 30 dīnārs a month, but in 827 'Isā b. el-Munḳadir received monthly 4000 dirhems (or 300 *D.*), and a fee of 1000 *D.* Ḳāḍī Ghauth (†785) was a model of uprightness, and accessible to any petition; every new moon he attended public sittings with the lawyers. His successor, el-Mufaḍḍal, also bore a very high character, and he was the first to insist on the necessary reform of keeping full records of causes. It was a laborious office, demanding besides juridical sessions the regulation of the religious festivals, keeping the calendar, often preaching in the mosque, and other duties, so that we read of several men refusing a post which taxed their energy and probity so severely. Abū-Khuzeyma accepted it only after the governor had sent for the executioner's axe and block. This ḳāḍī had been a rope-maker, and one day when on the bench he was asked by an old acquaintance for a halter, whereupon the good man fetched one from his house, and then went on with the case before the court. The combination of extreme simplicity and benevolence with a firm and dignified maintenance of the law of Islām procured him vast popularity.

852 The last Arab governor of Egypt, 'Anbasa, was the best of them all—a strong, just man who held a tight hand over his officials, and showed his subjects such goodwill as they had not known before. Unostentatious, he always went on foot from the government house at el-'Askar to the mosque; strict in his religious duties, he never failed to observe the fast of Ramaḍān in all its rigour. He was not only the last governor of Arab blood; he was also the last to take his place in the mosque as leader of the prayers, which was the duty of governors in the absence of the caliph, the supreme head of religion. 'Anbasa's tenure of office was memorable

for two invasions of Egypt from opposite ends. In May, 853, whilst the governor was celebrating the Feast of Sacrifice (10th Dhū-l-Ḥiǵǵa) at Fusṭāṭ, for the due observance of which he had ordered up most of the troops in garrison from Damietta and Tinnīs, and even from Alexandria, to take part in a grand review, the news arrived that the Romans were raiding the coast. They found Damietta deserted, and burned it, making prisoners of 600 women and children. By the time 'Anbasa reached the city they were off by sea to Tinnīs, and when he pursued, they had sailed home. As a precaution against similar surprises a fort was built to guard the approach to Damietta—as the Crusaders long afterwards discovered to their cost—and Tinnīs was similarly strengthened.

The other attack came from the Sūdān. In 854 the 854
Baǵā people of Nubia and the eastern desert repudiated the annual tribute, consisting of four hundred male and female slaves, a number of camels, two elephants, and two giraffes, which they had been compelled to send to Egypt ever since the campaign of 652. They put to the sword the Egyptian officers and miners in the Emerald mountains, and then falling upon the Ṣa'īd, plundered Esnē, Edfū and other places and sent the inhabitants flying north in a panic. This was a formidable affair, and 'Anbasa wrote to the caliph at Baghdād for instructions. In spite of the alarming accounts given him by several travellers as to the wildness of the country and the ferocity of the Baǵās, the caliph el-Mutawekkil decided to bring them to order. Great preparations were made in Egypt; quantities of stores, weapons, horses and camels were collected, and troops assembled, at Kuft, Esnē, Erment, Aswān, on the Nile, and Ḳuseyr on the Red Sea. Seven ships laden with stores sailed from Kulzum to Ṣanga near 'Aydhāb, at that time the chief port on the African coast of the Red Sea. The marshal, Moḥammad of Ḳumm, marched from Ḳūṣ with 7000 soldiers, crossed the desert to the emerald mines, and even approached Dongola. The news of his advance spread over the Sūdān, and 'Alī Bābā, its king, collected

a vast army to resist him. Fortunately for the Muslims these Sūdānīs, instead of wearing mail, were completely naked, and armed only with short spears, whilst their camels were ill-trained and unmanageable, as is the manner of their kind. When they saw the weapons and horses of the Arabs, they understood that they would have no chance against them in a set battle; but by manoeuvring and skirmishing from place to place they hoped to wear out the enemy and exhaust their provisions. In this they had nearly succeeded, when the seven ships from Kulzum appeared off the coast. To cut off the Arabs from their supplies, the Sūdānīs were forced to attack at all costs. The Arab general, however, had hung camel-bells on the necks of his horses, and let the blacks come up till they were almost at spear length; then, with a great shout of "Allāhu Akbar," he ordered a general charge, amid a deafening din of bells and drums, which so terrified the enemy's camels that they threw their riders and turned tail in a stampede. The plain was strewn with corpses, and 'Alī Bābā, who escaped, was glad to make peace and pay the arrears of tribute. The Muslim leader received him honourably, seated him on his own carpet, made him handsome presents, and induced him not only to pay a visit to Fusṭāṭ, but even to go and see the caliph at Baghdād. To the credit of the Muslims he was allowed to return in safety to his own people.[1]

After four years of good government and valiant
856 service, 'Anbasa was recalled, and a series of Turkish governors misruled the country. Disliking the Arabs with the hatred of race, and supported by a decree of the caliph el-Musta'īn, they favoured the Copts, restored many of their confiscated lands and possessions, and permitted the rebuilding of their churches. To the Arabs they were intolerable, and the Muslims were the victims of their eccentricities. One of them, Yezīd, entertained a strong aversion to eunuchs, and had them flogged out of the town; he also disliked the weird sound

[1] Ibn-Miskaweyh, ed. de Goeje, 550 ff.

of the women's wailing at funerals, and objected to horse-racing. In his government the second Nilometer at Rōḍa was founded, and the charge of measuring the rise of the Nile was taken away from the Copts, who had always fulfilled it. He possessed an evil genius in his finance minister, Ibn-Mudebbir, who invented new taxes, and besides the *kharāg'* (land-tax) and *hilālī* (monthly duties on shops and trades, etc.), established government monopolies in the natron mines and the fisheries, and imposed taxes on fodder and on wine-shops. The usual disturbances followed; first a rising at Alexandria, then in the Ḥawf, scarcely put down before another occurred at G'īza, and a fourth in the Fayyūm. The whole country fell into disorder, much bloodshed ensued, many were cast into prison, and the people were cruelly and fantastically oppressed. Women were straitly ordered to keep to their houses; they could not even visit the graves or go to the bath. Public performers and the professional keening women were imprisoned. No one might even say "In God's name" aloud in the mosque —a test point in orthodoxy—or deviate an inch from the orderly rows of the worshippers: a Turk stood by with a whip to marshal the congregation and keep the ranks, like a sergeant. A number of frivolous rules and changes in rites and customs exasperated the people. At last a Turk came who knew how to govern. His name was *Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn*, and he and his dynasty demand a separate chapter.

The following tables give the lists of the caliphs and governors, together with the heads of the departments of war (marshal), finance (treasurer), and justice (chief ḳāḍī). The list of ministers is doubtless incomplete; but a good many of the gaps are explained by the fact that a governor was often his own finance minister, and sometimes marshal as well. The genealogical complication of the names is necessary for identification, and the tribal names (as el-Baǵelī, el-Kelbī, el-Azdī) are interesting as showing their origin. It will be noticed that there was evidently a species of official class; for the same names, or the same families, often recur, and the man who was

marshal might become in turn ḳāḍī or governor. Some of the governors' and treasurers' names occur on coins, and on the glass weights and stamps impressed on measures of capacity, which are apparently peculiar to Egypt, and of which many examples have been published from the British Museum, the Khedivial Library, and Dr. Fouquet's fine collection at Cairo.

GOVERNORS OF EGYPT

I. UNDER EARLY CALIPHS

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
632 Abū-Bekr 634 'Omar	640 'Amr b. el-'Āṣī	Khāriǵa b. Ḥudheyfa Es-Sāíb b. Hishām		'Othmān b. Ḳeys	
644 'Othmān	644 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd	,,	Suleym b. 'Itr et-Tuǵībī	,,	'Oḳba b. 'Āmir el-G'uhenī
656 'Alī	656 Ḳeys b. Sa'd	,,			
	657-8 Moḥammad b. Abī-Bekr [Mālik b. el-Ḥārith el-Ashtar]	,,			

II. UNDER OMAYYAD CALIPHS

	658 'Amr b. el-'Āṣī *bis*				
661 Mo'āwiya				Suleym b. 'Itr	Khāriǵa b. Ḥudheyfa
	664 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr				
	664 'Otba b. Abī-Sufyān [1]	Mo'āwiya b. Ḥudeyǵ			'Abdallāh b. Keys b. el Ḥārith

[1] Brother of the caliph Mo'āwiya. Ṭabarī makes 'Abdallāh succeed his father 'Amr in 664 and govern Egypt till 667 (A.H. 47), when he was replaced by Mo'āwiya b. Ḥudeyǵ (47-50), who was followed by Maslama in 670 (50, Tab ii. 93, 94) : thus ignoring 'Otba and 'Oḳba ; Bilādhurī and Abū-l-Maḥāsin adopt

II. UNDER OMAYYAD CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
661 Mo'āwiya	665 'Oḳba b. 'Āmir el-G'uhenī				
	667 Maslama b. Mukhallad	Es-Sāïb b. Hishām		Es-Sāïb b. Hishām	Es-Sāïb b. Hishām
680 Yezīd					
['Abdallāh b. Zubeyr]	682 Sa'īd b. Yezīd el-Azdī	'Ābis		'Ābis	
683 Marwān	684 'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. 'Otba b. G'aḥdam el-Ḳurashī	,,		,,	
	685 'Abd-el-'Azīz b. Marwān [1]	'Amr b. Sa'īd		,, Bashīr b. en-Naḍr	
685 'Abd-el-Melik			'Abd-er Raḥmān b. Ḥuǵeyra el-Ḳhawlāni	'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Ḥuǵeyra	
		Yūnus b. 'Aṭīya 'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Mo āwiya		Mālik b. Sharāḥīl Yūnus b. 'Aṭīya 'Abd-er-Rahmān b. Mo'āwiya b. Ḥudeyǵ	
	705 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd-el-Melik [2]	Imrān b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Shuraḥbīl		'Imrān b. . . . Shuraḥbīl	'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. 'Amr

this version. Ṭabarī, however, is singularly defective in his scanty notices of Egyptian governors, and the same remark applies to his follower, Ibn-el-Athīr.

[1] Brother of the caliph 'Abd-el-Melik.
[2] Son of the caliph.

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
705 El-Welīd				ʿAbd-el-ʿAlā b. Khālid	
	709 [1] Ḳurra b. Sharīḳ el-ʿAbsī	ʿAbd-el-ʿAlā b. Khālid		ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAbd-er-Raḥmān b. Ḥuǵeyra	
	714 ʿAbd-el-Melik b. Rifāʿa el-Fehmī	El-Welīd b. Rīfāʿa	[2] Osāma b. Zeyd	ʿIyāḍh b. Abdalīāh Ibn-Ḥuǵeyra (again)	
715 Suleymān					
717 ʿOmar b. ʿAbd-el-ʿAzīz	717 Ayyūb b. Shurahbīl el-Aṣbahī	El-Ḥaṣan b. Yezīd	[3] Ḥayyān b. Shureyḥ		
720 Yezīd II.	720 Bishr b. Ṣafwān el-Kelbī	Shuʿeyb b. el-Ḥamīd			
	721 Ḥanḍhala b. Ṣafwān el-Fehmī	,,	[4] Obeydallāh b. el-Ḥabḥāb	Yaḥyā b. Meymūn	ʿOḳba b. Maslama
724 Hishām	724 Moḥammad b. ʿAbd-el-Melik b. Marwān	Ḥafṣ b. el-Welīd	,,	,,	

[1] A glass stamp (for a measure of capacity) in the Fouquet Coll., with this governor's name, is published by Casanova in *Mem. de la Miss. archéol. du Caire*, vi. p. 367.

[2] Glass weights of Osāma are in the British Museum (Lane-Poole, *Catalogue of Arabic Glass Weights in the B.M.*, No. 2) and Fouquet Coll. Osāma b. Zaid is mentioned as governing Egypt in A.H. 102 (720-1) by Ibn-el-Athīr, v. 77; but other historians do not give his name in that year.

[3] Glass weights of this treasurer are in B.M. and Fouquet.

[4] Several glass weigh's and stamps of this treasurer in B.M. and Fouquet; one dated A.H. 11[illegible] = 729-30 (*Catal. B.M.*, p. 108).

II. UNDER OMAYYAD CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
724 Hishām	724 El-Ḥurr b. Yūsuf	Ḥafṣ b. el-Welīd	ʿObeydallāh b. el-Ḥabḥāb	Yaḥyā b. Meymūn	Ḥafṣ b. el-Welīd
	727 Ḥafṣ b. el-Welīd el-Ḥaḍramī		,,	,,	
	727 ʿAbd-el-Melik b. Rifāʿa *bis*		,,	,,	
	727 El-Welīd b. Rifāʿa el-Fehmī	ʿAbdallāh b. Sumeyr el-Fehmī	,,	,,	
		ʿAbd-er-Raḥmān b. Khālid el-Fehmī	,,	El-Khiyār b. Khālid	
			Wuheyb b. el-Yaḥsubī	Tubā b. Nemir	
	735 ʿAbd-er-Raḥmān b. Khālid el-Fehmī	ʿAbdallāh b. Beshshār el-Fehmī		,,	
	737 Ḥanḍhala b. Ṣafwan *bis*	ʿIyādh b. Ḥayrama el-Kelbī	[1] El-Ḳāsim b. ʿObeydallāh b. el-Ḥabḥāb	,,	
El-Welīd II	742 [2] Ḥafṣ b. el-Welid *bis*	ʿOḳba b. Noʿeym er-Roʿeynī		Kheyr b. Noʿeym ,,	Kheyr ʿOḳba b. Noʿeym

[1] Maḳr. gives his date A.H. 114-116; but glass weights and stamps in the B.M. (no. 4) and Fouquet Coll. bear dates 119 and 122=737 and 740.

[2] Glass stamps and weights of Ḥafṣ have been published (B.M. *Catalogue*, and Casanova, *Collection Fouquet*).

II. UNDER OMAYYAD CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
744 Yezīd III.			[1] ʿIsā b. Abī-ʿAṭā	Kheyr b. Noʿeym	
744 Ibrāhīm				,,	
744 Marwān II.	745 Ḥassān b. ʿAṭāhiya et-Tuǵībī			,,	
	745 Ḥafṣ b. el-Welid *ter*			,,	
	745 El-Ḥawthara b. Suheyl el-Bāhilī		,,	ʿAbd-er-Rahmān b. Sālim	Ḥassān b. ʿAṭāhiya
	749 El-Mughīra b. ʿObeydallāh el-Fazārī	ʿAbdallāh b. el-Mughīra		,,	
		ʿAbdallāh b. Abd-er-Rahmān b. Ḥudeyǵ	ʿAbd-el-Melik b. Marwān	,,	
	750 [2] ʿAbd-el-Melik b. Marwān [1] el-Lakhmī	Marwān b. Marwān		,,	
		ʿIkrima b. Abdallāh			

[1] Glass stamps and weights of these officials have been published (B.M. *Catalogue*, and Casanova, *Collection Fouquet*).

[2] Besides glass weights and stamps of ʿAbd-el-Melik b. Marwān, there are coins bearing his name in the B.M. and at Cairo; some bearing the mint names Miṣr and El-Fusṭaṭ on opposite sides, and one Miṣr and El-Iskendarīya (?) (Alexandria). Lane-Poole, *Cat. Ar. Coins in Khediv. Coll.* pp. 114, 115.

III. UNDER 'ABBASĪD CALIPHS

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
750 Es-Saffāḥ	750 [1] Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī el-'Abbāsī	Yezīd b Hānī	'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Sālim	Kheyr b. No'eym	
	751 Abū-'Awn 'Abd-el-Melik	'Iḳrima b. 'Abd-allāh	'Aṭā b. Shuraḥbīl	Ghawth b. Suleymān	'Iḳrima b. 'Abd-allāh
	753 Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī *bis*	,,[2]	,,	,,	[1] El-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī
754 El-Manṣūr					
	754 Abū-'Awn *bis*	,,	,,	Abū-Khuzeyma	
	758 [1] Mūsā b. Ka'b et-Temīmī	,,	[1] Nawfal b. el-Furāt	,,	Khālid b. Ḥabīb
	759 [1] Moḥammad b. el-Ash'ath el Khuzā'ī	[1] El-Muhāǵir b. 'Othmān	,,	,,	
	760 Ḥumeyd b. Ḳaḥṭaba et-Ṭā'ī	Moḥammad b. Mo'āwiya	,,	,,	Moḥammad b. Mo'āwiya
	762 [1] Yezīd b Ḥātim el-Muhallebī	'Abdallāh b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Ḥudeyǵ	Mo'āwiya b. Marwān	Ghawth Abū-Khuzeyma	'Abdallāh b. 'Abd-el-Raḥmān b. Ḥudeyǵ

[1] Glass stamps and weights of these officials have been published (B.M. *Catalogue*, and Casanova, *Collection Fouquet*).

[2] Yezīd b. Hānī was marshal at el-'Askar; Iḳrima at el-Fusṭāṭ.

III. UNDER 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
754 El-Manṣūr	769 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Mo'āwiya b. Ḥudeyġ			Abū Khuzeyma	Moḥammad b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Ḥudeyġ
	772 Moḥammad b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān	El-'Abbās b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān		'Abdallāh b. Lahī'a	
	772 Mūsā b. 'Olayy el-Lakhmī	Abū-s-Ṣahbā b. Ḥassān		,,	
775 El-Mahdī	778 'Īsā b. Luḳmān			,,	
	779 [1]Wāḍiḥ	Mūsā b. Zarīḳ		,,	
	779 Manṣūr b. Yezīd er-Ro'eynī	Hāshim b. 'Abd-allāh		,,	
		'Abd-el-'Alā b. Sa'd		,,	
		'Assāma b. 'Amr			
	779 [1]Abū-Ṣāliḥ Yaḥyā (Ibn-Memdūd)			,,	
	780 Sālim b. Sawāda et-Temīmī	El-Akhdar b. Marwān	[1] Abū-Katīfa Ismā'īl	Ismā'īl b. Sumey'	
	781 [2]Ibrāhīm b. Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī el-'Abbāsī	'Assāma b. 'Amr		Ghawth	
				,,	

[1] Glass stamps and weights of these officials have been published (B M. *Cata'ogue* and *Collection Fouquet*).

[2] A coin of Ibrāhīm dated Miṣr 167=783-4 A.D. is published (*Cat. Cairo*, 863); also a weight and stamp (B.M., Fouquet).

III. UNDER 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
775 El-Mahdī	784 Mūsā b. Mus'ab	'Assāma b. 'Amr		Ghawth	
	785 'As āma b. Amr			El-Mufaḍḍal b. Fuḍāla	
	785 [1]El Fadl b. Ṣāliḥ b. Alī el-'Abbāsī	,,		Abū-Ṭāhir el-A'raǵ	
785 El-Hādi					
	786 'Alī b. Sulcymān b. Alī el-'Abbāsī	'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Mūsā		,,	
786 Er-Rashīd		El-Ḥasan b. Yezīd			
	787 [1]Mūsā b 'Īsā el-'Abbāsī	Ismā'īl b. 'Isā		,,	
		'As-āma b. 'Amr			
	789 Muslama b. Yaḥyā el-Baǵelī	'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Maslama		,,	
	789 Moḥammad b. Zuheyr el-Azdī	Ḥabīb b. Abān	'Omar b. Gheylān	,,	
	790 Dawūd b. Yezīd b. Ḥātim el-Muhallebī	'Ammār b. Mus'im	Ibrāhīm b. Ṣāliḥ	,,	
				El-Mufaḍḍal b. Fuḍāla	
	791 Mūsā b. 'Īsā el-'Abbāsī *bis*		Naṣr b. Kulthūm	,,	
	792 Ibrāhīm b. Ṣāliḥ el-'Abbāsī *bis*	Khālid b. Yezīd	,,	,,	'Assāma b. 'Amr etc.

[1] Glass stamps and weights of these officials have been published (B.M. *Catalogue*, and *Collection Fouquet*).

CALIPH		GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
786 Er-Rashīd	793	'Abdallāh b. el-Musayyab	Abū-l-Mukīs		El-Mufaḍḍal b. Fuḍāla Moḥammad b. Masrūk	
	793	Isḥāḳ b Suleymān b. 'Alī el-'Abbāsī	Muslim b. Bekkār el-'Oḳeylī		,,	
	794	Harthama b. A'yan			,,	
	794	'Abd-el-Melik b. Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī el-'Abbāsī (non-resident)			,,	'Abdallāh b. el-Musayyab
	795	'Obeydallāh b. el-Mahdī el-'Abbāsī	Mo'āwiya b. Ṣurad		,,	,,
			'Ammār b. Muslim			
	796	Mūsā b. 'Īsa el-'Abbāsī *ter*			,,	
	796	'Obeydallāh b. el-Mahdī *bis*			,,	Dāwūd b. Ḥubeyth
	797	[1]Ismā'īl b. Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī el-'Abbāsī	Suleymān b. eṣ-Ṣimma		,,	'Awn b. Wahb
	798	Ismā'īl b. 'Īsā b. Mūsā el-'Abbāsī	Zeyd b. 'Abd-el-'Aziz		,,	
	799	El-Leyth b el-Faḍl	'Alī b. el-Faḍl	Maḥfūdh b. Suleym	Isḥāḳ b. el-Furāt	'Alī b. el-Faḍl

[1] A weight of Ismā'īl is in B.M. (*Cat.* 23), but of the time when he was *moḥtesif* of Egypt under the caliph el-Mahdī.

III. UNDER 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
786 Er-Rashīd				'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. 'Abdallāh	Hāshim b. 'Abdallāh
	803 Aḥmad b. Ismā'īl b. 'Alī el-'Abbā ī	Mo'āwiya b. Ṣurad		,,	'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Mūsā
	805 'Obeydallāh (Ibn-Zeyneb) el-'Abbāsī	Aḥmad b. Mūsā		,,	Hāshim b. 'Abdallāh
		Moḥammad b. 'Assāma			
	806 El-Ḥuseyn b. G'emīl	El-Kāmil el-Ḥunā'ī		,,	
	807 Mālik b. Delhem el-Kelbī	Moḥammad b. Tubā		,,	
					El-'Alā b. 'Āṣim
	809 El-Ḥasan b. et-Takhtaḥ	Moḥammad b. G'eld	Moḥammad b. Ziyād	,,	
809 El-Amīn		Ṣāliḥ b. 'Abd-el-Kerīm			
		Suleymān b. Ghālib			'Awf b. Wuheyb
	810 Ḥātim b. Harthama b. A'yan	'Ali b. el-Muthanna		,,	
		'Obeydallāh et-Ṭarsūsī		Ḳāsim el-Bekrī	
	812 G'ābir b. el-Ash'ath et-Ṭā'ī			Ibrāhīm b. el-Bekkā	

III. UNDER ʿABBĀSID CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	VICE-GOVERNOR
809 El-Amīn	812 [1]ʿAbbād el-Balkhī	Ḥubeyra b. Hāshim b. Ḥudeyġ		Lahīʿa el-Ḥaḍramī	
813 El-Maʾmūn					
	813 [2]El-Muṭṭalib el-Khuzāʿī	,,		,,	
	814 [3]El-ʿAbbās b. Mūsā b. Īsā el-ʿAbbāsī	,,		,,	
	815 El-Muṭṭalib *bis*	,,		,,	
	816 [4]Es-Sarī b. el-Ḥakam	Moḥammad b. ʿAssāma		,,	
	816 Suleyman b. Ghālib el-Baġelī	Abū-Bekr b. G'unāda		,,	
	817 Es-Sarī *bis*	El-ʿAbbās b. Lahīʿa Moḥammad b. Osāma El-Ḥārith b. Zurʿa		,,	
		Meymūn b. es-Sarī		Ibrāhīm b. Isḥāḳ	
		Ibn-el-Mukhāriḳ		Ibrāhīm b. el-G'arrāḥ	
	820 [5]Moḥammad b. es-Sarī	Moḥammad b. Kabīs		,,	

[1] Gold coins of ʿAbbād dated 196, 197, 198 (812-813) are in the Cairo collection.

[2] Gold coins of el-Muṭṭalib dated 198, 199 (813-815), and silver of 199, are in B.M. and Cairo collections.

[3] Gold coin of el-ʿAbbās, dated 198, is in Cairo coll.

[4] Gold coins of es-Sarī dated 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, (815-820) are in the B.M., Cairo, or Artīn Pasha's coll.s.

[5] Gold coins of Mohammad b. es-Sarī dated 205, 206 (820-2) are in the B.M., Cairo, and Hermitage colls.

III. UNDER ʿABBÀSID CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	FIEFFEE
813 El-Maʾmūn		ʿObeydallāh b. es-Sarī		Ibrahīm b. el-G′arrāḥ	
	822 [1]ʿObeydallāh b. es-Sarī	Moḥammad b. ʿOḳba			
	826 ʿAbdallāh b Ṭāhir	Muʿādh b. ʿAzīz		,,	
		ʿAbdaweyh b. G′ebela		,,	
	827 ʿĪ ā b. Yezīd el-G′alūdī	Moḥammad b. ʿĪsā el G′alūdī	Ṣāliḥ b. Shīrzād	ʿIsā b. el-Munḳadir	
				,,	El-Moʿtaṣim
	829 ʿOmeyr b el-Weʾīd et-Temīmī	Moḥammad b. ʿOmeyr		,,	
	829 ʿĪsā b. Yezīd *bis*			,,	
	829 El-Moʿtaṣim el-ʿAbbāsī			[No Ḳāḍi]	
	830 ʿAbdaweyh b. G′ebela	Ibn-ʿAbdaweyh			
	831 ʿĪsā b. Manṣūr	Yūnus			
	832 El-Maʾmūn (the caliph)				
	832 Naṣr b. ʿAbdallāh (Keydar)	Ibn-Isʿendiyār		Hārūn ez-Zuhrī	
		El-Muẓaffar b. Keydar			
833 El-Moʿtaṣim	834 El-Muẓaffar b. Keydar			,,	Ashnās [2]

[1] Gold coins of ʿObeydallah dated 206, 207, 208, 209, 210 (821-826) are in the B.M. and Cairo colls.

[2] A glass weight of Ashnās, stamped by an under-official in Egypt, dated 223 (838) is in B.M. (Cat. 2, G).

III. UNDER 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	FIEFEE
833 El-Mo'taṣim	834 Mūsā el-Ḥanafī			Hārūn ez-Zuhrī	
	839 Mālik b. Keydar			,,	
	841 'Alī b. Yaḥyā el-Armenī		Abū-l-Wezīr	Moḥammad b Abī-l-Leyth	
842 El-Wāthiḳ					
	843 'Isā b. Manṣūr *bis*			,,	
847 El-Mutawekkil	847 Harthama b. en-Naḍr	Abū-Ḳuteyba		,,	Itāsh
	849 Ḥātim b. Harthama			,,	
	849 'Alī b. Yaḥyā *bis*	Mo'āwiya b. No'eym		,,	
					El-Muntaṣir
	850 Isḥāḳ b. Yaḥyā (Khūṭ)	El-Ḥaǵǵāǵī		,,	
	851 'Abd-el-Wāḥid b. Yaḥyā	Moḥammad b. Suleymān el-Baǵelī		El-Ḥārith b. Meskīn	
	852 'Anbasa b. Isḥāḳ	Moḥammad el-Ḳummī	Aḥmad b. Khālid	,,	
	856 Yezīd b. 'Abdallāh et-Tūrkī		Aḥmad b. Mudebbir	Bekkār b. Ḳuteyba	
861 El-Muntaṣīr					El-Feṭḥ b. Khāḳān
862 El-Musta'īn					

III. UNDER 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS (*continued*)

CALIPH	GOVERNOR	WAR	FINANCE	JUSTICE	FIEFFEE
866 El-Mo'tezz	867 Muzāḥim b. Khāḳān	Arǵūz b. Ulugh Ṭarkhān	Aḥmad b. Mudebbir	Bekkār b. Ḳuteyba	
	868 Aḥmad b. Muzāḥim		,,	,,	
	868 Arǵūz Ṭarkhān		,,	,,	Bāḳbāḳ

CHAPTER III

ṬŪLŪN AND IKHSHĪD

868—969

Authorities.—El-Mas'ūdī, G'emāl-ed-dīn of Aleppo, Ibn-el-Athīr, Ibn-Khallikān, el-Maḳrīzī, Abū-l-Maḥāsin, es-Suyūṭī, Ibn-Khaldūn.

Monuments.—Mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, aqueduct south of Cairo, new Nilometer at Rōḍa.

Inscriptions.—Mosque, Nilometer (?), gravestones, two shop title-deeds of wood (see van Berchem, *Corpus inscr. arab.*).

Coins.—Mints: Miṣr (i.e. el-Fusṭāṭ), Damascus, Aleppo, Emesa, Antioch, Ḥarrān, er-Rāfiḳa, Palestine (i.e. er-Ramla).

Since 856 the governors of Egypt had been Turks, and, twenty years before that, the province had been given in fee to successive Turks at Baghdād, who appointed lieutenant-governors to administer it for them. This change from Arab to Turkish rule was part of a revolution which was felt in most parts of the caliphate, and led to the extinction of the temporal authority of the "commander of the faithful." From the time when the Arabs came in contact with the Turks on the Oxus and brought them under their rule, Turkish slaves had been highly prized in Muslim households. Their physical strength and beauty, their courage, and their fidelity had won the trust of the great emīrs, and especially of the caliphs, who believed they could rely more safely upon the devotion of these purchased foreigners than upon their own jealous Arabs or the Persians among whom they dwelt and who had hitherto had a large share in the administration of the empire. The young Turkish slave who served his master well usually acquired his freedom and received valuable court appointments. "The caliphs, who were often unable to appease the turbulent spirits of the native

emīrs, except by granting them special privileges and territorial rights, were gradually led into the opposite error in alienating the most powerful of their own subjects, and in giving all their confidence to these foreign slaves, who thus acquired the entire control of the interior of the palace. These illiterate and barbarous white slaves (or *mamlūks*), now incorporated into the society of the educated rulers of a great empire, soon became conversant with the law of the Ḳorān. They adopted the language and religion of their masters. They studied science and politics; and when any of them became capable of undertaking the more difficult tasks or of occupying the more eminent posts in the court, they were emancipated, and appointed to the various government offices according to the talents they displayed. Thus manumitted Turks were appointed not only to the chief offices in the palace, but to the governorships of some of the most important provinces in the empire."[1] Not only so, but they were formed into a special bodyguard by the caliph el-Mo'taṣim, son of Hārūn er-Rashīd, and from that time forward took the leading part in the setting up and putting down of the caliphs, and maintained a reign of terror in Baghdād.

Ṭūlūn was one of these slaves, a Turk of the Taghāzghān tribe, who was sent to Baghdād with other youths by the governor of Bukhārā as a present to the caliph el-Ma'mūn in 815, and rose to high rank at court. His son (real or adopted) Aḥmad, the future ruler of Egypt, was born in September, 835, and received the usual careful education of the age, studying not merely Arabic and the Ḳorān, but jurisprudence and divinity according to the teaching of the great Muslim schoolman Abū-Ḥanīfa. Not content with the able professors of Baghdād, he visited Ṭarsūs several times to study under special lecturers, until he became himself an authority on points of criticism and doctrine. Along with this culture, he pursued with great industry and delight the course of

[1] E. T. Rogers, *Coins of the Ṭūlūnī dynasty* (*Numism. Orient.* iv.) 2.

military instruction given to the young Turks at Samarrā, the caliph's new residence up the Tigris. On one of his journeys from Ṭarsūs he was able to defeat some Arab marauders and rescue a large treasure which was being brought from Constantinople to the caliph ; and later he was chosen to accompany the deposed pontiff el-Musta'in in his exile at Wāsiṭ. When offered a handsome bribe to put the caliph out of the way, Aḥmad indignantly refused. His loyalty brought him no disfavour among the Turks, however, and when the emīr Bāḳbāḳ, who had married the widow of Ṭūlūn (†854), was presented to the fief of Egypt, he sent his stepson Aḥmad as his representative.

Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad ibn-Ṭūlūn entered Fusṭāṭ in September, 868, at the age of thirty-three. A rich friend 868
advanced 10,000 *D.* to meet his expenses, since the new governor was apparently penniless, and having held no previous appointment was quite unversed in the official methods of squeezing his subjects. He was a man of great ability, however, and a good judge of men, and he soon made his authority felt. Throughout his reign he had an able coadjutor in his secretary, Aḥmad of Wāsiṭ. He had to deal first with the treasurer, Ibn-Mudebbir, a crafty peculator, who had enjoyed a free hand with the revenue for some years, and kept up a state which outshone the governor's. He was always followed by a mounted escort of a hundred powerful young slaves, beautiful to behold, and dressed with elaborate finery, Persian cloaks, and silver-mounted whips. Judging the new governor by his own standard, the treasurer sent him 10,000 *D.* as a small douceur, and was surprised to find them returned. Ibn-Ṭūlūn presently informed him that instead of the money he would accept the guard, and the treasurer had to send him his escort of slaves. Finding his authority vanishing with his pomp, he appealed to the caliph to remove the imperturbable governor ; but Ibn-Ṭūlūn stayed on. He had other enemies besides 869
those of his ministry. The 'Alids rose to the west of Alexandria in 869 ; other 'Alids carried fire and sword through the district of Esnē in the Ṣa'īd. Both were put

down, not without hard fighting, and driven to the oases.

Meanwhile the nominal governor of Egypt, Ibn-Ṭūlūn's stepfather, was beheaded; but the appointment was fortunately given to the emīr Barġūġ, whose daughter was Ibn-Ṭūlūn's wife. The new nominee not only gave his son-in-law a free hand in Egypt,—writing simply, "Go

Fig. 11.—Section of Nilometer on island of Rōḍa, 9th century.

your own way as you like"—but delivered into his charge the city of Alexandria and other places which had not been included in his original patent of command. Ibn-Ṭūlūn took over the government of the great port in 870, but wisely left the former commandant in office. His power was now so firm that when the province once

more changed its nominal head, in 872, he scarcely troubled to obtain the formal ratification of the new chief, el-Muwaffaḳ, the caliph's brother. He was accordingly summoned to appear before the caliph at his palace of Samarrā on the Tigris, to give an account of his stewardship. This too obvious manoeuvre of his enemies was met very simply by sending his secretary with ample bribes and tribute money, and it ended in strengthening his position. His two chief secret opponents in Egypt were got rid of: one was so terrified by his threats that he went home and died; the other, the treasurer, Ibn-Mudebbir, was glad to exchange his post for the exchequer of Syria.

Ibn-Ṭūlūn now held kingly state in Egypt. The government house at el-'Askar, the official suburb of Fusṭāṭ, was too small to house his numerous retinue and army. He was not content, either, with a mere governor's palace. In 870 he chose a site on the hill of Yeshkūr, 870
between Fusṭāṭ and the Muḳaṭṭam hills, levelled the graves of the Christian cemetery there, and founded the royal suburb of el-Ḳaṭāi' or "the Wards," so called because each separate class or nationality (as household servants, Greeks, Sūdānīs) had a distinct quarter assigned to it. The new town stretched from the present Rumeyla beside the citadel to the shrine of Zeyn-el-'Abidīn, and covered a square mile. The new palace was built below the old "Dome of the Air," and had a great garden and a spacious enclosed horse-course or meydān adjoining it, with mews and a menagerie; the government house was on the south of the great mosque, which still stands, and there was a private passage which led from the residence to the oratory of the emīr. A separate palace held the ḥarīm, and there were magnificent baths, markets, and all apparatus of luxury. The great mosque was not begun till 876-7 and took two years in building. It is remarkable for the use (for the first time in mosques) of brick piers, instead of stone columns taken from earlier monuments, and for being the earliest dated example (the pointed arches of the second Nilometer on the island of Rōḍa are possibly a few years earlier) of pointed

Fig. 12.—Mosque of Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn at Cairo, 877-79.

arches throughout the building,—earlier by at least two centuries than any in England. Its architect was a Copt, and was granted 100,000 dīnārs to build the mosque, and given 10,000 for himself, with a handsome allowance for life.[1] Another great work was the building by the same Coptic architect of an aqueduct to bring water to the palace from a spring in the southern desert.[2] Ibn-Ṭūlūn also dredged and cleared the canal of Alexandria, repaired the Nilometer on the island of Rōḍa and built a fort there.

When it is noted that in 870 the treasurer sent 750,000*D.* as tribute to the caliph, and in four years 2,200,000 ; that some of the new buildings at Ḳaṭāi' were estimated to have cost nearly half a million, that Ibn-Ṭūlūn gave to the poor at least 1000*D.* a month beyond the obligatory alms, kept open house and spent 1000*D.* a day

[1] The story of the origin of the curious corkscrew tower or minaret, in the winding of a strip of paper round the finger, is well-known. The true original of the tower, however, seems to be the similar corkscrew tower at Samarrā, which Ibn-Ṭūlūn doubtless saw in his youth. Architects, however, throw doubts on the antiquity of Ibn-Ṭūlūn's minaret.

[2] A story is told that some objection was made to the water conveyed in this aqueduct, and Ibn-Ṭūlūn sent for the learned doctor Moḥammad ibn-'Abd-el-Ḥakam. "I was one night in my house," he related, "when a slave of Ibn-Ṭūlūn's came and said, 'The emir wants thee.' I mounted my horse in a panic of terror, and the slave led me off the high road. 'Where are you taking me,' I asked. 'To the desert,' was the reply ; 'the emīr is there.' Convinced that my last hour was come, I said, 'God help me ! I am an aged and feeble man : do you know what he wants with me.' The slave took pity on my fears and said, 'Beware of speaking disrespectfully of the aqueduct.' We went on till suddenly I saw torch-bearers in the desert, and Ibn-Ṭūlūn on horseback at the door of the aqueduct, with great wax candles burning before him. I forthwith dismounted and salaamed, but he did not greet me in return. Then I said, 'O emīr, thy messenger hath grievously fatigued me, and I thirst ; let me, I beg, take a drink.' The pages offered me water, but I said, 'No, I will draw for myself.' I drew water while he looked on, and drank till I thought I should have burst. At last I said, 'O emīr, God quench thy thirst at the rivers of Paradise ! for I have drunk my fill, and know not which to praise most, the excellence of this cool, sweet, clear water, or the delicious smell of the aqueduct.' 'Let him retire,' said Ibn-Ṭūlūn, and the slave whispered, 'Thou hast hit the mark'" (Maḳrīzī, *Khiṭaṭ*).

on his table, was lavish to learned men, had a large army and a numerous household to pay, and costly forts to maintain on the frontier, it is incredible that he could have met all his expenses on the revenue of 4,300,000*D.* a year ;[1] and the legend that he paid for his mosque with treasure which he dug up is natural enough. It is more than probable that he mulcted the Coptic patriarch now and then in heavy fines, as the Christian writers allege, though he did not extort unjust taxes from the Coptic population, who enjoyed a rare immunity from persecution during his reign. The constantly increasing expenditure, however, led to the discontinuance of the annual surplus to the caliph's brother. El-Muwaffaḳ prepared an army to depose the too powerful viceroy, but it came to nought; the army got no further than Raḳḳa, where it stopped for lack of funds. Nor did two rebellions in the Ṣa'īd and in Barḳa succeed any better.

872 Encouraged by this immunity, Ibn-Ṭūlūn extended his borders. He had before this been on the point of occupying Syria at the caliph's desire, and though another governor was afterwards appointed, he held that he had a prior claim to the province. On the death of this governor, Māǵūr, who had proved a formidable and jealous obstacle to his advance, Ibn-Ṭūlūn set aside the title of the son who had been appointed in Māǵūr's place, and throwing off all semblance of obedience to the caliph,
878 marched in April, 878, to Damascus and received the immediate homage of the officials and inhabitants. Thence he made a progress through Syria, accepting the allegiance of the chief towns, as far as Ṭarsūs, the scene of his early studies. Only Antioch resisted, under Sīmā the Long, and after a bombardment by mangonels, aided by treason within, was stormed and sacked in September. Maṣṣīṣa and Adhana were next occupied, but Ṭarsūs for the moment defied his attack. His dominions now stretched from the Euphrates and the frontier of the

[1] G'emāl-ed-dīn, who gives these details, only mentions the *kharāǵ* or land-tax, which (he says) rose from 800,000 under Ibn-Mudebbir to 4,300,000 under Ibn-Ṭulūn. To this must apparently be added the poll-tax on non-Muslims, and other duties and contributions.

Byzantine empire to Barḳa on the Mediterranean, and Aswān at the first cataract of the Nile.[1] Leaving strong detachments at Raḳḳa, Ḥarrān and Damascus, to hold his new possession, and carrying away 600,000 *D.* which he

Fig 13.—Founder's inscription in mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, 879.

extorted from his old enemy Ibn-Mudebbir, the treasurer of Syria, he hastened back to Egypt, after just a year's

[1] Ibn-Ṭūlūn first began to put his name on his coinage after this campaign. Hitherto the coins struck by him in Egypt bore only the name of the reigning caliph; but in A.H. 266 (879-880) the dīnārs of Miṣr present the name of Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn as well as the caliph's. He never omitted the caliph's name, but he did not add (as governors of other provinces did) the name of the regent el-Muwaffaḳ. His coins were issued at Miṣr in A.H. 266, 267, 268, 269, 270 (the year of his death); er-Rāfiḳa, 267, 268, 270; Damascus, 270.

absence, to deal with his eldest son, el-'Abbās, who had taken advantage of his temporary elevation to the office of vice-governor to throw off the paternal authority. On his father's approach, however, he lost courage, and carrying off all the treasure and war material he could lay hands on, retreated with 800 horse and 10,000 of his father's famous black infantry to Barḳa. His father tried persuasion, and sent the ḳāḍī Bekkār to reason with him, in vain ; the fatuous young man refused all offers, and dreamed of a North African kingdom. He even laid siege to Tripolis, and plundered Lebda, until driven off with heavy loss by the Aghlabid prince of Tūnis. After eluding his pursuers for two years, he was at length defeated and captured by his father's troops, and brought to Fusṭāṭ, where he witnessed (some say he was forced to
881 take part in) the torture and execution of his fellow-rebels, received a hundred stripes himself, and spent the rest of his life in captivity.

The breach between Ibn-Ṭūlūn and his nominal superior el-Muwaffaḳ, the caliph's brother, was widened when the latter trafficked with the loyalty of Lu'lu, the commander of the Egyptian detachment on the frontier at Raḳḳa.[1] Lu'lu went over with all his army to the enemy, and even drove Ibn-Ṭūlūn's representative, Ibn-Ṣafwān, out of Ḳarḳīsiyā, on the Euphrates. El-Muwaffaḳ was far the most powerful prince in Mesopotamia, and he made his power felt so

Fig. 14.—Dīnār of Aḥmad ibn-Ṭūlūn, Miṣr, 881.

[1] A dīnār struck at er-Rāfiḳa (a suburb of er-Raḳḳa) in A H. 268 (881-2) bears the name of Lu'lu beneath that of Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn (Lane-Poole, *Cat. Cairo Collection*, no. 905). In the following year Lu'lu threw over Ibn-Ṭūlūn and joined el-Muwaffaḳ's party. In 270 a Rāfiḳa dīnār appeared with Ibn-Ṭūlūn's name, but without Lu'lu's (Lavoix, *Cat. Monn. Or., Égypte*, no. 3).

disagreeably to his brother, el-Mo'temid, that in 882 the helpless caliph attempted to escape to Ibn-Ṭūlūn, who had offered him protection, partly, no doubt, with a view to saving the annual tribute, and partly to diminish the influence of Muwaffaḳ. The presence of the caliph under his wing at Miṣr would, no doubt, have increased the ambitious governor's prestige, and might have changed to some extent the future both of the caliphate and of Egypt; but the fugitive was unhappily caught on his way, and taken back to Samarrā. An attempt of Ibn- 883
Ṭūlūn's to get possession of the holy city of Mekka, for his greater glory, was also frustrated. His troops were driven out, and he was publicly cursed in the sacred mosque.

These repulses only exasperated the governor of Egypt, and he showed his resentment by cutting the name of the regent Muwaffaḳ out of the Friday bidding-prayer which (with the coinage) in Mohammadan countries forms the official act of homage to the sovereign powers. He even assembled a meeting of ḳāḍīs and lawyers at Damascus, who proclaimed the deposition of the regent and his exclusion from the succession, on the ground of his ill-treatment of his brother the caliph. Bekkār, who had been ḳāḍī of Egypt for more than twenty years, and was distinguished for his scrupulous conscientiousness, refused to sign the declaration, of which both the grounds and legality were doubtful; he was accordingly thrown into prison, where he languished till his death, still holding his dignified office, and teaching students from the window of the gaol. The only result of these futile proceedings was that the caliph was forced by his imperious brother to order Ibn-Ṭūlūn to be cursed from the pulpit in every mosque in his dominions. There can be little doubt that if el-Muwaffaḳ had not been taxed to the utmost in dealing with a serious revolt of the Zenǵ or East African slaves who had settled in lower Mesopotamia, Ibn-Ṭūlūn's effrontery would have been more severely punished.

He had better fortune on the north-west border, where his friendly relations with the emperor had been changed

to hostility, and Khalaf, his lieutenant at Ṭarsūs, had (881) led a successful raid and returned with much booty. Again, in 883, the Romans under Kesta Stypiotes suffered a disastrous defeat at Chrysobullon[1] near Ṭarsūs at the hands of Ibn-Ṭūlūn's forces, in which at least 60,000 Christians are said to have fallen, and valuable spoils of gold and silver, jewelled crucifixes, sacred vessels, and vestments, besides 15,000 horses, were taken. The eunuch who had commanded the victorious army was so elated that he threw off his master's yoke, and Ibn-Ṭūlūn was obliged to march in person to vindicate his authority. It was a severe winter, and his opponent dammed the river, flooded the country, and nearly drowned the besieging army at Adhana. Ibn-Ṭūlūn was forced to retire to Antioch, where a copious indulgence in buffalo milk, following upon the exposure

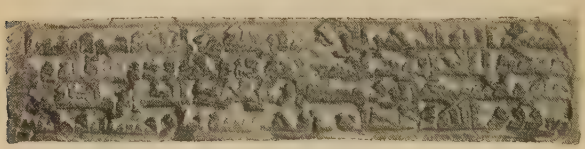


Fig. 15.—Title-deed (on wood) to a shop, 882.

and privations of the campaign, brought on a dysentery. He was carried in a litter to Fusṭāṭ, where he grew worse. In sickness the fierce emīr was a terror to his doctors. He refused to follow their orders, flouted their prescribed diet, and when he found himself still sinking, he had their heads chopped off, or flogged them till they died. In vain Muslims, Jews, and Christians offered up public prayers for his recovery. Ḳorān and Tora and Gospel
884 could not save him; and he died in May, 884, before he had reached the age of fifty.

Aḥmad ibn-Ṭūlūn is described by Ibn-Khallikān, who

[1] Theophanis Contin., pp. 286-8 (ed. Bonn); George the Monk, p. 847 (ed. Bonn).

used the almost contemporary biography of Ibn-ed-Dāya, as "a generous prince, just, brave, and pious; an able ruler, an unerring judge of character. He directed in person all public affairs, re-peopled the provinces, and inquired diligently into the condition of his subjects. He admired men of learning, and kept every day an open table for his friends and the public. A monthly sum of 1000 *D.* was expended by him in alms, and when one of his officials consulted him as to giving relief to a woman who wore a good veil and a gold ring, yet asked for charity, he answered, 'Give to every one who holds out the hand to you.' But with all these virtues he was too hasty with the sword, and it is related that 18,000 persons were put to death by him or died in his prisons. He knew the Ḳorān by heart, and had a beautiful voice: none recited it more diligently than he." In spite of the necessity of a large revenue to furnish the means for his grandiose plans and magnificent buildings, and his extravagant court, so far from raising the taxes, he abolished Ibn-Mudebbir's new imposts, and encouraged peasant proprietorship and security of tenure, to use modern terms; so that his revenue was due more to better cultivation than to extortion. He left ten million dināṛs in his treasury, from seven to ten thousand mounted mamlūks, twenty-four thousand slaves of the bodyguard, a stud of three hundred horses, thousands of mules, asses, and camels, and a hundred ships of war. He was at least the first Muslim, since the Arab conquest, who revived the power of Egypt and beautified her capital.

Abū-l-G'eysh Khumāraweyh,[1] the second of Aḥmad's seventeen sons (he had besides sixteen daughters), succeeded his father. The eldest son was still expiating his rebellion in prison, where his warders now made an

[1] Khumāraweyh's coinage, almost entirely of gold like the rest of the Ṭūlūnid coinage, was issued at Miṣr, A.H. 271 (884-5 A.D.) consecutively every year to 282 (895-6); er-Rāfiḳa, 270, 273, 275, 276, 278, 279; Damascus, 272, 275, 276, 277, 281; Emesa (Ḥimṣ), 274; Ḥarrān, 276; Antioch, 276, 278, 279; Aleppo, 281; Filesṭin (Palestine, i.e. er-Ramla), 277, 278

end of him, to save disputes. A youth of only twenty years, with a decided taste for self-indulgence, and no experience of either war or government, Khumāraweyh seemed marked out as the prey of craftier heads; and it needed one or two sharp lessons to rouse him to the degree of energy necessary for the preservation of his realm. It says much for his character that he was able to recover from his first humiliations, and not only to maintain but extend his inheritance. Two formidable antagonists, the Turkish governors of Mōṣil and Anbār, on the Tigris and Euphrates, combined with the warden of Damascus to overthrow the supremacy of Egypt in Syria, and restore Khumāraweyh's Asiatic possessions to the caliph, or rather to his active brother, Muwaffaḳ. They had a fair pretext, since Khumāraweyh had no official title to the government of Egypt, whilst the governor of Mōṣil, Isḥāḳ ibn Kundāǵik, had received the caliph's diploma for it. There was no hereditary title at that date. They occupied Syria, supported by Muwaffaḳ's son, Abū-l-'Abbās, who entered Damascus
885 in February, 885. Khumāraweyh had already sent troops by land and sea to oppose them, and an Egyptian force had been blockaded and defeated at Sheyzar, on the Orontes. He then led a fresh army of 70,000 men into Palestine, which encountered a small force of the enemy under Abū-l-'Abbās at eṭ-Ṭawāḥīn, "The Mills," on the Abū-Butrus river, near Ramla. Unhappily, Khumāraweyh, who had never before seen a pitched battle, was seized with panic, and fled pell-mell to Egypt, followed by the greater part of his army. Only the reserve stood firm, under Sa'd el A'sar, and whilst their prince and comrades were vying with each other who should first reach safety at Miṣr, this sturdy remnant fell upon the enemy, who were busily engaged in plundering the Egyptian camp, and utterly routed them. Sa'd searched in vain for his master, whose disgraceful flight was hardly credited, and then marched on Damascus, and from the recovered capital of Syria sent a despatch to his trembling sovereign announcing the unexpected news of a brilliant victory. As Khumāraweyh stayed idly in Egypt for a

whole year—a year marked by a violent earthquake, which shook down houses, damaged the mosque of 'Amr, and killed a thousand people in Fusṭāṭ in a single day—the impression of his cowardliness was confirmed, and Sa'd, at Damascus, declined to serve such a master. On his declaration of independence, Khumāraweyh set out again, gained a decisive victory over his rebellious subject, and entered Damascus in June, 886. Continuing his march, he met the governor of Mōṣil, Ibn-Kundāǵik, in 886
pitched battle, and checking a retreat with much personal bravery, drove the enemy in confusion as far as Samarrā on the Tigris. Having vindicated his character as a general, he concluded peace with Muwaffaḳ, and a diploma, signed by the caliph and his brother, and by the heir to the caliphate, was sent assigning him the governments of Egypt, Syria, and the Roman marches, for thirty years.

Inspired by his successes, Khumāraweyh accepted an appeal to interfere in a contest then in progress between Ibn-Abī-Sāǵ, the governor of Anbār, and his former ally, Ibn-Kundāǵik, and the result of a campaign in Mesopotamia was the capture of Raḳḳa,[1] and the recognition of the prince of Egypt as regent and governor of Mōṣil and Mesopotamia in the public prayers. His new vassal, Ibn-Abī-Sāǵ, however, proving fickle, invaded Syria, and Khumāraweyh once more displayed his generalship by defeating him in May, 888, near 888
Damascus, and pursuing him as far as Beled on the Tigris, on the bank of which the conqueror built a lofty throne to sit in triumph. The war of the emīrs kept him in Mesopotamia and Syria for more than a year. One result of his enhanced reputation was the adhesion of Yāzmān, or Bazmāz, the eunuch governor of Ṭarsūs, who had repudiated the authority of the Ṭūlūnids since 883, but now signified his homage with presents of 30,000 *D.*, 1000 robes, and arms, and followed them up

[1] Coins of er-Rāfiḳa (i.e. Raḳḳa) of A.H. 273 and 275 bear the name of Khumāraweyh, but one of 274 (A.D. 887-8) omits his name. This was doubtless struck during Ibn-Kundāǵik's occupation of Raḳḳa.

with 50,000 *D.* more. Several raids were made from Ṭarsūs into Roman territory in 891-4.

The death of Muwaffaḳ in 891, followed by that of Ibn-Kundāǵik, and of the caliph Mo'temid in 892, led to
892 a closer understanding between Egypt and Baghdād. The former diploma was renewed for thirty years, and Khumāraweyh offered to marry his daughter Ḳaṭr-en-Nedā ("Dewdrop") to the caliph's son. El-Mo'taḍid, however, preferred to wed her himself. The bride was hardly ten years old, but the wedding was postponed till 895, when she was nearly twelve. An exchange of costly presents preceded the marriage; the caliph's *dot* included a million dirhems, rare perfumes from China and India, and various precious things; the bride was carried on a litter from Egypt to Mesopotamia, and at every night's halt she found a palace built ready for her with every possible luxury prepared. Her portion included 4000 jewelled waistbands, ten coffers of jewels, and a thousand gold mortars for pounding the perfumes for her elaborate toilette. This aristocratic alliance cost Khumāraweyh a million dīnārs; but in return his dominion was once more confirmed from Hīt on the Euphrates to Barḳa on the Mediterranean, and his annual tribute to the caliph was fixed at 300,000*D.* The yearly pay of his troops in Egypt amounted to 900,000*D.*; and his kitchen alone cost him 23,000*D.* a month. The caliph viewed with satisfaction the impoverishment of his formidable vassal, whose extravagance increased with every year. The passion which Ibn-Ṭūlūn had shown for splendid building was fully shared by his son, who enlarged the palace in Ḳaṭāi', and converted the Meydān into a garden stocked with all kinds of sweet-smelling flowers, planted in the form of sentences and other designs, with rare trees, and date palms set with gilded tanks of water. An aviary was filled with beautiful birds. His "golden-house" was adorned with painted images of himself and his wives and singers, despite the Muslim prejudice against portraiture. And to soothe his restless nights an air-bed

was laid upon a lake of quicksilver,[1] nearly a hundred feet square (*sic !*), and rocked very agreeably, moored by silken cords to silver columns. A tame lion from his menagerie guarded his master whilst he slept.

Neither the lion nor his bodyguard of vigorous young Arabs from the truculent Ḥawf could save the voluptuous prince from the jealousies of his ḥarīm. Early in 896 [896] some domestic intrigue ended in his being murdered by his slaves whilst on a visit to Damascus. His murderers were crucified, and, amid loud lamentations, his body was buried beside his father's, not far from his stately palace, under Mount Muḳaṭṭam. Seven Ḳorān readers were engaged in reciting the sacred book at the tomb of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, and when the bearers brought the body of Khumāraweyh and began to lower it into the grave, they happened to be chanting the verse, "Seize him and hurl him into the fire of hell" (Ḳor. xliv. 47).

His eldest son, Abū-l-'Asākir G'eysh,[2] who succeeded him, was a boy of fourteen, utterly incapable of taking a serious view of his position, and wrapped up in the pleasures and follies of his age. Syria and the northern frontier disowned his authority, the army and government were neglected, the treasury empty; and after murdering three of his uncles the young savage was himself assassinated by his troops, after a few months' abuse of power. His last public act was to throw two of his murdered uncles' heads to the mutineers, crying, "There are your emīrs for you!" His younger brother, Abū-Mūsā Hārūn,[3] was now set on the throne with Ibn-Abālī, the major domo, as regent; but the prince was as careless and incapable as his brother, and the regent was no statesman. The Turkish officers did what they pleased; an uncle led a rebel army to Fusṭāṭ, but was defeated; and Syria and Ṭarsūs were under no sort of

[1] Traces of the quicksilver were found in later years on excavating the ground after the destruction of the palace.

[2] A coin of Miṣr, A.H. 283 (896) bears the name of G'eysh b. Khumāraweyh.

[3] Hārūn's coins are struck at Miṣr, A.H. 283—92; Damascus, 284, 288; Aleppo, 285, and Palestine, 285, 290, 291.

control, though the caliph accorded Hārūn the patent as
898 governor of Syria and Egypt, on condition of paying a yearly tribute of 450,000*D.*, and resigning the northern districts of Syria. The Ḳarmaṭīs (Carmathians) overran Syria and laid siege to Damascus, and the Egyptian armies suffered heavy losses. The caliph at last found it necessary to interfere. Strengthened by a decisive victory over the Carmathians, and supported by some leading Egyptian emīrs in Syria, he sent a fleet from Ṭarsūs to Damietta and an army overland to 'Abbāsa, a small town on the Syrian frontier, a day's march from Bilbeys, developed out of one of the rest-houses erected to smooth the progress of "Dewdrop" to her nuptials at Baghdād. Here Hārūn assembled his half-hearted troops, and here, as he lay intoxicated in bed, two of his uncles entered his tent and made away with
904 his useless life.[1] The murderer Sheybān, son of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, took his nephew's government, and prudently withdrew the army to Miṣr, where he laboured, in spite of a depleted treasury, to win popularity by promises and gifts. The caliph's general, Moḥammad b. Suleymān, pursued, and after a brief resistance Sheybān surrendered on terms, and left his army to
905 its fate. Moḥammad entered Ḳaṭāi' on Jan. 10, butchered most of the black troops, burnt their quarters, and utterly demolished the beautiful city which Ibn-Ṭūlūn had built. The mosque was respected, but the houses were sacked and pulled down, the gates were thrown open, the women outraged, and the people used as brutally as if they had been heathen. After an orgy of devastation, plunder,

Fig. 16. Dīnār of Ḥārūn b. Khumāraweyh, Miṣr, 904.

[1] Dec. 29-30. Other accounts ascribe the murder to his slaves, under his uncle's orders, or to a Maghrabī soldier in a camp broil.

and extortion, which lasted four months, the caliph's army withdrew, taking Sheybān and all the remaining members of Ṭūlūn's family as prisoners to Baghdād. The dynasty had lasted thirty-seven years and four months, during which Egypt had regained much of her ancient importance, and her capital had reached a height of wealth and luxury unknown since the Arab conquest.

THE IKHSHĪD.

Authorities.—El-Mas'ūdī, G'emāl-ed-dīn, Ibn-el-Athīr, Ibn-Khallikān, el-Maḳrīzī, Abū-l-Maḥāsin, es-Suyūṭī, el-Isḥāḳī.

Inscription.—Of Kāfūr on east wall of Haram at Jerusalem.

Coins.—Minted at Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ), Filesṭīn (Ramla), Damascus, Ḥims, Tiberias.

For thirty years after the fall of the house of Ṭūlūn Egypt remained in an unsettled state. It was once more a dependent province, but the caliphs had become too weak to exert their authority, and the government was in the hands of Turkish soldiers. The armies sent from Baghdād, to hold Egypt against internal revolt and foreign invasion, dictated their own terms to successive governors, and the man who would rule the province must first be acceptable to the troops, whose favour depended upon their pay. Next to the generals, therefore, the most powerful personage was the treasurer, and this office was held during the whole of this disturbed period by one family, called Mādarānī (from their birthplace Mādarāyā, near Baṣra, on the Euphrates), who gradually acquired all but supreme power in Egypt. The other officials were of less importance under this military tyranny than in the earlier period of provincial government, and only one ḳādī deserves commemoration, the universally revered Ibn-Ḥarbaweyh, the last judge

whom the governors visited in state, and who did not rise to receive them.

The feeble hold which the caliphs' governors retained on the country is shown by the successful usurpation of an obscure but spirited young man named Moḥammad
905 el-Khalangī, who collected in Palestine a handful of Egyptians who sympathized with the fallen house of Ṭūlūn ; seized Ramla, and recited the public prayers in the three names of the caliph, as head of church and state, Ibrāhīm (a captive son of Khumāraweyh) as governor, and himself as his deputy. The people listened placidly, and seemed interested in this curious band of adventurers, driven from house and home, and without any visible means of subsistence. The troops led against them by 'Īsā, who had taken over the government of Egypt from the 'Abbāsid general, retreated step by step, and in September, 905, Khalangī entered Fusṭāṭ and proclaimed in the prayers the same three names as at Ramla. The people, who had not forgotten the glorious days of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, rejoiced at the shadowy restoration, and in the height of enthusiasm painted themselves and their horses yellow with saffron. The adventurer appointed the necessary officers of administration, and took up his residence in the governor's house unopposed. His popularity and following increased with his immunity. It is true he found an empty treasury, for 'Īsā had carried off the public money together with all the account-books and most of the clerks, so that it was impossible to discover the due assessments of the tax-payers. But Khalangī did not trouble himself much about legality, and bade his collectors draw the revenue as best they could, covering their extortions with an orderly distribution of receipts and promises of reimbursement on the recovery of the tax-books. This wonderful young man next sent troops by sea and land to Alexandria (though the real governor of Egypt was encamped hard by), captured the city, and brought back in triumph not only the governor's treasure, but some of the missing accountants. Meanwhile the caliph, who did not recognize the self-constituted lieutenant-governor, sent an army from Mesopotamia to

bring him to reason, but Khalangī drove it away from el-'Arīsh with much slaughter. The time of reckoning, however, was at hand. A defeat of part of his army by 'Īsā was followed by the arrival by sea and land of stronger forces from the caliph, which effected a junction with 'Īsā; and after a series of determined engagements, Khalangī was forced back upon Fusṭāṭ, where he was betrayed by his friends to the tardily vindicated government, and sent to the caliph at Baghdād, to be displayed on a camel as a fearful example to the whole city, and then executed (May, 906). That a mere adventurer should have held the capital of Egypt and defied the caliph's armies for eight months is a striking comment on the insecurity of the government.[1] 906

To add to the confusion came the danger of foreign invasion. The famous dynasty of the Fāṭimid caliphs —the greatest Shī'a power in mediaeval history—was 909

[1] The following is the list of the governors of Egypt from the downfall of the Ṭūlūnid dynasty to the accession of the Ikhshīd :—

CALIPHS.		GOVERNORS.	
	El-Muktefī.	905	'Īsā b. Moḥammad en-Nūsharī.
			Usurpation of el-Khalangī, Sept., 905—May, 906.
908	El-Muḳtedir.		
		910	Tekīn el-Khāṣṣa el-G'ezerī.
		915	Dhukā er-Rūmī.
		919	Tekīn restored.
		921	Maḥmūd b. Ḥamal (for three days).
		921	Tekīn again (for a few days).
		921	Hilāl b. Bedr.
		923	Aḥmad b. Keyghalagh.
		924	Tekīn (for fourth time).
932	El-Ḳāhir.		
		933	Moḥammad b. Tekīn.
933	Er-Rāḍī.	933	Moḥammad b. Ṭughg the Ikhshīd (absent).
		933	Aḥmad b. Keyghalagh.
		934	Usurpation of Moḥammad b. Tekīn, June—July.
		935	The Ikhshīd.

The marshals were frequently changed under these governors; Moḥammad b. Ṭāhir was the most important. The chief ḳāḍī under the first seven governors to 924 was Ibn-Ḥarbaweyh. The treasurers were Abū-Zunbur el-Mādarānī and his successor Moḥammad el-Mādarānī.

beginning its conquest of North Africa. In 909 the last of the once powerful house of the Aghlabids of Tunis came flying to Egypt, and his pursuers were not far behind. In 913-4 Khubāsa, the Fāṭimid general, entered Barḳa, committing abominable atrocities; and, in July, 914, joined by el-Ḳāïm, the son of the first Fāṭimid caliph el-Mahdī, he occupied Alexandria without opposition—the inhabitants in panic had taken to their ships—and thence, avoiding Fusṭāṭ, advanced as far as the Fayyūm. There the invaders were attacked and defeated by the Egyptian army—strongly reinforced from Baghdād—and
919 driven out of Egypt. Five years later they returned to the attack; the Alexandrians had again to take to the water, their city was sacked, the Fayyūm devastated, and fire and sword carried as far as Ushmuneyn. Meanwhile the Fāṭimid fleet of eighty-five sail anchored in Alexandria harbour. The caliph's admirals could only collect twenty ships at Ṭarsūs to send against it, but so well were they handled that most of the enemy's vessels were burned with naphtha, and their crews and soldiery killed or brought prisoners to Fusṭāṭ. On land, however, the outlook was less hopeful. Ducas the Greek (Dhukā er-Rūmī), who was then governor, had great difficulty in getting the Egyptian troops to move; they had to be bribed with gratuities, and even then they timidly entrenched their camp at G'īza to prevent surprise. At this critical moment Ducas died, and his successor, Tekīn, was fortunately a *persona grata* with the troops, and inspired some confidence among the panic-stricken population. The invaders in the Fayyūm, moreover, were suffering severely from famine and plague, brought on by their own excesses. Their attack on the G'īza camp, now protected by a double ditch, was repulsed at about the same date as the victory off Alexandria; but they still held Upper Egypt, and Tekīn hardly attempted to dislodge them, even when strongly reinforced by 3000 fresh troops sent from Baghdād. He was hampered by intrigues at home, for both the ḳāḍī and Mādarānī the treasurer, with many other leading persons, were discovered to be in treasonable correspondence with the

Fāṭimid caliph and eager to welcome him at Fusṭāṭ. With treachery in the capital, and Alexandria in the enemy's hands, Tekīn stood on the defensive, until a second contingent from Mesopotamia came to his relief. Then, at last, in the spring of 920 the Egyptian army marched against the invaders, and a series of engagements in the Fayyūm and at Alexandria, ended before the close of the year in the retreat of the Fāṭimids to Barbary.

The condition of the country after their expulsion was 920
chaotic. The eunuch Mūnis who, as commander of the troops from Baghdād, had been dictator of Egypt for some years, and had deposed and set up governors as he pleased, was at last recalled in 921 ; but the soldiery continued to dominate the government ; disbanded troops harried the country and plundered and murdered the folk ; and the disorder was so great that even Tekīn, when appointed governor for the fourth time, because no one else could pacify the army, found it necessary for safety to quarter his troops in his own palace. Some degree of order was at length restored, but after his death, in March, 933, his son was hooted out of the country by the army, clamouring for arrears of pay; the treasurer Mādarānī was in hiding ; rival governors contended for power, mustered their troops, and skirmished over the distracted country ; and a fearful earth- 934
quake, which laid many houses and villages low, followed by a portentous shower of meteors, added to the terror of the populace.

In this desperate state of affairs the Ikhshīd[1] took over 935
the government of Egypt in August, 935. It needed an exceptionally strong man to meet the emergency, and the Ikhshīd proved himself equal to the position. Moḥammad b. Ṭughǧ came of a princely family in Ferghāna on the Iaxartes, who bore the title of Ikhshīd in

[1] He was allowed to use the ancestral title by special permission of the caliph four years after his arrival in Egypt. His coinage, like that of the Ṭūlūnids, was almost all of gold, and was issued from the mints of Miṣr (i.e. Fusṭāṭ) in A.H. 328 (A.D. 939-40) and 333 (944-5); Filesṭīn (Ramla), 331, 332, 333; Damascus, 333, 334.

the same manner as the sovereigns of Persia and Ṭabaristān were styled Kisrā (Chosroes) and Ispehbedh. His grandfather G'uff was among the Turkish officers imported into 'Irāḳ by the caliph Mo'taṣim, son of Hārūn er-Rashīd; and his father, the emīr Ṭughg, had served with distinction in the armies of Khumāraweyh, fought against the Romans when commandant of Ṭarsūs, and had been rewarded with the government of Syria. The pride of success brought its punishment, and he ended his life in the prison of Damascus. His son Moḥammad, the future ruler of Egypt, who shared his captivity, obtained his own release, and, after various vicissitudes of fortune, took service under Tekīn, was appointed to the command of the seditious district of the Ḥawf in Lower Egypt, and after holding various appointments in Syria, where he gained the high approval of the caliph, became governor of Damascus in 930. Three years later he was nominated by el-Ḳāhir to the charge of Egypt, but the state of Syria did not then permit his leaving, and though he was duly recognized as governor in the public prayers at Fusṭāṭ in 933, and sent a deputy to represent him, another governor temporarily filled his place until he came in person, on a second nomination by the caliph Rāḍī, in 935. The virtual ruler of Egypt, Mādarānī the treasurer, instigated the governor to resist the appointment, and to oppose the entrance of the Ikhshīd. They were, however, completely routed at Faramā, and the fleet from Syria, sailing up the Nile from Tinnis to G'īza, commanded the capital until the Ikhshīd brought his army up and took possession.

How largely the previous anarchy was due to the incapacity and jealousy of the governors and their officers is evident from the fact that during the eleven years of the Ikhshīd's firm government we do not read of a single insurrection or disturbance. The army recognized its master, and his Syrian troops overawed whatever disaffection may have subsisted among the Egyptians. He was an energetic yet cautious general, and his immense strength—for no other man could stretch his bow—inspired respect. Yet he is said to

have gone in fear of his life, and to have taken extraordinary precautions against assassination. He preferred peace to war, and would conclude a treaty and submit to loss of territory, and even payment of tribute, sooner than continue a doubtful struggle. His powerful army of 400,000 men, of whom 8000 formed his bodyguard, not only prevented any serious attempt of the Fāṭimids to renew their invasions, after they were driven back from Alexandria in the first year of his reign, but also gave him weight in the scrimmage then surging round the tottering caliphate. The temporal sway of the "commander of the faithful" had by this time disappeared. The governors of the various provinces had acquired sovereign powers. The Buweyhids held Persia, the Sāmānids the lands beyond the Oxus, the Ḥamdānids Mesopotamia, and a number of ambitious Turkish emīrs fought for the possession of Baghdād and the office of gaoler to the unhappy pontiff of Islām. The Ikhshīd's efforts were chiefly directed towards preserving his Syrian province against the aggression of one or other of these turbulent neighbours. He first came in conflict with the emīr Ibn-Rāïḳ, who without provocation seized Ḥimṣ and occupied Damascus. After an Egyptian defeat, probably at el-'Arīsh on the frontier, and a sanguinary but indecisive battle at el-Laǵǵūn, twenty miles from Tiberias, 940
peace was made on the terms that Ibn-Rāïḳ retained Syria north of Ramla and received a yearly tribute of 140,000*D.* from the Ikhshīd. This understanding was partly due to the good feeling produced by the chivalry of the emīr, who was so distressed to find the corpse of one of the Ikhshīd's brothers among the slain at Laǵǵūn that he sent his own son to his adversary as an atonement, to be dealt with as he chose. Not to be outdone in generosity, the Ikhshīd clothed the intended sacrifice in robes of honour and sent him back in all courtesy to his father. Of course the youth married the daughter of his chivalrous host, now joined in the friendly ties of treaty and alliance. The episode forms a pleasing contrast to the many barbarities of the age.

After Ibn-Rāïḳ's death, two years later, the Ikhshīd

recovered Syria and re-entered Damascus without striking a blow. To Syria and Egypt the caliph el-Muttaḳī now added the governorship of the holy cities of Mekka and
943 Medīna, and the hereditary principle was established when the Ikhshīd made the captains and soldiers of his army do homage to his elder son as their future prince. Tossed between the powerful dynasty of the Ḥamdānids and the contending emīrs Tūzūn and el-Barīdī, the wretched caliph, driven out of Baghdād, turned for succour to the Ikhshīd, who came north to recover Aleppo from an aggressive Ḥamdānid, and after settling his own affairs, had an interview with his spiritual suzerain on the Euphrates opposite Raḳḳa, and pressed him to seek refuge with him in Syria or Egypt. The caliph, however, stood in too great terror of the other emīrs to venture upon so critical a step, nor would he even accept an offer of troops, though he took a subsidy of gold, and a vast amount of money passed into the hands of all the court. He let his great vassal depart, after showing him exceptional and touching favour, and confirming the government of Egypt and Syria to him and his heir for a term of thirty years; and trusted himself to the sworn
944 honour of Tūzūn a month later, only to be treacherously blinded and deposed. The shrieks of the victim and his wives were drowned in a tattoo of drums and the acclamation of his successor.

Fig. 17. Dīnār of Moḥammad el-Ikhshīd, Palestine, 943.

The Ikhshīd was still far from secure on his northern frontier. Aleppo was reoccupied by the Ḥamdānid leader, Seyf-ed-dawla, before the close of the year, and an army despatched from Egypt under the eunuchs Kāfūr and Yānis was met at er-Rastan (Arethusa) on the Orontes, and routed with the loss of 4,000 prisoners, besides
945 killed and drowned. Seyf-ed dawla proceeded to annex

Damascus, and the Ikhshīd was forced to march against him in person with a large army. They met near Ḳinnesrīn. The Ikhshīd placed his light troops, armed with short lances, in front, and kept a body of 10,000 chosen men, whom he called the "standfasts," in the rear. The light troops were quickly broken by the Ḥamdānid's attack, and the enemy, thinking the victory already won, fell to plundering the baggage: whereupon the Ikhshīd flung his "standfasts" upon them with complete success and scattered them in all directions. The prince of Egypt re-entered Aleppo, and then Damascus, whence he negotiated a strangely unfavourable treaty with his vanquished enemy; he agreed to abandon Aleppo and northern Syria to the Ḥamdānid, and to pay him an annual tribute in return for the possession of Damascus. The explanation seems to be that the Ikhshīd found the guardianship of northern Syria too troublesome a business at his age, for he was now sixty-four. He survived the campaign but a year, and died at Damascus in July, 946, 946
and was buried at Jerusalem, where his successors also lie.

Of his government in Egypt little is recorded, and though like Ibn-Ṭūlūn, he was a builder, and set up a beautiful palace in the pleasaunce called the "Garden of Kāfūr," which lay west of the present Sūḳ-en-Naḥḥāsīn, no trace of his buildings remain. The historian Mas'ūdī, who visited Egypt during his reign, is more occupied with the pyramids and other wonders than with contemporary buildings or people. He gives no description of the palace or the court, or of its master, nor does he throw any light upon the condition of the inhabitants. He does, however, give some account of the system of irrigation, and describes the cutting of the canal dams on the 14th of September, and their closure (in the delta) in January. "The Night of the Bath (Leylat el-Ghaṭās)," he writes, "is one of the great ceremonies, and the people all go to it on foot on the 10th of January. I was present in 350 [942] when the Ikhshīd Moḥammad b. Ṭughǧ lived in his house called el-Mukhtāra ('the elect') in the island that divides the Nile in two. He ordered

the bank of the island and the [opposite] bank of el-Fusṭāṭ to be illuminated each with a thousand torches, besides private illuminations. Muslims and Christians, by hundreds of thousands, crowded the Nile on boats, or in kiosks overlooking the river, or [standing] on the banks, all eager for pleasure, and vying in equipage, dress, gold and silver cups, and jewellery. The sound of music was heard all about, with singing and dancing. It was a splendid night, the best in all Miṣr for beauty and gaiety; the doors of the separate quarters were left open, and most people bathed in the Nile, knowing well that [on that night] it is a sure preservative and cure for all disease."[1] He also states that the Ikhshīd gave leave to people to dig for treasure, of which they said they had found clues in ancient manuscripts: but they discovered only caves and vaults full of statues, which were made of bones and dust—an early reference to mummies.[2] But if we know little of the internal affairs of Egypt under the Ikhshīd, it is at least clear that he brought repose to the distracted country, and that he established for the first time an hereditary principality recognised by the caliph, and practically implying independence. The tenure indeed was limited to thirty years, and confirmation by each successive caliph was a necessary and expensive formality, but in capable hands the virtual independence of his dynasty was assured.

Fig. 18. Dirhem of Abū-l-Ḳāsim b. el-Ikhshīd, Damascus, 949.

Whether the Ikhshīd's two sons Abū-l-Ḳāsim Ūnǵūr (946-961)[3] and Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī (961-965), who nominally

[1] The 'Īd-el-Maghtas or "feast of the tank" was really the Christian Epiphany, in memory of Christ's baptism (Abū-Ṣāliḥ, p. 129, note). Mas'ūdī, *Murūǵ-edh-Dhahab*, ii. 364-5. [2] Ibid, ii. 419.

[3] Coins bearing Abū-l-Ḳāsim's name were issued at Miṣr in A.H. 335 (946-7), 337, 339, 341, 342; Filesṭīn, 335, 336, 337, 339, 341, 345,

succeeded,[1] were capable or not, they were allowed no opportunity of proving it. The elder was only fourteen at his father's death, and though the younger, 'Alī, had reached the age of twenty-three when his turn came to enjoy the name of governor, he was kept in the same state of pupilage as his brother by the black eunuch Kāfūr, who acted as regent of what may now almost be called the kingdom of Egypt. They were given a comfortable allowance of 400,000*D*., and bidden to enjoy themselves and not meddle with affairs of state. They submitted with scarcely a struggle, enjoyed their ḥarīm or Ḳorān, according to their tastes, and died in luxurious obscurity, when (965) their black tyrant ascended the throne, with the caliph's approval, as "master" (ustād) of Egypt and its dependencies.[2] Abū-l-Misk Kāfūr ("Musky Camphor") was an Abyssinian slave bought from an oilman for a matter of less than ten pounds by the Ikhshīd, who discovering his merits made him governor to his two sons. The relation of tutor and ward lasted for their lives. Kāfūr was doubtless an excellent servant, though not always a successful general; but when in power he showed all the unbridled love of luxury and ease that marks the black in office. Few external difficulties troubled him; for after a campaign against the ever-encroaching Ḥamdānid, in which the Ikhshīd's energetic brother Ḥasan, accompanied by Kāfūr, won two signal victories over Seyf-ed-dawla, near Laggūn and on the Marg 'Adhrā by Damascus, and the Egyptian army entered Aleppo, peace was concluded on the same basis as in 945, except that the tribute then imposed was dis- 947
continued. The consent of the caliph (or his keeper) to the succession of the two young princes to the govern-

346, 347 (958-9); Damascus, 338 (949-50); Ḥims, 336; Ṭabarīya (Tiberias) 337 (948-9).

[1] Coins bearing the name of 'Alī b. el-Ikhshīd were issued at Miṣr in A.H. 350, 351, 352, 353, 354 (961—5); Filesṭīn, 350, 351, 352, 353, 355; the last must have been struck within eleven days of his death on 11 Moḥarram, 355 (7 Feb. 965).

[2] No coins bear Kāfūr's name: his currency was in the name of the caliph alone.

ment of Egypt, Syria, and the holy cities, was easily obtained, and in the latter part of Kāfūr's administration not only Damascus but the whole of Syria as far as Aleppo and Ṭarsūs was again incorporated under the rule of Egypt. Beyond some temporary disturbances at the Mekka pilgrimages in 953-5, and a raid of the Ḳarmaṭīs upon Syria in 963, and their capture of the great Egyptian pilgrim caravan of 20,000 camels in 966, there was little trouble abroad; and in Egypt, in spite of a series of terrific
954 earthquakes, a great fire which destroyed 1700 houses in Fusṭāṭ, bad Niles, and much consequent scarcity and distress, the people seem to have remained strangely quiet. Even an irruption of the Nubians, who carried fire and sword, slaughter and famine through the Ṣa'īd in 963 did not stir up a revolt. The Ikhshīd had got the Egyptians into order, and the big black eunuch "Camphor" evidently knew how to maintain it.

Kāfūr was at once the Lucullus and the Maecenas of his age. He had contrived to acquire some cultivation, as most clever slaves did, and he loved to surround himself with poets and critics, and listen to their discussions of an evening, or make them read him the history of the caliphs of old. Like all blacks he delighted in music. He had control of vast sums of money, and he scattered it liberally among his literary friends, who repaid him in fulsome
957 verse. The celebrated poet el-Mutanebbī was among his intimates for a couple of years, and from his odes one gains such a picture of the "master" as an avowed panegyrist, who afterwards became a bitter satirist of his patron, may afford. When another poet explained in choice verse that the frequent earthquakes of the time were due to Egypt's dancing for joy at Kāfūr's virtues, the pleased Ethiopian threw him a thousand dīnārs. A sherīf of the

Fig. 19.—Dīnār of Abū-l-Ḳāsim b. el-Ikhshīd, Miṣr, 950.

family of the Prophet, who once picked up his riding-whip for him, found himself suddenly the owner of a baggage-train worth 15,000*D*. On his table, "Camphor" was lavish; he had the black's jolly sensuality. The daily provision for his kitchen consisted in 100 sheep, 100 lambs, 250 geese, 500 fowls, 1000 pigeons and other birds, and 100 jars of sweets. The daily consumption amounted to 1700 lb. of meat, besides fowls and sweets, and 50 skins of liquor were allowed to the servants alone. A favourite drink was quince-cider, for which the ḳādī of Asyūt sent 50,000 quince-apples every season.

On Kāfūr's death in April, 968, after nineteen years of 968
virtual and three of titular rule, the chief officers of the court immediately assembled to elect a prince, the minority agreeing to accept the choice of the majority. Such a proceeding was without a precedent in Egypt, and shows how the authority of the caliph—the nominal sovereign—was ignored. The choice fell upon a child of eleven, Abū-l-Fawāris Aḥmad, son of 'Alī b. el-Ikhshīd,[1] who was forthwith acknowledged in the public prayers as ruler of Egypt, Syria, and the holy cities, with his second cousin, el-Ḥoseyn b. 'Obeydallāh b. Ṭughǵ, as next heir. Ibn-el-Furāt undertook the finances, and Samuel, the former director of the pigeon-post, ventured upon the war office. The extortions and niggardliness of the one, and the incompetence of the other, led to a military revolt, and Ḥoseyn assumed the regency.[2] It was not for long. The helpless condition of the government did not escape the shrewd observation of el-Mo'izz, the fourth Fāṭimid caliph of Barbary, and the ambition to be master of Egypt, which had only slumbered since the Ikhshīd's accession, revived in fresh vigour. The inroads of the Ḳarmaṭīs in Syria, and the distracted state of 'Irāḳ, precluded the fear of interference from the east, and the opportunity was not to be neglected. A little more than a year after Kāfūr's death, the Fāṭimid army

[1] Coins of Aḥmad are dated A.H. 358 (968-9) at Miṣr and Filesṭīn.

[2] A coin with the name of el-Ḥoseyn b. 'Obeydallāh was issued in 358 at Filesṭīn (Ramla), of which he was governor (Lavoix, *Cat.*, *Égypte*, 64)

969 entered Fusṭāṭ. With the fall of the last Ikhshīd Egypt ceased for two centuries to be numbered among the provinces of the eastern orthodox caliphate.

Three hundred and thirty years had passed since the Saracens first invaded the valley of the Nile. The people, with traditional docility, had liberally adopted the religion of their rulers, and the Muslims now formed the great majority of the population. Arabs and natives had blended into much the same race that we now call Egyptians; but so far the mixture had not produced any conspicuous men. The few commanding figures among the governors, Ibn-Ṭūlūn, the Ikhshīd, Kāfūr, were foreigners, and even these were but a step above the stereotyped official. They essayed no great extension of their dominions; they did not try to extinguish their dangerous neighbours the schismatic Fāṭimids; and though they possessed and used fleets, they ventured upon no excursions against Europe. In material conditions it may be doubted whether the people gained anything by the Arab conquest. No doubt the old system of cultivation and irrigation went on, as it always has done; but it owed little to the enterprise or public spirit of the rulers, who left the irrigation and agriculture to take care of themselves, and were chiefly concerned in drawing the revenue. The decrease in the land-tax recorded by Maḳrīzī faithfully reflects the carelessness of the governors. Their public works were almost wholly confined to the capital, which they enlarged and adorned with palaces and other buildings, gardens, and meydāns, for their own pleasure. The luxury of such princes as Khumāraweyh must have benefitted the townspeople, for a time, at the expense of the country taxpayers. The courts of men like Ibn-Ṭūlūn and Kāfūr attracted men of learning and polite letters from other parts of the caliphate, and Miṣr was gradually acquiring a reputation as a centre of enlightenment. But so far it was much behind Baghdād, Damascus, and Cordova; the Azhar university was not yet founded, nor had the Muslims of Egypt yet produced a poet, historian, or critic of the first rank in Arabic literature. On the other hand, it must be remem-

bered that historiography and literary criticism were still in a very crude stage of development in all parts of the Moḥammadan dominions ; the celebrated Ṭabarī, a contemporary of Khumāraweyh, had not risen above the mere collecting of traditions, without attempting to coordinate or criticize them ; Mas'ūdī, who saw the Ikhshīd, was chiefly a collector of anecdotes and curiosities of history ; and the poets or versifiers of the caliphate were essentially an artificial product of the court, whose talents were best remunerated at the richest capital, or wherever fools and their money were most readily parted. The genuine poetry of the desert was no longer a living inspiration, but a classical tradition. The literature of erudition and compilation was only beginning.

CHAPTER IV

THE SHĪ'A REVOLUTION

969

Authorities.—'Arīb el-Ḳurṭubī, Ibn-el-Athīr, Ibn-Khallikān, Ibn-Khaldūn, el-Maḳrīzī. Quatremère, *Vie de Moëzz;* Wüstenfeld, *Geschichte der Fatimiden Chalifen.*

The great revolution which sixty years before had swept over north Africa, and now spread to Egypt, arose out of the old controversy over the legitimacy of the caliphate. The prophet Moḥammad died without definitely naming a successor, and thereby bequeathed an interminable quarrel to his followers. The principle of election, thus introduced, raised the first three caliphs, Abū-Bekr, 'Omar, 'Othmān, to the cathedra at Medīna; but a strong minority held that the "divine right" rested with 'Alī, the "Lion of God," first convert to Islām, husband of the prophet's daughter Fāṭima, and father of Moḥammad's only male descendants. When 'Alī in turn became the fourth caliph, he was the mark for jealousy, intrigue, and at length assassination; his sons, the grandsons of the prophet, were excluded from the succession; his family were cruelly persecuted by their successful rivals, the Omayyad usurpers; and the tragedy of Kerbelā and the murder of Ḥoseyn set the seal of martyrdom on the holy family and stirred a passionate enthusiam which still rouses intense excitement in the annual representations of the Persian Passion Play.

The rent thus opened in Islām was never closed, and to this day the hatred between Sunnīs and Shī'a, between the Popular Choice and the Divine Right, is more bitter

than between Protestant and Catholic in the days of persecution. The ostracism of 'Ali "laid the foundation of the grand incurable schism which has divided the Mohammadan church, and equally destroyed the practice of charity among the members of their common creed and endangered the speculative truths of doctrine. Abroad, it necessarily lamed the propagation of the faith by the evidence which it afforded the unbeliever of the diversity of opinion, strife, and reciprocal maledictions of its professors themselves. At home, it placed the caliphs in so false a position that they presented the extraordinary spectacle of sovereign pontiffs who rendered their unjust claim to the crown still more palpably indefensible by persecuting the descendants of the author of their faith and founder of their throne; and who, to fill up the measure of inconsistency, were obliged publicly to invoke every blessing on that family by whose exclusion alone they enjoyed the privilege of performing the *khuṭba*. Thus it alienated the hearts of a large portion of the people from their spiritual and temporal head; sowed the ineradicable seeds of sedition, conspiracy, and rebellion; placed the usurper on a tottering throne from which the rightful claimant might at any time hurl him; and left him to rule a divided people with a broken sceptre."[1]

The history of the 'Alid schism, or of Shi'ism, may be read elsewhere;[2] here we can only take up the links that connect it with the conquest of Egypt by the Fāṭimids. The descendants of 'Ali, though almost universally devoid of the qualities of great leaders, possessed the persistence and devotion of martyrs, and their sufferings heightened the fanatical enthusiasm of their supporters. All attempts to recover the temporal power having proved vain, the 'Alids fell back upon the spiritual authority of the successive candidates of the holy family, whom they proclaimed to be the Imāms or spiritual leaders of the faithful. This doctrine of the Imāmate gradually acquired

[1] Nicholson, *Establ. of Fat. Dyn.*, 7, 8.

[2] See, for example, Dozy, *Hist. de l'Islamisme*, trans. Chauvin, ch. ix.

a more mystical meaning, supported by an allegorical interpretation of the Ḳorān; and a mysterious influence was ascribed to the Imām, who, though hidden from mortal eye, on account of the persecution of his enemies, would soon come forward publicly in the character of the ever-expected Mahdī, sweep away the corruptions of the heretical caliphate, and revive the majesty of the pure lineage of the prophet. All Moḥammadans believe in a coming Mahdī, a Messiah who shall restore right and prepare for the second advent of Moḥammad and the tribunal of the last day; but the Shī'a turned the expectation to special account. They taught that the true Imām, though invisible to mortal sight, is ever living; they predicted the Mahdī's speedy appearance, and kept their adherents on the alert to take up arms in his service. With a view to his coming they organized a pervasive conspiracy, instituted a secret society with carefully graduated stages of initiation, used the doctrines of all religions and sects as weapons in the propaganda, and sent missionaries throughout the provinces of Islām to increase the numbers of the initiates, and pave the way for the great revolution. We see their partial success in the ravages of the Carmathians, who were the true parents of the Fāṭimids. The leaders and chief missionaries had really nothing in common with Moḥammadanism. Among themselves they were frankly atheists. Their objects were political, and they used religion in any form, and adapted it in all modes, to secure proselytes, to whom they imparted only so much of their doctrine as they were able to bear These men were furnished with "an armoury of proselytism" as perfect, perhaps, as any known to history: they had appeals to enthusiasm, and arguments for the reason, and "fuel for the fiercest passions of the people and times in which they moved." They combined indeed the intellectual dexterity and unscrupulousness ascribed to the Jesuit, with the talent for criminal organization of the Decisi. Their real aim was not religious or constructive, but pure nihilism. They used the claim of the family of 'Alī, not because they believed in any

divine right or any caliphate, but because some flag had to be flourished in order to rouse the people.

One of these missionaries, disguised as a merchant, journeyed back to Barbary in 893, with some Berber pilgrims who had performed the sacred ceremonies at Mekka. He was welcomed by the great tribe of the Kitāma, and rapidly acquired an extraordinary influence over the Berbers—a race prone to superstition, and easily impressed by the mysterious rites of initiation and the emotional doctrines of the propagandist, the wrongs of the prophetic house, and the approaching triumph of the Mahdī. Barbary had never been much attached to the caliphate, and for a century it had been practically independent under the Aghlabid dynasty, the barbarous excesses of whose later sovereigns had alienated their subjects. 'Alids, moreover, had established themselves, in the dynasty of the Idrīsids, in Morocco since the end of the eighth century. The land was in every respect apt for revolution, and the success of Abu-'Abdallāh esh-Shī'ī, the new missionary, was extraordinarily rapid. In a few years he had a following of 200,000 armed men, and after a series of battles he drove Ziyādat-Allāh, the last Aghlabid prince, out of the country in 908. The missionary then proclaimed the Imām 'Obeydallāh as the true caliph and spiritual head of Islām. Whether this 'Obeydallāh was really a descendant of 'Alī or not,[1] he had been carefully

[1] He was represented as the brother of the twelfth Imām, who mysteriously vanished at Samarrā; or as the son of one of the "hidden" Imāms, who (according to the Ismā'īlians) succeeded to the direction of the religion after the death of the seventh Imām. But there were at least eight different pedigrees provided for 'Obeydallāh, and this discrepancy among his own supporters is a strong argument against his pretended descent from 'Alī and the other Imāms, especially in view of the pride and care with which the Arabs preserved their genealogies. The opponents of the Fāṭimids (or 'Obeydids as they prefer to call them), on the other hand, asserted that 'Obeydallāh's real name was Sa'īd; some said he was a Jew; and they traced his descent, or that of his adoptive father, to a Persian eye-doctor of dualistic views. Arab historians are sharply divided on this point, but their opinions are partly biassed by religious and political influences. El-Maḳrīzī and Ibn-Khaldūn are the most noted supporters of the

prepared for the rôle, and reached Barbary in disguise with the greatest mystery and some difficulty, pursued by the suspicions of the Baghdād caliph, who, in great alarm, sent repeated orders for his arrest. Indeed, the victorious missionary had to rescue his spiritual chief from a sordid prison at Sigilmāsa. Then humbly prostrating himself before him, he hailed him as the
910 expected Mahdī, and in January, 910, he was duly prayed for in the mosque of Kayrawān as "the Imām 'Obeydallāh el-Mahdī, commander of the faithful." The missionary's Berber proselytes were too numerous to encourage resistance, and the few who indulged the luxury of conscientious scruples were killed or imprisoned. El-Mahdī, indeed, appeared so secure in power that he excited the jealousy of his discoverer. Abū-'Abdallāh the missionary now found himself nobody, where a month before he had been supreme. The Fāṭimid restoration was to him only a means to an end; he had used 'Obeydallāh's title as an engine of revolution, intending to proceed to the furthest lengths of his philosophy, to a complete social and political anarchy, the destruction of Islām, community of lands and women, and all the delight of unshackled licence. Instead of this, his creature had absorbed his power, and all such designs were void. He began to hatch treason and to hint doubts as to the genuineness of the Mahdī, who, as he truly represented, according to prophecy ought to work miracles and show other proofs of his divine mission. People began to ask for a "sign." In reply, the Mahdī had the missionary murdered.

911 The first Fāṭimid caliph, though without experience, was so vigorous a ruler that he could dispense with the dangerous support of his discoverer. He held the throne for a quarter of a century and established his authority, more or less continuously, over the Arab and Berber tribes and settled cities from the frontier of Egypt to the

legitimacy of the Fāṭimid 'Obeydallāh, whilst G'emāl-ed-dīn of Aleppo, Ibn-Khallikān, el-Mekīn, Abū-l-Fidā, es-Suyūṭī, Abū-l-Maḥāsin, among others, regard him as an impostor. Of European scholars, de Sacy adopted the former, and Quatremère the latter view.

province of Fez (Fās) in Morocco, received the allegiance of the Moḥammadan governor of Sicily, and twice despatched expeditions into Egypt, which he would probably have permanently conquered if he had not been hampered by perpetual insurrections in Barbary. Distant governors, and often whole tribes of Berbers, were constantly in revolt, and the disastrous famine of 928-9, coupled with the Asiatic plague which his troops had brought back with them from Egypt, led to general disturbances and insurrections which fully occupied the later years of his reign. The western provinces, from Tāhart and Nakur to Fez and beyond, frequently threw off all show of allegiance. His authority was founded more on fear than on religious enthusiasm, though zeal for the 'Alid cause had its share in his original success. The new "Eastern doctrines," as they were called, were enforced at the sword's point, and frightful examples were made of those who ventured to tread in the old paths. Nor were the free-thinkers of the large towns, who shared the missionary's esoteric principles, encouraged; for outwardly, at least, the Mahdī was strictly a Muslim. When people at Ḳayrawān began to put in practice the missionary's advanced theories, to scoff at all the rules of Islām, to indulge in free love, pig's flesh, and wine, they were sternly brought to order. The mysterious powers expected of a Mahdī were sedulously rumoured among the credulous Berbers, though no miracles were actually exhibited; and the obedience of the conquered provinces was secured by horrible outrages and atrocities, of which the terrified people dared not provoke a repetition at the hands of the Mahdī's savage generals.

His eldest son Abū-l-Ḳāsim, who had twice led expeditions into Egypt, succeeded to the caliphate with the title of el-Ḳāïm (934-946.) He began his reign with warlike vigour. He sent out a fleet in 934 or 935, which harried the southern coast of France, blockaded and took Genoa, and coasted along Calabria, massacring and plundering, burning the shipping, and carrying off slaves wherever it touched. At the same time he despatched a third army against Egypt; but the

firm hand of the Ikhshīd now held the government, and his brother 'Obeydallāh, with 15,000 horse, drove the enemy out of Alexandria and gave them a crushing defeat on their way home. But for the greater part of his reign el-Ḳāïm was on the defensive, fighting for existence against the usurpation of one Abū-Yezīd, who repudiated Shī'ism, cursed the Mahdī and his successor, stirred up most of Morocco and Barbary against el-Ḳāïm, drove him out of his capital, and went near to putting an end to the Fāṭimid caliphate. It was only after seven years of uninterrupted civil war that this formidable insurrection died out, under the firm but politic management of the third caliph, el-Manṣūr (946-953), a brave man who knew both when to strike and when to be
947 generous. Abū-Yezīd was at last run to earth, and his body was skinned and stuffed with straw, and exposed in a cage with a couple of ludicrous apes as a warning to the disaffected.

The Fāṭimids so far wear a brutal and barbarous character. They do not seem to have encouraged literature or learning; but this is partly explained by the fact that culture belonged chiefly to the orthodox caliphate, and its learned men could have no dealings with the heretical pretender. The city of Ḳayrawān, which dates from the Arab conquest in the eighth century, preserves the remains of some noble buildings, but of their other capitals or royal residences, el-Mahdīya (founded 913-918), el-Moḥammadīya (924), and el-Manṣūrīya (the ancient Ṣabra, restored and renamed in 948) —the last two being merely suburbs of Ḳayrawān—no traces of art or architecture remain to bear witness to the taste of their founders. Each began to decay as soon as its successor was built.

With the fourth caliph, however, el-Mo'izz,[1] the

[1] His full name and title was the Imām Abū-Temīm Ma'add, el-Mo'izz-li-dīni-llah (fortifier of the religion of God) Coins of Mo'izz are fairly numerous, struck at el-Mahdīya and el-Manṣūrīya, and Sicily; and, after the conquest, at Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ) from A.H. 358 (969), Filesṭīn (Ramla) from 359, Tyre, 361, and Tripolis, 364 (974-5). A unique coin in the Khedivial Library at Cairo bears the usual inscriptions of

conqueror of Egypt (953-975), the Fāṭimids entered upon a new phase. He was a man of politic temper, a born statesman, able to grasp the conditions of success, and to take advantage of every point in his favour. He was also highly educated, and not only wrote Arabic poetry and delighted in its literature, but studied Greek, mastered Berber and Sūdānī dialects, and is even said to have taught himself Slavonic, in order to converse with his slaves from eastern Europe. His eloquence was such as to move his audience to tears. To prudent statesmanship he added a large generosity, and his love of justice was among his noblest qualities. So far as outward acts could show, he was a strict Muslim of the Shī'a sect, and the statement of his adversaries that he was really at heart an atheist seems to rest merely upon the belief that all the Fāṭimids adopted the esoteric doctrines of the Ismā'īlian missionaries.

When he ascended the throne in April, 953, he had 953
already a policy, and he lost no time in carrying it into execution. He first made a progress through his dominions, visiting each town, investigating its needs, and providing for its peace and prosperity. He bearded the rebels in their mountain fastnesses, till they laid down their arms and fell at his feet. He conciliated the chiefs and governors with presents and appointments, and was rewarded by their loyalty. At the head of his ministers he set G'awhar "the Roman," a slave from the eastern empire, who had risen to the post of secretary to the late caliph, and was now by his son promoted to the rank of wezīr and commander of the forces. He was sent in 958 to bring the ever-refractory Maghrib (Morocco) to allegiance. The expedition was entirely successful, Siǵilmāsa and Fez were taken, and G'awhar reached the shore of the Atlantic. Jars of live fish 959
and seaweed reached the capital, and proved to the caliph that his empire touched the ocean, the limitless limit of

Mo'izz and the date Miṣr, A.H. 341, the year of his accession. As there was no expedition into Egypt that year, this coin must either record a pretension—anticipating the conquest of Miṣr eighteen years later—or present an engraver's error.

the world. All the African littoral, from the Atlantic to the frontier of Egypt (with the single exception of Spanish Ceuta), now peaceably admitted the sway of the Fāṭimid caliph.

The result was due partly to the exhaustion caused by the long struggle during the preceding reigns, partly to the politic concessions and personal influence of the able young ruler. He was liberal and conciliatory towards distant provinces, but to the Arabs of the capital he was severe. Ḳayrawān teemed with disaffected folk, sheykhs and theologians bitterly hostile to the heretical "orientalism" of the Fāṭimids, and always ready to excite a tumult. Mo'izz was resolved to give them no chance, and one of his repressive measures was the curfew. At sunset a trumpet sounded, and anyone found abroad after that was liable to lose not only his way but his head. So long as they were quiet, however, he used the people justly, and sought to impress them in his favour. In a singular interview (recorded by Maḳrīzī) he exhibited himself to a deputation of sheykhs, dressed in the utmost simplicity, and seated before his writing materials in a plain room, surrounded by books. He wished to disabuse them of the idea that he led in private a life of luxury and self-indulgence: "You see what employs me when I am alone," he said; I read letters that come to me from the lands of the east and the west, and answer them with my own hand. I deny myself all the pleasures of the world, and I seek only to protect your lives, multiply your children, shame your rivals and daunt your enemies." Then he gave them much good advice, and especially recommended them to keep to one wife: "One woman is enough for one man. If you straitly observe what I have ordained," he concluded, "I trust that God will through you procure our conquest of the East in like manner as he has vouchsafed us the West."

The conquest of Egypt was indeed the aim of his life. To rule over tumultuous Arab and Berber tribes in a poor country formed no fit ambition for a man of his capacity. Egypt, its wealth, its commerce, its great port, and its docile population—these were his dream.

For two years he had been digging wells and building rest-houses on the road to Alexandria. The west was now outwardly quiet, and between Egypt and any hope of succour from the eastern caliphate stood the ravaging armies of the Ḳarmaṭīs. Egypt itself was in helpless disorder. The great Kāfūr was dead, and its nominal ruler was a child. Ibn-Furāt, the wezīr, had made himself obnoxious to the people by arrests and extortions. The very soldiery was in revolt, and the Turkish retainers of the court mutinied, plundered the wezīr's palace, and even opened negotiations with Mo'izz. Ḥoseyn, the nephew of the Ikhshīd, attempted to restore public order, but after three months of vacillating and unpopular government he returned to his own province in Palestine to make terms with the Ḳarmaṭīs. Famine, the result of the exceptionally low Nile of 967, added to the misery of the country; plague, as usual, followed in the steps of famine; over six hundred thousand people died in and around Fusṭāṭ, and the wretched inhabitants began in despair to migrate to happier lands.

All these matters were fully reported to Mo'izz by the renegade Jew Ya'ḳūb b. Killis, a former favourite of Kāfūr, who had been driven from Egypt by the jealous exactions of the wezīr Ibn-Furāt, and who was perfectly familiar with the political and financial state of the Nile valley. His representations confirmed the Fāṭimid caliph's resolve; the Arab tribes were summoned to his standard; an immense treasure was collected—24,000,000*D.* in gold according to Maḳrīzī, all of which was spent in the campaign—gratuities were lavishly distributed to the army; and at the head of over 100,000 men, all well mounted and armed, accompanied by a thousand camels and a mob of horses carrying money,

968

Fig. 20.—Dīnār of el-Mo'izz, Miṣr, 969.

stores, and ammunition, G'awhar marched from Ḳayra-
969 wān in February, 969. The caliph himself reviewed the troops. The marshal kissed his hand and his horse's shoe. All the princes, emīrs, and courtiers passed reverently on foot before the honoured leader of the conquering army, who, as a last proof of favour, received the gift of his master's own robes and charger. The governors of all the towns on the route had orders to come on foot to G'awhar's stirrup, and one of them vainly offered a large bribe to be excused the indignity.

The approach of this overwhelming force filled the Egyptian ministers with consternation, and they thought only of obtaining favourable terms. A deputation of notables, headed by Abū-G'a'far Muslīm, a sherīf (or descendant of the Prophet's family), waited upon G'awhar near Alexandria, and demanded a capitulation. The general consented without reserve, and in a conciliatory letter granted all they asked. But they had reckoned without their host; the troops at Fusṭāṭ would not listen to such humiliation, and there was a strong war party among the citizens, to which some of the ministers leaned. The city prepared for resistance, and skirmishes took place with G'awhar's army, which had meanwhile arrived at the opposite town of G'īza in July. Forcing the passage of the river, with the help of some boats supplied by Egyptian soldiers, the invaders fell upon the opposing army drawn up on the other bank, and totally defeated them. The troops deserted Fusṭāt in a panic, and the women of the city, running out of their houses, implored the sherīf to intercede with the conqueror. G'awhar, like his master, always disposed to a politic leniency, renewed his former promises, and granted a complete amnesty to all who submitted. The overjoyed populace cut off the heads of some of the refractory leaders in their enthusiasm, and sent them to the camp in pleasing token of allegiance. A herald bearing a white flag rode through the streets of Fusṭāṭ proclaiming the amnesty and forbidding pillage, and on August 5 the Fāṭimid army, with full pomp of drums and banners, entered the capital.

That very night G'awhar laid the foundations of a new 969
city, or rather fortified palace, destined for the reception of his sovereign. He was encamped on the sandy waste which stretched north-east of Fusṭāṭ on the road to Heliopolis, and there, at a distance of about a mile from the river, he marked out the boundaries of the new capital. There were no buildings, save the old "Convent of the Bones," nor any cultivation except the beautiful park called "Kāfūr's Garden," to obstruct his plans. A square, somewhat less than a mile each way, was pegged out with poles, and the Maghrabī astrologers, in whom Mo'izz reposed extravagant faith, consulted together to determine the auspicious moment for the opening ceremony. Bells were hung on ropes from pole to pole, and at the signal of the sages their ringing was to announce the precise moment when the labourers were to turn the first sod. The calculations of the astrologers were, however, anticipated by a raven, who perched on one of the ropes and set the bells jingling, upon which every mattock was struck into the earth, and the trenches were opened. It was an unlucky hour: the planet Mars (el-Ḳāhir) was in the ascendant; but it could not be undone, and the place was accordingly named after the hostile planet, el-Ḳāhira, "the martial" or "triumphant," in the hope that the sinister omen might be turned to a triumphant issue.[1] Cairo, as Ḳāhira has come to be called, may fairly be said to have outlived all astrological prejudices. The name of the 'Abbāsid caliph was at once expunged from the Friday prayers at the old mosque of 'Amr at Fusṭāṭ; the black 'Abbāsid robes were proscribed, and the preacher, in pure white, recited the khuṭba for

[1] Maḳr, i. 384, adds that el-Ḳāhira was also named el-Manṣūrīya (probably after the city or suburb of Ḳayrawān built by the Fāṭimid el-Manṣūr): see Lane's *Cairo*, 23·6. The name of el-Ḳāhira appears first on a coin in A.H. 394 (1003-4), with the epithet *el-Maḥrūsa*, "the guarded"; but does not recur until more than a century later, A.H. 508—24, when it has the form *el-Mo'izzīya el-Ḳāhira*, "the triumphant city of Mo'izz." The rare occurrence of the name is explained by the mint of the metropolis being still worked, as before, at Fusṭāṭ. After the burning of Fusṭāṭ in 1168 and the accession of Saladin, the coinage regularly bears the name of el-Ḳāhira (Cairo).

the Imām Mo'izz, emīr el-mu'minīn, and invoked blessings on his ancestors, 'Alī and Fāṭima, and all their holy family. The call to prayer from the minarets was adapted to Shī'a taste. The joyful news was sent to the Fātimid caliph on swift dromedaries, together with the heads of the slain. Coins were struck with the special formulas of the Fāṭimid creed—"'Alī is the noblest of [God's] delegates, the wezīr of the best of apostles"; "the Imām Ma'add calls men to profess the unity of the Eternal"—in addition to the usual dogmas of the Moḥammadan faith. For two centuries the mosques and the mint proclaimed the shibboleth of the Shī'a.

969 G'awhar set himself at once to restore tranquillity and alleviate the sufferings of the famine-stricken people. Mo'izz had providently sent grain-ships to relieve their distress, and as the price of bread nevertheless remained at famine rates, G'awhar publicly flogged the millers, established a central corn-exchange, and compelled everyone to sell his corn there under the eye of a government inspector (moḥtesib). In spite of his efforts, the famine lasted for two years; plague spread alarmingly, insomuch that the corpses could not be buried fast enough, and were thrown into the Nile; and it was not till the winter of 971-2 that plenty returned and the pest disappeared. As usual, the viceroy took a personal part in all public functions. Every Saturday he sat in court, assisted by the wezīr, Ibn-Furāt, the ḳāḍī, and skilled lawyers, to hear causes and petitions, and to administer justice. To secure impartiality, he appointed to every department of state an Egyptian and a Maghrabī officer. His firm and equitable rule ensured peace and order; and the great palace he was building, and the new mosque, the Azhar, which he founded in 970 and finished in 972, not only added to the beauty of the capital, but gave employment to innumerable craftsmen.

The inhabitants of Egypt accepted the new *régime* with their habitual phlegm. An Ikhshīdī officer in the Bashmūr district of Lower Egypt did, indeed, incite the people to rebellion, but his fate was not such as to encourage others. He was chased out of Egypt, captured on the

coast of Palestine, and then, it is gravely recorded, he was given sesame oil to drink for a month, till his skin stripped off, whereupon it was stuffed with straw, and hung up on a beam, as a reminder to him who would be admonished. With this brief exception we read of no riots, no sectarian risings, and the general surrender was complete when the remaining partisans of the deposed dynasty, to the number of 5000, laid down their arms. An embassy sent to George, king of Nubia, to invite him to embrace Islām, and to exact the customary tribute, was received with courtesy, and the money, but not the conversion, was arranged. The holy cities of Mekka and Medīna in the Higāz, where the gold of Mo'izz had been prudently distributed some years before, responded to his generosity and success by proclaiming his supremacy in the mosques; the Ḥamdānid prince who held northern Syria paid similar homage to the Fāṭimid caliph at Aleppo, where the 'Abbāsids had hitherto been recognized. Southern Syria, however, which had formed part of the Ikhshīd's kingdom, did not submit to the usurpers without a struggle. Ḥoseyn was still independent at Ramla, and G'awhar's lieutenant, G'a'far b. Fellāḥ, was obliged to give him battle. Ḥoseyn was defeated and exposed bareheaded to the insults of the mob at Fusṭāṭ, to be finally sent, with the rest of the family of Ikhshīd, to a Barbary gaol. Damascus, the home of orthodoxy, was taken by G'a'far, not without a struggle, and the Fāṭimid doctrine was there published, to the indignation and disgust of the Sunni population.

A worse plague than the Fāṭimid conquest soon afflicted Syria. The Ḳarmaṭī leader, Ḥasan b. Aḥmad, surnamed el-A'sam, finding the blackmail, which he had lately received out of the revenues of Damascus, suddenly stopped, resolved to extort it by force of arms. The Fāṭimids indeed sprang from the same movement, and their founder professed the same political and irreligious philosophy as Ḥasan himself; but this did not stand in his way, and his knowledge of their origin made him the less disposed to render homage to the sacred pretensions of the new Imāms, whom he contemptuously designated

as the spawn of the quack, charlatans, and enemies of Islām. He tried to enlist the support of the 'Abbāsid caliph, but el-Muṭī' replied that Fāṭimīs and Ḳarmaṭīs were all one to him, and he would have nothing to do with either. The Buweyhid prince of 'Irāḳ, however, supplied Ḥasan with arms and money; Abū-Taghlib, the Ḥamdānid ruler of Rahba on the Euphrates, contributed men; and, supported by the Arab tribes of 'Oḳeyl, Ṭyy, and others, Ḥasan marched upon Damascus, where the Fāṭimids were routed, and their general, G'a'far, killed. Mo'izz was forthwith publicly cursed from the pulpit in the Syrian capital, to the qualified satisfaction of the inhabitants, who had to pay handsomely for the pleasure.

Ḥasan next marched to Ramla, and thence, leaving the Fāṭimid army of 11,000 men shut up in Jaffa, invaded Egypt. His troops surprised Kulzum at the head of the Red Sea, and Faramā (Pelusium) near the Mediterranean, at the two ends of the Egyptian frontier; Tinnīs declared against the Fāṭimids, and Ḥasan appeared at Heliopolis
971 ('Ain Shems) in October, 971. G'awhar had already entrenched the new capital with a deep ditch, leaving but one entrance, which he closed with an iron gate. He armed the Egyptians, as well as the African troops, and a spy was set to watch the wezīr Ibn-Furāt, lest he should indulge in treachery. The sherīfs of the family of 'Alī were summoned to the camp, as hostages for the good behaviour of the inhabitants. Meanwhile, the officers of the enemy were liberally tempted with bribes. Two months they lay before Cairo, and then, after an indecisive engagement, Ḥasan stormed the gate, forced his way across the ditch, and attacked the Egyptians on their own ground. The result was a severe repulse, and Ḥasan retreated under cover of night to Kulzum, leaving his camp and baggage to be plundered by the Fāṭimids, who were only baulked of a sanguinary pursuit

Fig. 21.—½-Dīnār of el-Mo'izz, Palestine, 974.

by the intervention of night. The Egyptian volunteers displayed unexpected valour in the fight, and many of the partisans of the late dynasty, who were with the enemy, were made prisoners. Thus the serious danger, which went near to cutting short the Fāṭimid occupation of Egypt, was not only resolutely met, but even turned into an advantage. There was no more intriguing on behalf of the Ikhshīdids, Tinnīs was recovered from its temporary defection and occupied by the reinforcements which Mo'izz had hurriedly despatched under Ibn-'Ammār to the succour of G'awhar; and the Ḳarmaṭī fleet, which attempted to recover this fort, was obliged to slip anchor, abandoning seven ships and 500 prisoners. Jaffa, which still held out resolutely against the besieging Arabs, was now relieved by the despatch of African troops from Cairo, who brought back the garrison, but did not dare to hold the post. The enemy fell back upon Damascus, and their leaders fell out among themselves.

The Ḳarmaṭī chief was not crushed, however, by his defeat: in the following year he was collecting ships and Arabs for a fresh invasion. G'awhar, who had long urged his master to come and protect his conquest, now pointed out the extreme danger of a second attack from an enemy which had already succeeded in boldly forcing his way to the gate of Cairo. Mo'izz had delayed his journey, because he could not safely trust his western provinces in his absence; but on the receipt of this grave news, he appointed Yūsuf Bulugīn b. Zeyrī, of the Berber tribe of Sanhāǵa, to act as his deputy in Barbary, left Sardāniya —the Fontainebleau of Ḳayrawān, as Manṣūrīya was its Versailles—in November, 972, and making a leisurely progress, by way of Ḳābis, Tripolis, Aǵdābiya, and Barḳa, reached Alexandria in the following May. Here the caliph received a deputation, consisting of the ḳāḍī of Fusṭāṭ and other eminent persons, whom he moved to tears by his eloquent and virtuous discourse. A month 973
later he was encamped in the gardens of the monastery near G'iza, where he was reverently welcomed by his

devoted servant, G'awhar, content to efface himself in his master's shadow.[1]

The entry of the new caliph into his new capital was a solemn spectacle. With him were all his sons and brothers and kinsfolk, and before him were borne the coffins of his ancestors. Fusṭāṭ was illuminated and decked for his reception; but Mo'izz would not enter the old capital of the usurping caliphs. He crossed from Rōda by G'awhar's new bridge, and proceeded direct to the palace-city of Cairo. Here he threw himself on his face and gave thanks to God.

There was yet an ordeal to be gone through before he could regard himself as safe. Egypt was the home of many undoubted sherīfs or descendants of 'Alī, and these, headed by a representative of the distinguished Ṭabāṭabā family, came boldly to examine his credentials. Mo'izz must prove his title to the holy Imāmate inherited from 'Alī, to the satisfaction of these experts in genealogy. According to the story, the caliph called a great assembly of the people, and invited the sherīfs to appear: then half drawing his sword, he said, "Here is my pedigree," and scattering gold among the spectators, added, "and there is my proof." It was perhaps the best argument he could produce. The sherifs could only protest their entire satisfaction at this convincing evidence; and it is at any rate certain that, whatever they thought of the caliph's claim, they did not contest it. The capital was placarded with his name and the praises of 'Alī, and Mo'izz was acclaimed by the people, who flocked to his first public audience. Among the presents offered him, that of G'awhar was especially splendid, and its costliness prepares one for the coming records of the colossal wealth of the Fāṭimids. It included 500 horses with saddles and bridles encrusted with gold, amber, and precious stones;

[1] G'awhar appears to have taken no conspicuous part in the government or campaigns after the arrival of Mo'izz, and in Oct., 974, he was deprived of all his appointments. No quarrel is recorded, but Mo'izz probably felt that even perfect loyalty may not always counterbalance a dangerous popularity. We hear of the great ḳāïd (general) again in the next reign.

tents of silk and cloth of gold, borne on Bactrian camels; dromedaries, mules, and camels of burden; filigree coffers full of gold and silver vessels; gold-mounted swords; caskets of chased silver containing precious stones; a turban set with jewels, and 900 boxes filled with samples of all the goods that Egypt produced.

On the day of the 'Īd, or festival after the fast (the 973
Turkish Bairam), the caliph himself performed the prayers at the head of the congregation of the people, and then delivered the *khuṭba* from the pulpit. He valued himself on his sacerdotal talents, and his unction on this occasion touched all hearts. When the ceremony was over, Mo'izz returned to the palace at the head of his troops, escorted by his four sons in armour, preceded by two elephants, and gave a banquet to his guests. This palace, almost a city, the nucleus of the modern Cairo, was built, as we have seen, at some little distance from the old capital Fusṭāṭ, and, though sometimes called *el-Medīna*, 'the city,' was really an immense royal castle, reserved exclusively for the use of the caliph and his multitudinous ḥarim and household, his guard, his choice regiments, and his government officers. The broad enclosure of the castle was forbidden ground to the public, and even ambassadors from foreign powers—the eastern emperor had sent envoys to G'awhar and also to Mo'izz—were required to dismount outside and were led into the presence between guards in the same manner as at the Byzantine and Ottoman courts. "The chief buildings were the Great East Palace (or Palace of Mo'izz), the caliph's personal residence, where he kept his women, children, slaves, eunuchs, and servants, estimated at from eighteen to thirty thousand in number; and the Lesser West Palace, or pleasure-house, which opened on the spacious garden of Kāfūr, where a meydān or hippodrome provided exercise for the court. The two were separated by the square called 'Betwixt the Palaces' (Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn), where as many as ten thousand troops could parade; the name is still preserved in part of the Sūḳ-en-Naḥḥāsīn or Coppersmiths' Market.

An underground passage connected the two palaces, by which the caliph could pass without violating that mysterious seclusion which was part of his sacred character. Hard by were the mausoleum where lay the bones of his Fāṭimid ancestors, brought from far Ḳayrawān, and the mosque, el-Azhar, where the caliph was wont to lead the Friday prayers as Prince and Precentor of the Faithful.

Fig. 22.—Door of el-Aznar mosque, 972.

"Of the size and splendour of the Great Palace the Arabic historians speak with bated breath. We read of four thousand chambers;—of the Golden Gate which opened to the Golden Hall, a gorgeous pavilion where the caliph, seated on his golden throne, surrounded by his chamberlains and gentlemen in waiting (generally Greeks or Sūdānīs), surveyed from behind a screen of golden filigree the festivals of Islām;—of the Emerald Hall with its beautiful pillars of marble;—the Great Divan, where he sat on Mondays and Thursdays at a window beneath a cupola;—and the Porch where he listened every evening while the oppressed and

wronged came below and cried the *credo* of the Shī'a till he heard their griefs and gave redress."[1]

This description applies to the Fāṭimid Palace of later times, but it is true in the main of the Ḳāhira of Mo'izz. The buildings had all been planned by himself, to the smallest detail, and G'awhar had laboured for more than three years to realize his sovereign's designs. The profusion of wealth and costly magnificence of the court may be gathered from many indications. One of the daughters of Mo'izz left at her death five sacks of emeralds and a prodigious amount of precious stones of all sorts, 3,000 chased and inlaid silver vessels, 30,000 pieces of Sicilian embroidery, and 90 basins and ewers of pure crystal: forty pounds of wax were used in sealing her rooms and chests. Another daughter died worth 2,700,000*D.*, and left 12,000 different dresses. His wife built a mosque in the Kerāfa, and lavished large sums on its decoration: a Persian architect designed it, and artists from Baṣra painted the ceilings and walls. Mo'izz himself commanded a piece of silk to be made at Tustar in Persia, representing in gold and colours a map of the world, which cost him 22,000*D.* If the Fāṭimid heresy discouraged learning and literature, it stimulated art; and the prejudice against the representation of living things, which cramped orthodox painters, did not influence the work of the schismatics, who readily adopted Persian ideas. The Fāṭimid wezīr el-Yāzurī (see p. 142) pitted two painters of 'Irāḳ against each other: one, el-Ḳasīr, painted a dancing-girl in white dress, who seemed to retreat within a black arch, and his rival Ibn-'Azīz made his girl in crimson appear to come out of the yellow arch behind her.[2] Such a design would not have been tolerated by an 'Abbāsid caliph. There is no doubt that great artistic activity prevailed under the Fāṭimid rule, which was developed in Sicily as well as in Egypt. The famous Bayeux ivory casket, with its chased silver inlay repre-

[1] Lane-Poole, *Life of Saladin*, 112-114.

[2] Maḳrīzī, *Khitat*. Cp. Lane-Poole, *Art of the Saracens in Egypt*, 9, 10, 163, 201, 241.

senting parrots and other birds, has a Fāṭimid inscription, and an ivory box dated 970, in the Victoria and Albert Museum, is probably due to their workmen. A rock crystal vase in the treasury of St. Mark at Venice bears the name of el-'Azīz, the son of Mo'izz. Pottery, with metallic lustre, and glass, were worked, and the looms of Egypt were renowned. Alexandria and Cairo manufactured silks so fine that a whole robe could be passed through a finger ring; Asyūṭ was famous for its woollen turban cloth, Behnesa for white woollens, Debīk for silks, Damietta, of course, for dimity; and at Tinnīs, where the products of the royal factory were wholly reserved for the Fāṭimid household, they made besides cambric the beautiful irridescent stuff called *Būkalamūn*, or "chameleon," used for royal saddle cloths and litters. Besides native manufactures, the artistic work of Persia, Asia Minor, and Sicily was in high demand in Cairo.

Mo'izz, however, was no sybarite, and he combined with a love of beautiful things a watchful alertness to the preservation and development of his power. He had inherited a fleet in Sicily, which raided the coast of Spain in 955 and brought away booty and prisoners. The caliph of Cordova, the great Nāṣir, retorted by sending his ships to Tunis, where they had burnt a small port near Bona and ravaged the Barbary coast. The possession of the Egyptian harbours led to larger naval plans. A dock was built at Maḳs, the predecessor of Būlāḳ as port of Cairo, and six hundred ships were built there—the largest fleet Egypt had seen since the Arab conquest.[1] The army was carefully maintained in a high state of efficiency, nor did the caliph neglect any means to win the esteem of his new subjects. His tribunals were renowned for equity, he took a personal interest in all details of administration, proclaimed the height of the inundation as registered in the Nilometers, presided over the cutting of the Cairo khaliǵ or canal, and delighted the people by the splendid gold-embroidered silk covering (*shemsīya*) which he

[1] See below, p. 121, note.

prepared for the Ka'ba at Mekka, and which all the world was admitted to see on the Feast of Sacrifice. It was four times as big as any cover ordered by the 'Abbāsids, or even by Kāfūr. Evidently, the people thought, this caliph was a model of magnificent piety.

Meanwhile the threatened invasion of the Ḳarmaṭīs still lingered. They had made an attempt upon Tinnīs, which failed, but no further movements had taken place. Mo'izz endeavoured to negotiate with their chief, but in reply to a conciliatory epistle Ḥasan merely wrote :— "From Ḥasan b. Aḥmad el-A'sam. I have received thy letter, full of words, but empty of sense. I will bring my answer." He was as good as his word, and in the spring of 974 the Ḳarmaṭīs appeared again at 974
Heliopolis, and then, joined by partisans of the Ikhshīdids and by rival 'Alids, spread over all parts of Egypt in a wave of devastation. Mo'izz was prepared for them, but his forces were unequal to the defence. His son 'Abdallāh with 4,000 men had some successful engagements with scattered bodies of the enemy in the delta, but could not prevent the main body closing upon Cairo, where they drove the defenders over the trench into "the city." Pent up within the walls, the caliph's troops were unable to make head against the Arabs, until Mo'izz contrived to bribe the chief of the Benū-Ṭayy, the strongest ally of the Ḳarmaṭīs, with 100,000 *D.*, manufactured for the purpose of lead, gilt, since there was not enough gold in the treasury. The treacherous Bedawī deserted his leader in the next battle ; Ḥasan was forced to fly, his camp was taken and plundered, and 1500 of his camp followers were massacred. Ten thousand men were soon despatched into Syria, where the Ḳarmaṭīs were fortunately weakened by the jealousies of their two leaders, one of whom delivered the other into the hands of the Fāṭimid, who put him and his son in wooden cages and sent them to Egypt. The Ḳarmaṭi plague was stayed, but Damascus was a prey to faction and disorder for some years. The eunuch Rayān, who had conquered Tripolis from the Romans for Mo'izz, and 975
was now sent to Damascus, was unable to hold the city

against the Turkish emīr Aftegīn, who restored the name of the 'Abbāsid caliph, and gave the Syrian capital and the surrounding province some measure of peace and good government. Meanwhile another eunuch had taken Beyrūt with the Fāṭimid troops, and this loss brought Tzimisces to Syria. Aftegīn at once paid him homage and made a treaty; but Rayān sallied out of Tripolis and administered a crushing defeat, and the Roman retreated.

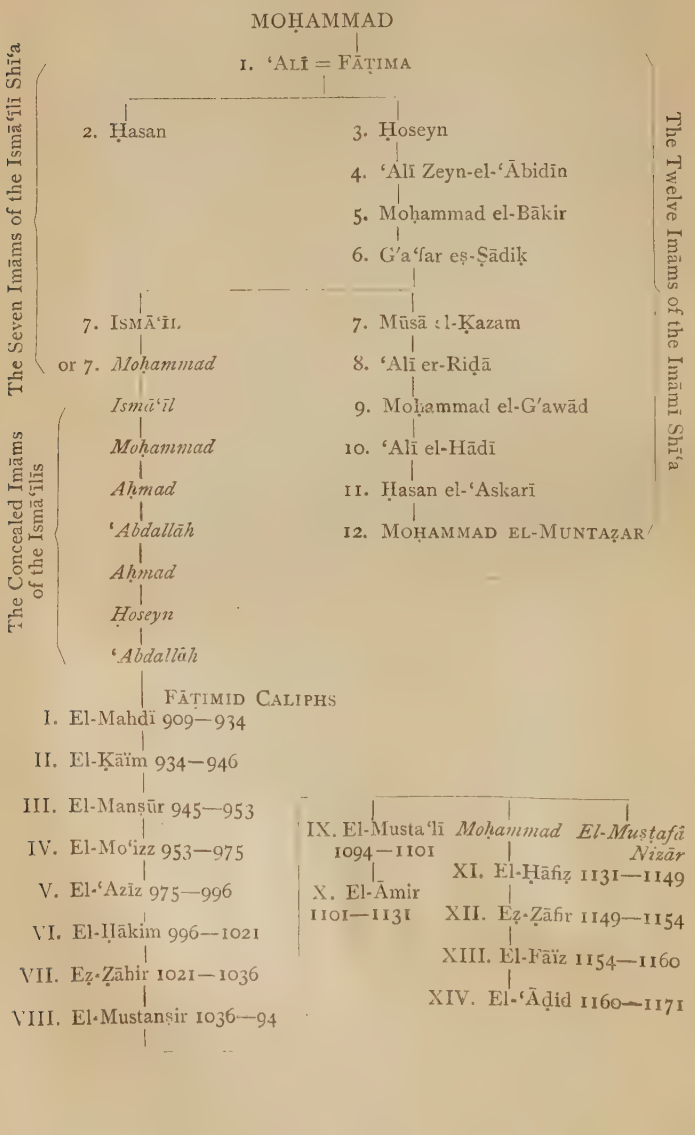
975 The news of this victory and the tidings that his name was again recited in the prayers at Mekka and Medīna lightened the last days of the caliph Mo'izz, who died about Christmas, 975, in his forty-sixth year.[1] His two years' residence at Cairo had been marked by many reforms. He had appointed the Jew Ibn-Killis and 'Asluǵ as general land administrators, and abolished at one stroke the petty powers and profits of the collectors and farmers of the taxes. These two officers sat daily in the office of the emīrate, adjoining the mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, fixing the tithes and assessments of lands, and superintending the taxes, customs, tithes, poll-tax, waḳfs, and all branches of revenue; calling up arrears, and examining scrupulously all complaints and demands. The result was a large increase in revenue. All taxes had to be paid in the current Fāṭimid coinage, and the Mo'izzi dīnār, reckoned at $15\frac{1}{2}$ dirhems, completely ousted the 'Abbāsid dīnār of the Ikhshīdids, to the considerable loss of the inhabitants. The taxes moreover were collected rigorously, for Mo'izz was eager to recover the immense sum he had spent on the conquest of Egypt, which so far had not answered his expectations of a gold-mine. Nevertheless, in a single day the taxes at Fusṭāṭ amounted to 50,000 *D.*, and sometimes as much as 120,000 *D.*; and once Tinnīs, Damietta, and Ushmuneyn contributed 200,000 *D.* in a day.

In his brief management of his mixed subjects in Egypt Mo'izz displayed judgment and justice. He forbade his

[1] His eldest son 'Abdallāh predeceased him by about a year, but three sons, Nizār, Temīm, and 'Oḳeyl, with seven daughters, survived.

African troops to interfere with the residents in the capital, and settled them at el-Khandaḳ, near Heliopolis, to prevent broils. They could not be kept out of Fusṭāṭ by day, but every evening a crier went round to warn them to leave the city before dark. To the Copts Mo'izz was not ill-disposed, and one of them was appointed to the head of the customs, first in Egypt and afterwards in Palestine, and was held in high favour by the caliph. Indeed the only sectarian trouble he had was of his own importing. The Shī'a were naturally much set up by the Fāṭimid successes, and they celebrated the martyrdom of Ḥoseyn on the 10th of Moḥarram—a day dreaded by the police even now in Bombay—with unwonted publicity at Cairo in 973, visited the tombs of the lady Nefisa and Kulthūm, of the holy family, in vast crowds, and insulted the Sunnī shop-people in the exuberance of their zeal. Street fights were prevented by the timely closing of the gates which separated the various quarters. The incident shows that the Shī'a revolution was still resented by a considerable section of the population, and we shall see that even two centuries later the restoration of orthodoxy was effected with surprising unanimity.

The Alleged Descent of the Fāṭimid Caliphs from the Prophet Moḥammad



CHAPTER V

THE FĀṬIMID CALIPHS

Authorities.—G'emāl-ed-din el-Ḥalabī, Abū-Ṣāliḥ, Ibn-el-Athīr, Ibn-Khallikān, Ibn-Khaldūn, el-Ḳalḳashandi, el-Makrīzī; Wüstenfeld, *Gesch. d. Fatimiden Chal.*, Quatremère, *Mémoires sur l'Égypte*, ii.

Monuments.—Mosques, el-Azhar (970—2), Ḥākim (990—1003), and G'uyūshī (1085); second wall of Cairo (1087), and three gates of Naṣr, Futūḥ (1087), and Zawīla (1091); mosques, el-Aḳmar (1125), el-Fakahānī (1148, but restored), eṣ-Ṣāliḥ ibn Ruzzīk (1160).

Inscriptions.—Founder's inscr. in Azhar, Ḥākim (disappeared, but recorded by Hammer, *Journ. As.*, III., v. 388), on Bāb-en-Naṣr, second wall of Cairo, chapel of Sitta Nefisa, Nilometer, mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn (restoration inscr.), rock at Rabwa, near Damascus. (Van Berchem, *Notes, Journ. As.*, 1891, and *Corpus Inscr. Arab.*; Kay, *J.R.A.S.*, N.S., xviii.)

Coins.—Mints, in Egypt: Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ), el-Ḳāhira (Cairo, (1003-4, 1114 ff.), Alexandria, Ḳūs (1123-4); in Africa (Tunisia), el-Manṣūrīya, el-Mahdīya (to 1064); Zawīla; Sicily (to 1054); Mekka (976-7), Medīna (1061), in Syria, Filesṭīn (Ramla), Damascus (to 1067), 'Akka, Ascalon, Tiberias, Tripolis, Tyre, Aleppo (1050—5).

Glass Weights.—These bear the names of all the caliphs, and sometimes dates, and are very numerous (Lane-Poole, *Cat. Ar. Wts.*, Casanova, *Coll. Fouquet*).

THE Fāṭimid rule established in Egypt by Mo'izz subsisted 975
for two centuries by no merits of the rulers nor any devotion of their subjects. Most of the caliphs were absorbed in their own pleasures, and the government devolved on wezīrs, who were frequently changed in accordance with their sovereigns' or the army's constant demand for more money and the ministers' success or failure in satisfying it. Most of the wezīrs were bent mainly on money-getting. No great ideas, no ambitious schemes found a place in their policy. The empire, which in the days of Mo'izz included the whole of north Africa, Sicily, Syria, and the Ḥiǵāz, soon sank to little

more than Egypt proper. The African provinces, from mere tributary connexion, passed in 1046 to frank independence, and reverted to their old allegiance (however nominal) to the caliphs of Baghdād. Syria was always loosely held, and was the scene of frequent rebellions and civil wars.[1] In Arabia alone the Fāṭimids acquired an increased influence, not by any effort of their own, but by the Shī'a propaganda which went on independently of their leading. In Egypt itself their power rested upon no equitable basis, nor upon any general adhesion to the Shī'a doctrines or their disputed pedigree, which was repeatedly refuted by Shī'a and Sunnī theologians;[2] their throne was founded upon fear, and subsisted by the terror of their foreign legions. The Berber troops, constantly recruited from their birthplace in the west, the Turkish mercenaries, renewed by purchase or volunteering from the east, the bloody and sensual Sūdānīs from the south, these were the bulwarks of the Egyptian caliphate and the sole cause of its longevity. Yet even in face of such a military tyranny, it may be questioned whether any people but the patient Egyptians would have submitted so long to an intolerable yoke.

The beginning, it is true, of this long oppression gave no promise of its coming burden. El-'Azīz,[3] the son of Mo'izz (975—996), who succeeded his father in Decem-

[1] The vicissitudes of the Fāṭimid rule in Syria are reserved for the next chapter.

[2] There were at least three formal repudiations of their pretended descent from the Prophet, drawn up at Baghdād, signed by celebrated doctors of the law of all schools, and circulated in Syria, and even communicated to the Fāṭimid caliphs themselves.

[3] Full name and title: el-Imām Nizār Abū-Manṣūr el-'Azīz bi-llāh ("the mighty through God") emīr-el-mu'minīn (commander of the faithful). His coins were issued at Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ) A.H. 365 (976)—386 (996); Filesṭīn (Ramla) 368—383; el-Mahdīya, 370–384, and el-Manṣūrīya in Africa, 367—386; Sicily, 366—377; Tripolis, in Syria, 374, and Mekka, 366. The Miṣr coinage is continuous, every year, but the coinage at the other mints seems to have been issued at irregular intervals when required. The same remark applies to later Fāṭimid issues. The coinage that has come down to us is almost entirely of gold, but the silver currency, though nearly destroyed, must have been very large.

ber, 975, but was not formally proclaimed till the Feast 976
of Sacrifice in August, 976, was an excellent ruler. Big, brave, and comely in person—though with reddish hair and blue eyes, always feared by Arabs—a bold hunter and a fearless general, he was of a humane and conciliatory disposition, loth to take offence, and averse from bloodshed. The tendency of the Fāṭimid creed (or policy) was towards toleration or indifference in regard to religion and race; but in the case of 'Azīz a special influence was exerted by a Christian wife, the mother, strange to say, of the monster Ḥākim. Her two brothers were appointed Melekite patriarchs of Alexandria and Jerusalem, by the caliph's express though irregular command, and the Christians never enjoyed so much toleration as under his rule. The Coptic patriarch Ephraim stood in high favour at his court, and obtained leave to rebuild the ruined church of Abū-s-Seyfeyn (St. Mercurius) outside Fusṭāṭ, and the opposition of the Muslims, who had turned it into a sugar warehouse, was summarily suppressed by the caliph.[1] With the catholicity or speculative curiosity characteristic of the Fāṭimids, 'Azīz encouraged Severus, the bishop of Ushmuneyn, to discuss points of doctrine with the Muslim divines, such as the famous ḳāḍi Ibn-en-No'mān, president of the prayers and director of the mint and of weights and measures for fourteen years; and the caliph even refused to persecute a Muslim who turned Christian, though apostasy was punishable by death. His generosity extended to his enemies; he knew how to respect a brave man, and when the gallant Turkish

Fig. 23.—Dīnār of el-'Azīz, Miṣr, 976.

[1] Abū-Ṣāliḥ, ff. 34*b*—36.

leader Aftegīn, who had raised all Syria against him and even out-generalled the veteran G'awhar, was betrayed into his hands, the caliph gave him a high post at court and loaded him with rewards for his valour in the field.

For the first fifteen years of his reign the caliph's chief minister or wezīr was the converted Jew, Ibn-Killis, who had served Mo'izz well and became the right hand of his son. It was largely due to this man's prudent statesmanship that Egypt enjoyed a long period of perfect tranquillity, and that the treasury overflowed with wealth. Another high official, who also became wezīr for the last two years of the reign, was the Christian 'Īsā b. Nestorius; and a Jew, Manasseh, was at one time chief secretary in Syria. These appointments naturally gave offence to the Muslims, who found themselves in the odd situation of being worse off under a Moḥammadan sovereign than were the "infidels." Poets wrote sarcastic verses, and remonstrances were thrust into the caliph's hands as he rode through the streets. He attempted to pacify his too zealous subjects by removing the obnoxious officials from their posts; but in the case of Ibn-Nestorius, at least, harīm influence was too strong, and the caliph's beloved and capable daughter, the Princess Royal (Seyyidet-el-mulk), obtained the Christian's restitution. In truth, 'Azīz could not do without the help of these able servants, who were evidently superior to their Muslim colleagues in business capacity. When Ibn-
982 Killis was thrown into prison for poisoning, out of mere jealousy, the Turkish favourite Aftegīn, his master missed his counsels so much that in forty days he was restored to office. A similar degradation of the same wezīr in the following year (983) was followed by an almost equally speedy restoration. Firm and just administration, backed by a powerful army, no doubt reconciled the Muslim population in some degree to what they regarded as an unnatural preference; but their dissatisfaction was always ready to break into active hostility on provocation. During the war with the emperor Basil in 996, for which 'Azīz had built a fine fleet of 600 sail, eleven of his largest vessels lying in the harbour of Maḳs on the

Nile (then the port of Cairo), were set on fire, and the sailors and mob, ascribing the disaster to the Greek inhabitants of the neighbourhood, massacred many of them, plundered their goods, and played ball with their heads. Order was promptly restored, however, and in three months the energy of Ibn-Nestorius produced six new vessels of the first class.[1]

Able as these ministers were, they shared with their master an inordinate love of wealth and luxury. Ibn-Killis, who died in 991, enjoyed a salary of 100,000 *D.*, 991
and left a princely fortune in lands, houses, shops, slaves, horses, furniture, robes, and jewels, valued at four million dīnārs, besides his daughter's dowry of 200,000 *D.* He kept 800 ḥarīm women, besides servants, and his body-guard consisted of 4000 young men, white and black. His house, the "Palace of the Wezīrs" was fortified and isolated like a castle. His choice carrier pigeons outstripped the caliph's own. 'Azīz himself attended his funeral (which was as sumptuous as his daily life), and supplied the embalming materials, camphor and musk, and rosewater, and fifty gorgeous robes for the shrouding of the corpse. Mounted on a mule, and rejecting the usual parasol of state, the caliph rode slowly to the house of his faithful counsellor, and standing before the bier, weeping, said the prayers for the dead, and with his own hand set the stone to the entrance of the tomb. For three days he kept no table and received no guests. Eighteen days the offices of government remained closed, and no business was done. For a month the grave was a place of pilgrimage, where poets recited the virtues of the departed, at the caliph's expense, and a legion of Ḳorān-readers chanted the sacred book day and night. Slave girls stood beside with silver cups and spoons to minister creature comforts of wine and sweetmeats to the crowd of mourning or interested visitors. The

[1] Nāṣir-i-Khusrau, who in 1046 saw seven of the galleys of Mo'izz drawn up on the bank of the Nile, where they had been beached on the conquest three-quarters of a century before, says that they measured 150 cubits long by 60 in the beam (*Safar Nāma*, ed. Schefer, 126). This would probably represent about 275 ft. by 110 ft.

caliph freed all the mamlūks of the deceased wezīr, paid his outstanding debts, and arranged for the salaries and maintenance of his vast household. In contrast to this display,
992 when a year later the great general G'awhar died, in the comparative obscurity of his later years, one reads only of a present of 5000 *D.* from the caliph to his family in token of regard.

'Azīz himself set the example of luxury which makes the records of Fāṭimid wealth almost incredible to those who do not realise the oriental passion for gewgaws. The caliph was a connoisseur in precious stones and articles of *virtu*.[1] A number of fashionable novelties are ascribed by the historian G'emāl-ed-dīn of Aleppo[2] to this reign, such as the heavy gold-embroidered many-coloured turbans, sixty yards long, made of the costly fabrics woven at the royal factories of Debīk; robes and coverings of the 'Attābī (taby) cloth of Baghdād, or the coloured stuffs of Ramla and Tiberias, or Cairo saḳlāṭūn; horse housings set with jewels and scented with ambergris, to cover armour inlaid with gold. The luxury of the person was matched by the luxury of the table. Fish were brought fresh from the sea to Cairo, a thing unknown before; truffles were eagerly sought a few miles from Muḳaṭṭam and sold in the markets in such quantities that from choice dainties they became cheap and common. The love of rarities brought strange animals and birds to Cairo; female elephants, which the Nubians had carefully reserved, were at length introduced for breeding, and a stuffed rhinoceros delighted the astonished crowd. These novelties were secured at a cost which made heavy demands on the treasury, and could be met only by rigorous financial control. 'Azīz kept a tight hand over his exchequer, and strictly forbade all bribes and presents; nothing could be paid without a written order. The money was not all spent upon luxuries, however. His reign saw many archi-

[1] A crystal vase in the treasure of St. Mark at Venice is said to bear the name of el-'Azīz; cp. the St. Denis vase in the Louvre, and see Lane-Poole, *Art of the Saracens*, 163, Maḳrīzī, i. 409 ff., etc.

[2] Extract in Wüstenfeld, 162-4.

tectural and engineering triumphs at Cairo, such as the Golden Palace, the Pearl Pavilion, his mother's mosque in the Kerāfa cemetery, the foundation in 991 of the great mosque known as el-Ḥākim's (then outside the Bāb-en-Naṣr), some important canals, bridges, and naval docks. 'Azīz was a man of orderly mind, and introduced many reforms in ceremonies and management. He was the first to make processions in state every Friday in Ramaḍān, the month of fasting, and to perform the prescribed service in the presence of the people as their high-priest; the first to give fixed salaries to his servants and retainers, and to supervise their liveries; the first of his family to adopt the disastrous policy of importing and favouring Turkish troops. With all his shrewdness and no inconsiderable culture, and a turn for poetry, he fancied himself a soothsayer—indeed, it was part of the Fāṭimid pretension to know the unknown—and exposed himself to some ridicule on this score. He once went out of his way to satirize the Omayyad caliph of Cordova in an insulting letter, but received the crushing retort: "You ridicule us because you have heard of us: if we had ever heard of you, we should reply." Nevertheless 'Azīz was the wisest and most beneficent of all the Fāṭimid caliphs of Egypt. The unbroken rest which the country enjoyed is his best witness; and though Africa was loosening its ties to Egypt, and Syria was only held down by force of arms, the name of 'Azīz was prayed for in the mosques from the Atlantic to the Red Sea, in the Yemen, in the sanctuary of Mekka,[1] and once (992) even in the pulpit of Mōṣil. A complication of agonizing disorders carried off this great ruler at Bilbeys, October 996, after a touching interview[2] with his little son, in 996 happy ignorance, despite his prophetic fancy, of the evil which the boy would work in the kingdom his father had so carefully nursed.

El-Ḥākim,[3] (996—1021), the only son of this prudent

[1] A coin of A.H. 366 (976-7) struck at Mekka bears the name of 'Azīz (B.M. Cat., iv., p. ix.).

[2] See Ibn-Khallikān, iii. 529.

[3] El-Manṣūr Abū-'Alī el-Ḥākim bi-amri-llāh ("ruling by God's

father and Christian mother, was but eleven years old when 'Azīz fell dead in his bath at Bilbeys. The emīr Barǵawān fetched him out of a fig-tree, and hastily setting the jewelled turban on his head, brought him forth to the people, who kissed the ground before their new Imām. Next day, lance in hand, and sword hanging from the shoulder, the little boy followed the camel that bore his father's remains back to Cairo; and the day after he was solemnly enthroned in the great palace in the presence of the whole Court, marshalled in order of rank. For the first few years he was naturally kept in a state of tutelage. His governor (ustād), appointed by 'Azīz, was the Slav eunuch Barǵawān, whose name is still commemorated in one of the streets of Cairo; the Maghrabī (Berber) Ibn-'Ammār was given the command of the troops, with the title of "intermediary" (el-Wāsiṭ) and the surname Amīn-ed-dawla ("warden of the realm"); [1] whilst the Christian Ibn-Nestorius continued to control the finances until his summary execution. The Berber general was practically regent, and used his power to promote the interests of his own tribe, the Kitāma, and to subordinate the Turkish party

Fig. 24.—¼-Dīnār of el-Ḥākim, Sicily, 1004.

command"). His coins were struck at Miṣr, el-Manṣūrīya, el-Mahdīya, Zawīla (once), Sicily, Damascus, Filesṭīn (Ramla), Tyre (once), Tripolis (once), and once at Cairo with the epithet "guarded" (el-Ḳāhira el-Maḥrūsa). The glass weights (for testing dīnārs and dirhems, and their fractions and multiples) bearing el-Ḥākim's name, and sometimes a date, are numerous.

[1] He was the first Maghrabī to receive an honorific surname in Egypt. The practice of inventing special designations and titles for wezīrs, popular with this pompous dynasty, dates from this time. Examples are the title of "Generalissimo" (Ḳāïd el-Ḳuwwād), given to Barǵawān's successor el-Ḥoseyn, the son of Ǵ'awhar; Ṣāliḥ of Rūdhbār was styled Thiḳat thiḳāt es-seyf wa-l-ḳalam, "trusty of the trusty of the pen and the sword"; Ibn-'Abdūn, el-Kāfī, "the efficient"; Zura', the son of Ibn-Nestorius, esh-Shāfī, "the salutary"; el-Ḥoseyn b. Ṭāhir, Amīn el-Umanā, "faithful of the faithful"; 'Alī b. Ǵ'a'far el-Fellāḥī, Dhū-l-Riyāsateyn, "he of the two departments," etc. From 1137, the wezīrs of the Fāṭimids took the title of melik, "king."

imported by 'Azīz. The Berbers accordingly waxed insolent, plundered and ill-treated the Egyptians, and fought the Turkish soldiery in the streets. It became a struggle between east and west, and the east won. The Kitāma were beaten and disgraced; Ibn-'Ammār was deprived of his office; the Turks sacked his palace, and when he ventured to come to court, they cut him down and presented his head to the delighted young caliph.

Barǵawān, who had hitherto lived quietly in the palace, protecting his ward, now became regent, and intoxicated by sudden power and riches abandoned himself entirely to pleasure. He passed his time agreeably in the society of singers, listening to the music he loved, in the Pearl Palace which 'Aziz had built near the bridge-gate, overlooking the beautiful gardens of Kāfūr on the one hand, and on the other commanding a view over the canal to the Nile and the pyramids. Immersed in pleasure he lost all count of power. Ḥākim, left without control, began to assert himself and despise his governor, who, tutor-like, had called his pupil names. Very soon the boy began his career of bloodshed by having Barǵawān assassinated. The people, shocked at 1000
the death of the popular chief, crowded threateningly to the palace; but the caliph put them off with lies and appealed to them to support him in his helpless youthfulness. The mob dispersed, and a dangerous crisis was over. It was a lesson in deportment that Ḥākim did not forget.

As the young caliph came more before the public, the eccentricities of his character began to appear. His strange face, with its terrible blue eyes, made people shrink; his big voice made them tremble. His tutor had called him "a lizard," and he had a creepy slippery way of gliding among his subjects that explained the nickname. He had a passion for darkness, would summon his council to meet at night, and would ride about the streets on his grey ass night after night, spying into the ways and opinions of the people under pretence of inspecting the market weights and measures. Night was turned into day by his command. All business and

catering was ordered to take place after sunset. The shops had to be opened and the houses illuminated to serve his whim, and when the poor people overdid the thing and began to frolic in the unwonted hours, repressive orders were issued; women forbidden to leave
1005 their homes, and men to sit in the booths. Shoemakers were ordered to make no outdoor boots for women, so that they might not have the wherewithal to stir abroad, and the ladies of Cairo were not only enjoined on no account to allow themselves to be seen at the lattice-windows, but might not even take the air on the flat roofs of their houses. Stringent regulations were issued about food and drink. Ḥākim was a zealous abstainer, as all Muslims are expected to be. Beer was forbidden, wine was confiscated, vines cut down, even dried raisins were contraband; malūkhīya (Jews' mallow) was not to be eaten, and honey was seized and poured into the Nile. Games, such as the Egyptian chess, were prohibited, and the chessboards burnt. Dogs were to be killed wherever found in the streets, but the finest cattle could not be slaughtered save at the Feast of Sacrifice. Those who ventured to disobey these decrees were scourged and beheaded, or put to death by some of the novel forms of torture which the ingenious caliph delighted in inventing. A good many of these novel regulations were no doubt inspired by a genuine reforming spirit, but it was the spirit of a mad reformer. The lively ladies of Cairo have always needed a tight hand over them, but who could expect to restrain a woman by confiscating her boots? The prohibition of intoxicating liquors, gambling, and public amusements, was in keeping with the character of a sour and bitter Puritan, and were doubtless intended as much to improve the morals as to vex the souls of his subjects. But the nightly wanderings, the needless restrictions and harassing regulations concerning immaterial details, were signs of an unbalanced mind. Ḥākim may have meant well according to his lights, but his lights were strangely prismatic.

During the first ten years of the reign the Christians and Jews enjoyed the immunity and even privileges

which they had obtained under the tolerant rule of 'Azīz; but as time went on they came in for their share of irrational persecution.[1] In public they were forced to wear black robes by way of livery ; and in the baths, where one man without clothes is very like another, the naked Christians were compelled to distinguish themselves by wearing large and heavy crosses, while the Jews had to wear bells, or in the streets display a wooden image of a calf, in pleasing allusion to a discreditable episode in their early history. Next, a general order was 1005
issued for the destruction of all the Christian churches in Egypt, and the confiscation of their lands and property: the work of demolition went on for at least five years (1007—12). The Christians were offered the choice of becoming Muslims, or leaving the country, or else wearing a heavy cross as a badge of their degradation. Many Christians, especially among the peasantry, to escape persecution, accepted the Mohammadan religion; and the office where the declarations of conversion were received on two days in the week was besieged with applications, insomuch that 1008
some of these eager proselytes were trampled to death in the crush. Such as remained true to their faith were subjected to various humiliations, and forbidden to ride 1012
horses, to keep Muslim servants, to be rowed by Muslim boatmen, or to purchase slaves.[2]

Fig. 25.—Dīnār of el-Ḥākim, Miṣr, 1015.

[1] The caliph was said to have been excited against the Christians by a monk in revenge for the patriarch's refusal of a bishopric. See Renaudot, Hist. Patr., 388.

[2] Some of these restrictions were scarcely oppressive. The Christians seem to have voluntarily adopted the black dress two centuries before (Abū-Ṣāliḥ, 52*a*), and riding horses had become the mark of the soldier. Ḥākim himself rode an ass. The purchase of slaves by Christians can only mean the purchase of Christian slaves.

The penalties inflicted upon Christians, however, were more a part of a general contempt of mankind than a sign of special dislike to one section. Whilst these very orders were being issued, Christians were still appointed to the highest offices, in virtue, no doubt, of their superior fiscal capacity. Ibn-'Abdūn, the wezīr who had to sign the decree for the
1009 demolition of the Church of the Resurrection at Jerusalem, was a Christian; and his successor was another Christian, "the Trusty" Zur'a, the son of the aged ex-wezīr Ibn-Nestorius, who died in 1012. It is true their "path of glory led but to the grave." Ḥākim's wezīrs, whether Christian or Muslim, were murdered with scrupulous impartiality. Fahd, a Muslim prime-minister, was made away with in 1003, and his successor was executed a month later; Ibn-'Abdūn was killed in 1010, and in the same year the generalissimo Ḥoseyn, the son of G'awhar, after being degraded and obliged to fly, then restored to office and apparent favour, was foully murdered in the palace by his treacherous sovereign, after every assurance of protection. Officials were tortured and killed like flies; arms were hacked off, tongues cut out, every kind of barbarity inflicted. A special department of government,
1008 the *dīwān mufrid*, was established for the management of the confiscated property of murdered and disgraced officials.

The deadly freaks of the caliph were most acutely felt at Cairo, but his fantastic orders ran throughout his dominions, and all Egypt suffered. Three years of low Niles increased the distress, and were taken as God's judgment for the wickedness of the times. It was no wonder that an adventurer was able to raise the country and defy the Fāṭimid armies for two years. A member of the royal Omayyad family, flying from Spain, set himself up as caliph, and winning the adhesion of the Benū-Ḳurra Arabs and of the Kitāma Berbers, who had never forgiven their humiliation at the hands of
1005 the Turks in Cairo, obtained possession of Barḳa, defeated the Fāṭimid troops sent against him, and over-

ran Egypt. Abū- Raḳwa,[1] "the father of the leather bottle," as he was called, from the waterskin he carried after the manner of the dervishes, worsted the caliph's army again at G'īza, and camping beside the pyramids kept Cairo in a fever of alarm. When at last he was crushed in a bloody battle, and captured in Nubia, his head and 30,000 skulls of his followers were sent in procession through all the towns of Syria on the backs of a hundred camels, and then thrown into the Euphrates. The general Faḍl, who had rid the caliph of this rival, reaped an ill reward for his service. He had the misfortune to enter the royal presence when Ḥākim was busily engaged in cutting up the body of a beautiful little child whom he had just murdered with his own knife. El-Faḍl could not restrain his horror, but he knew the consequences: he went straight home, made his will, and admitted the caliph's headsmen an hour later. He had seen too much.

Fig. 26.—Glass weight of el-Ḥākim, 1012.

1007

With all his frantic savagery, Ḥā'kim had gleams of intelligence and certainly of piety; and his reign was not altogether wanting in religious and public works. His most famous monument is the mosque that still bears his name, close to the north gate or Bāb-en-Naṣr. Begun by his father in 991, it was completed in 1003, except the heightening of the minaret. He also built the Rāshida mosque, and often prayed there on Fridays; and at Maḳs he founded both a mosque for the next world and a belvedere for this, near the river bank.

[1] His adopted titles were eth-Thāïr bi-amri-llāh and el-Muntaṣir min-a'dāi-llāh, both favourites with Shī'a pretenders, but strange in an Ommayyad.

His most original foundation, however, was the "Hall of
1005 Science" (Dār-el-'Ilm, or Dār-el-Ḥikma), erected in 1005 chiefly for the propagation of Shi'a theology and every sort of heterodoxy, but also for the promotion of learning

Fig. 27.—Mosque of el-Ḥākim, 991-1003.

in general—astronomy, lexicology, grammar, poetry, criticism, law, and medicine. It was a luxuriously fitted establishment, with a magnificent library, largely supplied from the royal palaces, open to every one, and supplied

with all necessaries of study.[1] All the men of learning of Cairo and many visitors from afar used to meet there, and once they were invited in a body to the palace, and to their surprise returned clothed with robes of honour instead of losing their heads.

Even in his buildings, however, there was something fantastic and suspicious. When he set up a great barn on the Muḳaṭṭam hills, and filled it with firewood, 1004
the people were convinced that he meditated a general holocaust on a gigantic pyre, and an official proclamation barely reassured them. The desert slopes of Muḳaṭṭam were his favourite haunt. There he had his observatory (another in the Kerāfa was never finished), where he pursued the astrological calculations which he sternly forbade to his subjects. Hither he would ride on his grey ass before break of day, dressed in the extreme simplicity which he substituted for the pomp and splendour of his ancestors, attired in a plain robe of one colour, without a jewel even in his turban, and attended by a groom or two, or often quite alone. It must be admitted that he had courage. When he had roused hatred on all sides, killed whole families on suspicion, and exasperated every passion of vengeance, he still rode out, scarcely attended, in the deserts or in the crowded streets, by day and by night, indulging in fresh fancies or prying into the ways of his subjects, too often with bloody consequences. Only his deadly ferocity, and a sense of mysterious awe, saved him from the hourly risks of assassination. Not an attempt was made upon him for a quarter of a century. It is true he had an omnipresent secret police, including women spies, who served him well in the ḥarīms.

[1] The sums allowed for the maintenance of the Hall of Science seem small compared with the luxury of the times. The annual grant for paper for copying MSS. was 90 *D.*; for ink and pens, etc., 12 *D.*; for repairing books, 12 *D*; for cushions and carpets and winter curtains, 19 *D.*; for water, 12 *D.*; for salaries of the librarian and servants, 63 *D.* The total grant was 275 *D.* (Maḳrīzī, Khiṭaṭ, i. 409.) The Hall of Science was closed in 1119 by the wezīr Afḍal, in consequence of its use by heretical teachers; but a new Hall of Science was built near the great palace, and opened in 1123 by order of his successor, the wezīr Ma'mūn.

Matters grew worse as the caliph grew older. Wanton executions and confiscations became more frequent, and other people's lands were bestowed at random on common soldiers and sailors, or anybody. The folk began to fly the country. The bazars of Fusṭāṭ were closed. All business was at a standstill. For seven years not a woman was seen in the streets. Revolt was in the air.
1013 Alexandria was independent under the Ḳurra Arabs. At Cairo a female guy was set up in the street, lampoon in hand. The caliph took it as he rode by, and black
1014 with fury seized the supposed woman, who proved to be of paper. Thereupon, in one of his ungovernable passions of rage, Ḥākim sent his black troops to burn Fusṭāṭ. The inhabitants ran to arms; there was three days' fighting in the streets; the mosque was full of shrieking supplicants; half the city was sacked or burnt, and many of its women enslaved. Still the people endured. Then a new mania seized the bemused caliph. He fancied himself the Incarnation of the Godhead, and compelled all men to worship his name. It was the legitimate outcome of extreme Shī'a mysticism, and it found
1018 support. One Ḥasan, known as "Slit-nose" (el-Akhram), came from distant Farghāna and preached the divinity of Ḥākim. A man of the people murdered him and was executed, and the Sunnīs honoured the murderer's grave. Then Ḥamza came from Sūsan, in
1019 Persia, to propagate the new doctrine, and won many adherents, who adorned themselves with strange titles. Some of these fanatics rode into the old mosque of 'Amr at Fusṭāṭ and began to preach, their followers applauding
1020 and clapping their hands like thunder. The people flocked in to see the sight, but when one of the preachers addressed the ḳāḍī "In the Name of el-Ḥākim the Compassionate, the Merciful," it was too much: a tumult ensued, the people killed the blasphemers, dragged their bodies through the streets, and burnt them.

Never had Ḥākim been so near a revolution. His palace was besieged by the Turkish troops in search of Darāzī, a leader of the new-fangled sect, who had taken

refuge there : but Ḥākim was true to his insolent courage. He told them from a balcony that the man was not there, and afterwards that he was dead ; he lied, but he did not give him up. Darāzī escaped to found the Druze religion in the Lebanon. For a time Ḥākim dissembled his rage, but in the seclusion of his palace he was concocting plans of vengeance. After a month or so of ominous reserve, the negro troops were again sent into Fusṭāṭ, where the revolt had begun. They went quietly, in separate bands ; but once there, they set about plundering and devastating the city, burst into houses and even baths, hauling out the young girls, and committing every atrocity that black blood suggests. The caliph came riding along on his ass, as usual, and to him the desperate folk crowded with piteous entreaty to be saved from the brutal soldiery. He answered never a word.

One result of his assumption of Godhead was the relaxation of many of the prescribed rules of Islām. In his new capacity Ḥākim rescinded the laws of fasting and pilgrimage, since the ordinances of the Ḳorān were to be interpreted allegorically, and he personally abandoned the now superfluous habits of prayer and fasting. It was probably in the same spirit of religious emancipation, as much as to add to the exasperation of his afflicted Muslim subjects, that he rescinded his penalties against Christians, permitted them to resume their religion, and rebuild their churches. Many nominal 1021
Muslims thus reverted openly to their real creed, and the churches were restored to more than their former state. On the other hand the Muslims were treated with increased barbarity ; nothing was safe from the black troops, and the people prayed in the mosques and cried aloud in vain, for there was none to help them.

At last a stand was made. The Turkish troops and the Kitāma Berbers, finding themselves neglected, made common cause against the black infantry, and in a series of street battles broke their power and restored some degree of order in the distracted city. Ḥākim for once could make no head against the resistance of the

indignant troops. He had raised up, moreover, a powerful enemy within his own household. His only sister, the Princess Royal, a woman of spotless character and great intelligence, had not escaped the madman's rancour. She rebuked him boldly for the horrors of his reign ; he retorted by an outrageous slander against her chastity. To save her father's kingdom for her father's grandchild,[1] no less than to preserve her purity from an odious ordeal, she abandoned her wretched brother, and joined the rising conspiracy. She entered into negotiations with the Berber chiefs, and the result was soon seen.

1021 On February 13th, 1021, Ḥākim took his wonted ride towards the Muḳaṭṭam hills, and rambled about all night. In the morning he dismissed his two grooms, and went on alone into the desert, as he had often done before. Some days later his ass was found, maimed, on the hills ; then his coat of seven colours, with dagger marks ; his body was never discovered. After four years a man confessed to the murder, "out of zeal for God and Islām" ; but a mystery still hung over the vanishing of the mad caliph. People refused to believe that he was really dead. His return was anxiously awaited. Pretenders arose and claimed to be the lost Ḥākim ; and to this day the Druzes in the Lebanon worship the Divine Reason incarnate in his singularly unworthy person, and believe that one day he will come again in majesty and reveal truth and judgment.

The effects of this terrible quarter of a century could not be speedily undone, nor was Ḥākim's only son, a boy of sixteen, who was proclaimed caliph with the name of eẓ-Ẓāhir[2] (1021-1036), the man for the crisis. His

[1] Ḥākim in 1013 had set aside his only son, the future Ẓāhir, and proclaimed as his successor a certain 'Abd-er-Raḥmān, a great-grandson of el-Mahdī. This person was duly recognized in *khuṭba* and *sikka*, prayer and coins, and coins bearing his name, struck at Miṣr, Damascus, and el-Manṣūrīya, are found, from 1012 to 1021, with the title "heir of the covenant of the Muslims." When Ẓāhir succeeded his father, 'Abd-er-Raḥmān absconded.

[2] Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī eẓ-Ẓāhir li-'izāzi-dīni-llāh, "the triumphant in strengthening God's religion." His coins were issued from the mints

aunt, the Princess Royal (Seyyidet-el-Mulk), managed the affairs of state for four years, but she had to deal with a military oligarchy, and to meet them with their own unhandsome weapons. The Berber leader of the revolt against Ḥākim was treacherously murdered in the palace by her order, and the execution of two wezīrs followed. After her death the government fell into the hands of a court clique, who, to preserve their power, banished wiser counsellors from the young caliph's side, and encouraged him in his natural folly and self-indulgence. Once a day the three sheykhs who formed this cabal visited the royal youth in due form, but all serious affairs of government were arranged without his concurrence. The condition of the people, relieved by the cancelling of all Ḥākim's obnoxious restrictions, was nevertheless aggravated by a serious failure of the inundation, which entailed 1025
great scarcity and high prices. Oxen rose to 50 *D.* a head, and their slaughter had to be prohibited, to prevent utter extermination. Camels of burden became scarce, and fowls, the common meat of Egypt, were not to be had. People tried to sell their furniture, and could not find purchasers. They sickened and died for want of food, and the stronger turned brigand and plundered the caravans, even of pilgrims; the roads were infested with robbers, and the Syrian rebels invaded the frontier towns. The people crowded before the palace, crying, "Hunger, hunger! O commander of the faithful, it was not thus under your father and grandfather!" The palace itself was so short of food, that when the banquet for the Feast of Sacrifice was spread, the starving slaves swept the table. The

Fig. 28.—Dīnār of eẓ-Ẓāhir, Miṣr, 1030.

of Miṣr, el-Manṣūrīya, el-Mahdīya, Zawīla (once), Sicily, Filesṭīn (Ramla), and Tyre, and Alexandria appears for the first time as a Fāṭimid mint in A.H. 423 (1032). Numerous glass weights, often dated, exist.

treasury was empty, the taxes in arrears. Slaves broke into revolt, and the citizens formed committees of safety, and were permitted to kill them in self-defence. Barricades were thrown up to keep the rebels out. The wezīr, el-Gʹarġarāi, was a prisoner in his own house. The situation was critical ; but an ample Nile in 1027 restored plenty, and with the relief from famine the disturbances quieted down.

Besides the Syrian war (see ch. vi.), the most notable event of Ẓāhir's fifteen years' reign was a solitary religious persecution in 1025, when all the divines of the Mālikī school were banished from Egypt. As a rule there was perfect toleration of the Moḥammadan sects, and the Sunnīs were not disturbed in the free exercise of their religious rites. A treaty was also made with the Roman Emperor, Constantine VIII., who allowed Ẓāhir's name to be prayed for in the mosques in his dominions, and
1027 the mosque at Constantinople to be restored, in return for the caliph's permission to rebuild the Church of the Resurrection at Jerusalem.[1] Ẓāhir himself was completely engrossed in his pleasures and in the training of his mamlūk guard ; but his love of music and dancers was combined with a savage cruelty which proved him his father's son. He once invited all the young girls of the
1032 palace to a merry-making. They came in their holiday best, and were led into the mosque, to await the festivities. The doors were then closed and bricked up, and 2660 girls perished of starvation. The history adds that for six months their bodies lay there unburied, and it is a relief to learn that the wretch who planned this wanton barbarity himself died of the plague in June, 1036.

He was followed by his seven year old son Maʿadd (1036—1094), who, at the age of eight months, had been proclaimed heir, and now assumed the caliphate with the name of el-Mustanṣir.[2] His reign of sixty lunar

[1] Maḳ. i. 355. This arrangement was renewed in 1037-8, when the emperor Michael IV. released 5000 Muslim prisoners and sent architects to Jerusalem. Abū-l-Fidā, iii. 96.

[2] Abū-Temīm Maʿadd el-Mustanṣir bi-llāh, "The seeker of aid from God." With the exception of five years (four of which, 1070 ff.,

years and four months is probably the longest recorded of any Moḥammadan ruler. For the third time in the history of the Fāṭimids we find a woman's influence almost supreme. The Christian wife of ʿAzīz, the political sister of Ḥākim, were followed by the black mother of Maʿadd. She was a Sūdānī slave, bought of a Jew of Tustar, and she and Abū-Saʿīd, her Hebrew vendor, enjoyed most of the power during the caliph's childhood. By their exertions the new wezīr who succeeded Gʿarġarāi (†1044) was deposed and executed, and Ṣadaḳa, a renegade Jew, appointed in his place. The renegade, however, finding Abū-Saʿīd's interference intolerable, turned upon his patron and had him murdered by the Turkish guard. In revenge, the wālida (dowager, or caliph's mother) had the wezīr assassinated. The next minister sought to balance the overweening power of the Turks by importing negro troops, but he too was deposed, and his successor held office for only three months. Then, in 1050, el-Yāzūrī entered upon a wezīrate which lasted eight years.

Fig. 29.—Glass weight of el-Mustanṣir.

1044

In territorial extent the dominions of the Fāṭimids were now reduced to little more than Egypt itself. Syria had long resisted their authority (see ch. vi.). North Africa, under four successive rulers of the Sanhāġa Berbers, seated at Mahdīya, had acknowledged their suzerainty by citing the caliphs' names in the prayer and on the coinage, by paying an annual tribute, and by receiving formal investiture on each succession by the caliph's diploma; but about 1044 Moʿizz, the ruling governor, joined the orthodox Sunnī sect, and renouncing

fell during or immediately after the great famine) there is a consecutive series of annual issues of Mustanṣir's gold coins from the mint of Miṣr from A.H. 427 to 486 (1036-93). His other mints were Alexandria (especially during the last twenty years of the reign, to A.H. 488 = 1095), el-Basṭa, el-Manṣūrīya (to 1036-7), el-Mahdīya (to 1065), Sicily (to 1054-5), Filesṭīn (Ramla), Damascus, Ṭabarīya (Tiberias), ʿAkka, Tyre, Tripolis, Aleppo (1050-5), Medīna (1061), and Baghdād (Medīnat-es-Selām, 1058). His glass weights abound.

the Fāṭimids accepted a fresh investiture from the
1046 'Abbāsid caliph in 1046.[1] At this the Shī'a of the west revolted against Mo'izz, and at the same time on the east the Egyptian government sent the great Arab tribe of Hilāl to bring him back to his allegiance. The Hilāl occupied Barḳa and Tripolis, and settled there; but Mo'izz, though defeated, maintained his independence at Mahdīya, letting other minor states spring up further west. Sicily, where the Kelbī emīrs had recognized the Fāṭimid supremacy, fell to the Normans in 1071 ff.[2] Henceforth, beyond an intermittent authority in Barḳa, the rulers of Egypt owned no subjects further west.

Fig. 30.—Dīnār of el-Mustanṣir, Miṣr, 1047.

In Arabia, on the other hand, they received an unexpected accession of prestige by the voluntary homage of a Shī'a proselyte, 'Alī the Ṣuleyḥid, who subdued the Yemen and the Ḥiǵāz from Ḥaḍramawt to Mekka by 1063, and proclaimed the divine right of the Fāṭimid caliph in every pulpit. A still more surprising development was seen, when not only in the holy cities which had witnessed the birth of Islām, but even in Baghdād itself, the home of the orthodox caliphate, the name of Mustanṣir was prayed for in the mosques.[3] It was but the temporary success of a Turkish general, el-Besāsīrī, that procured this unparalleled honour, and when this

[1] The latest coin of el-Manṣūrīya (Ḳayrawān) bearing the Fāṭimid caliph's name, is of A.H. 438 (1046-7). Several coins, however, were struck at el-Mahdīya from 1062-5, in the name of Mustanṣir, showing a temporary return to allegiance.

[2] The Sicilian emīrs issued their coinage solely in the names of the Fāṭimid caliphs, and the last dated issues are of A H. 446 and 448? (1054-7).

[3] A coin of Baghdād (Medīnat-es-Selām) struck in A.H. 450 (1058-9) with the name of Mustanṣir is recorded by Frähn (*Inedita Asiat. Mus.*, 1847).

adventurer discovered that it was the better policy to submit to the irresistible strength of the rising Selǵūḳ power than to build his hopes on the support which the Fāṭimid government had lavishly tendered, Baghdād resumed its old allegiance to the 'Abbāsids. The fact, however, that for forty Fridays the mosques of the "City of Peace" resounded with the name and style of the Egyptian caliph, and that the robe and turban and filigree throne of the rival pontiff had actually been carried off and deposited in the palace at Cairo,[1] caused the liveliest enthusiasm; the city was *en fête*, and Mustanṣir spent two million dīnārs in furbishing the "little West Palace"—originally built by 'Azīz for the Princess Royal—as a gilded cage for the 'Abbāsid caliph, whom he confidently expected to hold as his prisoner. Long afterwards the land beside the Nile near the "River" or "Iron" Gate was known as "the demesne of the tamburina" (Arḍ-et-Ṭabbāla), after the estate bestowed by Mustanṣir upon a singer who improvised some verses on this amazing triumph of the Fāṭimids and sang them to the accompaniment of her drum.

An interesting description of Cairo and other places in Egypt by the Persian traveller Nāṣir-i-Khusrau has fortunately been preserved.[1] The royal city, Cairo itself (then called el-Ḳāhira el-Mo'izzīya), was a very large town when he saw it in 1046—49; the houses, roughly estimated at 20,000, were built chiefly of bricks, so carefully joined that they looked like squared stone, to the height of five or six storeys, and separated from other houses by well-cultivated gardens and orchards, irrigated by wells and water-wheels. The rent of a moderate-sized house of four storeys was 11 *D.* a month (or about £70 a year), and the landlord of the house in which the traveller lodged refused 5 *D.* a month for the top storey.

[1] They remained there until the restoration of orthodoxy by Saladin, who sent back the turban and robe to Baghdād. The iron throne or lectern was retained, and eventually placed in the mosque of Beybars II.

[2] *Sefer Nameh: relation du voyage de Nassiri Khosrau*, ed. & tr. Ch. Schefer, 1881, pp. 110—162.

All the houses in Cairo belonged to the caliph, and the rents were collected every month. The shops, which were reckoned at 20,000, were also his property, and were let at from 2 *D.* to 10 *D.* a month, which, even taking so low an average as 5 *D.*, represents an annual income of about £650,000. The old wall of the city was no longer standing in 1046, and the second wall had not yet been begun ; but the Persian traveller was struck by the high blank walls of the houses and still more of the palace, the stones of which were so closely united that they looked like a solid block. His account of the interior is disappointingly brief, but he mentions the celebrated throne-room, with its throne of gold sculptured with hunting scenes, surrounded by a golden lattice screen, and ascended by silver steps. He was told that the palace contained 30,000 people, including 12,000 servants, and that the guard mounted every night consisted of 1000 horse and foot. The city of Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ) was separated from Cairo by a space of nearly a mile, covered with gardens, flooded by the Nile in the inundation, so that in summer it looked like a sea. This was the well-known and well-loved "Lake of the Abyssinians," (Birket el-Ḥabash), with its surrounding gardens, a favourite resort of Cairenes, of which Ibn-Sa'īd sings : "O lake of the Abyssinians, where my day was one long spell of happy peace ; so that Heaven seemed on thy bosom, and all my time a joyous feast. How lovely is the flax when it rises upon thee with its flowers or buds in knots, and its leaves unsheathed from thee like swords." Hard by was the monastery of St. John, with its beautiful gardens, laid out by Temīm the son of the caliph Mo'izz, and afterwards a favourite spot of the caliph Ḥāfiẓ; and the "Well of the Steps" shaded by a giant sycamore.[1] Miṣr was built on an elevation, to escape the water, and to the Persian traveller looked "like a mountain" from a distance, with its houses of seven to fourteen storeys, standing each on a space of 30 cubits square, and capable of holding 350 people. Some of the

[1] Abū-Ṣāliḥ, ff. 7*b*, 40*b*.

streets were covered, and lighted by lamps. There were seven mosques in Miṣr and eight in Cairo ; the number of khāns (wekālas) was reckoned at 200. A bridge of 36 boats joined Miṣr to "the Island" (Rōḍa), but there was no bridge from the island to G'īza, only a ferry.

The traveller was especially struck by the Market of Lamps at Miṣr, where he saw rarities and works of art such as he saw in no other city, and was astonished at the profusion of fruits and vegetables in the bazars. He describes the pottery made at Fusṭāṭ as so delicate that you could see your hand through it, and remarks the metallic lustre which is still seen in fragments found in the mounds which occupy the site of the city. He also saw some fine transparent green glass made there. The shopkeepers sold "at a fixed price," and if they cheated they were put on a camel and paraded through the streets, ringing a bell and confessing their fault. All the tradespeople rode donkeys, which were on hire in every street, to the number of 50,000. Only the soldiers rode horses.

Nāṣir-i-Khusrau found Egypt in a state of the utmost 1046
tranquillity and prosperity. The shops of the jewellers and money changers, he says, were left unfastened, save by a cord (perhaps a net, as in the present day) stretched in front, and the people had full confidence in the government and in the amiable caliph. He saw Mustanṣir riding his mule at the high festival of cutting the canal : a pleasant-looking young man, with shaven face, dressed very simply in a white kaftān and turban, with a parasol enriched with precious stones and pearls carried by a high officer. Three hundred Persians of Deylem followed on foot, armed with halberds and axes. Eunuchs burnt incense of ambergris and aloes on either side, and the people threw themselves on their faces and called down blessings on the caliph. The chief ḳāḍī and a crowd of doctors and officials followed, and the escort included 20,000 mounted Kitāma Berbers, 10,000 Bāṭilis, 20,000 blacks, 10,000 "Orientals" (Turks and Persians), 30,000 purchased slaves, 15,000 Bedawis of the Ḥiǵāz, 30,000 black and white slave attendants and chamber-

lains (ustād), 10,000 palace servants (serāyī), and 30,000 negro swordsmen. Besides these (which constituted the whole army, and probably were only represented by select divisions), the caliph's suite included various princes visiting the court, from Maghrib, Yemen, Rūm, Slavonia, Georgia, Nubia, Abyssinia, and even Tatars from Turkestan and the sons of the king of Delhi. Poets and men of letters, in the caliph's pay, attended ; and all Cairo and Miṣr, Christians included, turned out to see the cutting of the dam by the caliph, beside the pavilion es-Sukkara, built by his ancestor 'Azīz near the mouth; and then to go sailing on the Nile. The first boat-load was of deaf and dumb people, whose presence made an auspicious opening of the festivities. Though his descriptions relate chiefly to the capital, the Persian traveller records enough about the country, from Tinnīs to Aswān, to confirm the impression that in agriculture and in general appearance it differed little from the Egypt of to-day.

The administration of el-Yāzūrī (1050—58), a man sprung of a humble sailor's family at Yāzūr near Jaffa, who rose to be ḳāḍī of Egypt and then wezīr, was characterized by an honest desire to improve the condition of the cultivators and at the same time increase the declining revenue.[1] A general return taken in his wezīrate set forth the total receipts and expenditure in all the districts of the kingdom, and the revenue from the land-tax appeared to be only one million dīnārs for Egypt and the like for Syria (Maḳr. i. 99, 100). Yāzūrī
1050 attempted economic reforms, both wise and foolish. His first step was to sell the government corn reserves (worth 100,000 *D.* annually) at the lowest current price, instead of waiting as before for a dear market. He seems to have deprecated government speculation in the necessaries of life. The result was not only a heavy loss to the treasury, but when a low Nile produced a famine

[1] Suyūṭī says he was allowed for a month to add his own name to that of the caliph on the coinage, but there is no numismatic confirmation of this.

soon after, there was no reserve of corn to fall back upon. As usual plague followed hard upon famine, and a thousand people are said to have died daily. In this distress the government arranged with the emperor of Constantinople for a supply of 2,000,000 bushels of grain; but the death of Constantine Monomachus in 1055, and the conditions imposed by Theodora, including an offensive and defensive alliance between the two empires, led to the withholding of the needed supply and to hostilities in northern Syria. The Byzantines had discovered, like Besāsīrī, that the Selǵūḳs were more worth conciliating than the Egyptians, and the name of the 'Abbāsid caliph, at the request of the Selǵūḳ Sulṭān Ṭughril Beg, was now prayed for in the mosque at Constantinople. In retaliation Mustanṣir laid hands upon the treasure accumulated in the newly restored Church of the Resurrection at Jerusalem.

Warned by failure, Yāzūrī took the opportunity of a good Nile to introduce a different system in relation to the fellāḥīn. He put a stop to the mischievous practice of allowing merchants and usurers to buy the standing crops at a low price, ruinous to the cultivators, and, like a second Joseph, he laid up immense stores of corn at Fusṭāṭ as a reserve against famine.[1] He was not himself above the suspicion of illegal aggrandisement, unfortunately, and his extortions from the Copts were especially unjust. He threw the patriarch Christodulus into prison on a false suspicion of having influenced the Christian king of Nubia to withhold the yearly tribute. Many fines were exacted from the Copts on slight pretexts, and

[1] Ibn-Mammātī, who died in 1209, gives the following statistics for the taxation of the different classes of land. Wheat and barley land paid 3 ardebbs (15 bushels) per acre, up to 1172, and afterwards $2\frac{1}{2}$; broad beans, 3 to $4\frac{1}{2}$ ard. per acre; peas, chickpeas, and lentils, $2\frac{1}{2}$; flax varied, the highest amount was 3 dīnārs per acre; clover, 1 *D.*; lupin, $1\frac{1}{4}$ *D.*; melons and white beans, 3 *D.*; cotton, 1 *D.*; sugar cane, of the first growth, 5 *D.*, later growth, $2\frac{1}{4}$ *D.*; colocasia, 5 *D.*; bādinǧān (melongena), 3 *D.*; indigo, 3 *D.*; vines and fruit trees in the fourth year, 3 *D.* There is no mention of rice, or maize, or dhura in the list; but it does not profess to be complete. In the present day the value of the winter crops averages £7 an acre.

at Dimrū these extortions were coupled with a general closing of the churches, some of which were destroyed. An inscription in the name of the Trinity over the patriarch's door was erased : "You cannot efface it from my heart," was his retort. Soon after, all the churches of Egypt were ordered to be closed, the patriarch and bishops were imprisoned, and a fine of 70,000 dīnārs demanded. Yāzūrī was poisoned in 1058, being suspected of intrigues with Baghdād. His inordinate wealth doubtless led to his downfall. He was a man of fine taste, a great lover of pictures, and a munificent patron of learned men.

1058 After Yāzūrī, wezīrs came and went like ministers of a modern republic. There were forty changes in nine years ; but by this time it had been discovered that it was not absolutely necessary to kill a deposed wezīr, and it became usual to confer upon him some lower office, from which he often rose to the top rank again. Some of these wezīrs held office three or four times, and a change of ministry did not necessarily involve a massacre. These frequent changes were due to the incompetence of the caliph and the factious composition of the court and army. Mustanṣir was in the hands of all sorts of nobodies, who gave him conflicting counsels, distracted his experienced officials, and left him more perplexed than ever. Eight hundred letters a day testified to the grievances of his subjects and the weak vacillation of their sovereign, open to every influence and impression, however base and interested. A curious story is related of his irritability. He was one day superintending a murderous bastinading of a wezīr, when the black dowager remonstrated, and told her son that killing a man was not the best way to make him disgorge his wealth, but if he would hand over the wezīr to her, she knew how to squeeze him. The caliph thereupon rose in great wrath, and marched off towards the mosque of 'Amr. His chamberlains pursued, wondering what this new proceeding meant. Mustanṣir told them that as everybody thwarted him and kept him in leading strings he was resolved to throw up the government and retire to the mosque and devote

the rest of his life to religion. The thought, however, of the pillage that would at once destroy his beautiful palace brought him back to reason, and the chamberlains persuaded him to return. His religious yearnings were not deep-seated, if the story be true that in his palaces at Heliopolis he erected a pavilion in imitation of the Ka'ba of Mekka, and laid out a pond full of wine to represent the sacred well of Zemzem, and there sat and drank to the sounds of stringed music and singers, saying, "This is pleasanter than staring at a black stone, listening to the drone of the mu'edhdhin, and drinking bad water!" In such pleasures he consoled himself for the lack of all power and dignity. That he was not wanting in kindly feeling, however, is shown by the following story. Every year the usual pension-list, amounting to between 100,000 *D.* and 200,000 *D.*, was laid before him for his revision. On one occasion he did not strike out a single pensioner's name, but with his own hand endorsed the list with this comment: "Poverty is a sore diet, and want bows the neck. Our anxiety for their welfare is shown in a generous distribution of help; let them therefore have their shares liberally. What ye possess will be spent; what is given to God lasts for ever."

Meanwhile the jealousy between the Turkish troops and the Sūdānī battalions, favoured by their countrywoman, the caliph's mother, grew to alarming proportions. A broil led to a general engagement, and the Turks, 1062
supported by the Kitāma and other Berbers, drove the blacks, to the number of 50,000, out of Cairo into Upper Egypt, whence for several years they repeatedly advanced by land and water to attack their enemy. The Turks, however, had the upper hand in the capital, in spite of the dowager's intrigues, and they used their power in despoiling the palace and emptying the treasury, terrifying the changing wezīrs, and treating the caliph with contempt. Instead of 28,000 *D.* they now drew 400,000 *D.* a month from the treasury in pay and allowances. Their leader, Nāṣir-ed-dawla b. Ḥamdān, commander-in-chief of the Fāṭimid army, carried matters with so high a hand that at last he alienated his own colleagues and officers,

who induced the helpless caliph to dismiss him from his
1069 post. The deposed general made them all pay dearly for their revolt. Though obliged to fly from his enemies in Cairo, he had Alexandria in his power, and quickly obtained the support of some Arab tribes and of the Lewāta Berbers. The caliph had shown some spirit during this disturbance, and had even appeared in mail at the head of such troops as remained loyal, by whose aid he had defeated Nāṣir-ed-dawla; but his authority was now limited to his capital. The black regiments held all Upper Egypt, and 40,000 horsemen of the Lewāta overran the delta, and abandoned the dikes and canals to destruction, with the open intention of starving the inhabitants. Cairo and Fusṭāṭ were cut off from supplies, and a terrible famine which had begun with the low Nile of 1065, and lasted unbroken for seven years (1066-72), brought the country to the utmost pitch of misery. The fellāḥīn, in terror of the armed bands that infested the land, dared not carry on their work, and the usual effects of a bad Nile were thus prolonged to successive years. In the capital, cut off from all communication with the provinces, the famine was felt in the greatest severity. A cake of bread was sold for 15 *D.*, though an ardebb (five bushels) of corn could be bought for 100 *D.*, a house was exchanged for 20 lbs. of flour, an egg went for a dīnār. Horses and asses were eaten, a dog fetched 5 *D.*, a cat 3 *D*, till soon there was not an animal to be seen. The caliph's own stable, which once held 10,000 horses and mules, was reduced to three nags, and when he rode abroad his escort, on foot, fainted with hunger. At last, people began to eat each other. Passengers were caught in the streets by hooks let down from the windows, drawn up, killed, and cooked. Human flesh was sold in public. Horrible tales are recorded of the atrocities of that reign of terror, and though examples were made of some of the criminals, the feeble government could make no head against the maddened populace. Plague came to finish what famine had begun, and whole houses were emptied of every living soul in twenty-four hours.

The rich suffered almost as much as the poor. Gay courtiers sought employment as grooms and sweepers. A man went to a bath, and the manager asked him whether he would prefer to be served by 'Izz-ed-dawla, or Fakhr-ed-dawla, or Sa'd-ed-dawla—three of the great emirs of the day, who now undertook his shampooing. Ladies of rank tried vainly to sell their jewels for bread, and threw away their useless pearls and emeralds in the street. One lady, who contrived with great difficulty to secure a handful of flour in exchange for a necklace worth 1000 *D.*, made a little cake and brandished it before the crowd, crying, "O people of Cairo, pray for our lord the caliph, whose reign brings us such blessing and prosperity! Thanks to him, this cake cost me 1000 dināRs." Mustanṣir was roused for a moment from the lethargy in which he was sunk, and compelled the merchants, who had "cornered" the wheat stores, to disgorge and sell to the people at a moderate price; but he could do little. His own vast means were exhausted. Of all the caliphs none had approached him in wealth. Two extremely aged princesses, daughters of his ancestor Mo'izz, had died in 1050 (see p. 111), and left him the treasures for which four caliphs had successively sighed. Their wealth amounted to millions. The inventory of Mustanṣir's treasures recorded by Maḳrīzī reads like a fable in "the Thousand and One Nights;"[1] yet all these exquisite

[1] Some of the items are interesting as evidence of the art and luxury of the times. Omitting precious stones (such as a box containing 7 *medd*, or 10 lb., of emeralds, worth 300,000 *D.*; 7 *weyba*, or 250 lb., of fine pearls, ruby rings, etc.), the inventory included thousands of large crystal vases, some engraved with the name of 'Azīz; gold plates inlaid and enamelled in colours, cups of bezoar engraved with the name of Hārūn er-Rashīd; inkstands of gold, silver, ebony, ivory, aloes and other woods, carved, inlaid, and jewelled; great porcelain jars full of camphor of Keysūr, cups of amber, phials of musk; large wash-tubs on three legs in form of animals, worth 1000 *D.* apiece; white China eggs (for warming the hands, perhaps); the gold mattress on which the caliph Ma'mūn had slept on an interesting occasion; enamelled plates presented by the Roman emperor to 'Azīz; steel mirrors; glass and pottery innumerable; parasols with gold and silver sticks; chased and inlaid silver vessels of all shapes; chess and draught boards of silk embroidered

and priceless works of art had been dissipated among the barbarous Turks during the tyranny of Nāṣir-ed-dawla. They had forced the caliph to sell everything, and then bought the treasures at an absurd forced price. Jewellery which had cost 600,000 *D.* was sold for 20,000 ; emeralds valued at 300,000 went to a Turkish general for 500 ; often there was not even the pretence of a sale, but a scene of open looting. One of the valuers stated that at the lowest reckoning the treasures sold in a single fortnight of December, 1067, were worth 30,000,000 *D.* The costly collections of the "Treasury of the Flags" were destroyed by a torch dropped by a follower of one

in gold, with pawns of gold, silver, ivory, and ebony; 4000 gold vases for narcissus flowers, and 2000 for violets ; artificial fruits and other toys made of amber and camphor ; a jewelled turban valued at 130,000 *D.*, the stones of which weighed 17 lbs. ; perfumes in vast masses ; a gold peacock with ruby eyes and enamelled feathers ; a gold cock, whose comb and eyes were made of rubies ; a gazelle covered with pearls ; a table of sardonyx ; a gold palm tree with dates of precious stones. The thirty-eight state barges or dahabīyas for Nile processions included one made for the caliph by order of the wezīr G'arǧarāi at a cost of 13,000 *D.*, and the "silver barge" of the black dowager, presented to her by her former owner, Abū-Sa'īd. The silks and embroideries, velvets, and other stuffs, included red damask brocaded with gold in the design of parks where elephants roamed ; silks embroidered with the history of the dynasties of the east, and portraits of famous men, with their dates and deeds ; the carpet made for Mo'izz at Tustar, depicting a map of the world, its mountains, rivers, cities, where Mekka and Medīna were clearly recognized ; stuffs of Dābīk, Kalmūn, Behnesa, Damascus, China, innumerable and priceless ; immense collections of jewelled daggers, swords, Khalanǧ javelins, Khaṭṭ lances, and arms of all sorts, including the sword of 'Amr b. Ma'dī Kerib, of Mo'izz, of Ḳāïm, the cuirass of Ḥoseyn, the shield of Ḥamza, and even the famous "Dhū-l-Fiḳār," the Excalibur of the Prophet Moḥammad himself. The tents of gold brocade and silk were sometimes worked with pictures of men and animals and birds, and supported by gilt poles ; one specially large tent, made for Yāzūrī at a cost of 30,000 *D.*, had a pole 65 cubits high, and a circumference of 500 cubits, and required 100 camels to transport it with its furniture. It was covered with designs, and took 50 artists nine years to make. The caliph Ẓāhir's tent was of pure gold thread, supported on six silver pillars ; another made at Aleppo, and costing 30,000 *D.*, was supported by the tallest mast of a Venetian galley ; another was called "the slayer," because it invariably killed one or two men in pitching. —Maḳrīzī.

of the Turkish goths—collections which had been formed at a cost of 70,000 or 80,000 *D.* a year for a century past.

But the most irreparable loss of that reign of brigandage was the dispersion of the caliphs' library of over 100,000 books on every branch of learning and belles-lettres known to the Arabs. They were stored in locked presses round the room, with labels to indicate the contents of each press. The library staff seems to have consisted of only a librarian, two copyists, and two servants. Among the manuscripts were 2400 illuminated Ḳorāns, books in the handwriting of Ibn-Muḳla and other famous calligraphers, thirty copies of the great Arabic dictionary called the *'Ayn*, twenty copies of Ṭabarī's history, including the author's autograph copy, a hundred copies of Ibn-Dureyd's *G'amhara*, and innumerable works of incomparable value. All these were sold or carried off by 1068
the Turks on pretext of arrears of pay, save only the private library of the ḥarīm. Rare manuscripts, which scholars would give anything to possess now, went to light the fires; their bindings mended the shoes of the Turkish officers' slaves. Many torn volumes were thrown aside and got buried under the sand, and the "hills of the books" were long known near Abyār. The most fortunate were those that were exported to other countries. It says much for the literary zeal of the Fāṭimids that, in spite of this lamentable destruction, they set about collecting books with so much energy that Saladin found at least 120,000 volumes in their library a century later.

These forced sales and robberies of his treasures had reduced the unhappy caliph Mustanṣir to the depths of misery. Nāṣir-ed-dawla held the caliph and the remnant of the garrison besieged in Cairo and Fusṭāṭ, and reduced to such straits by famine and fear that the soldiers were looting the houses, the people flying by night, and the caliph's own household dying or fled. In 1070 his daughters and their mother took refuge, even in Baghdād, to escape starvation. There was nothing for it but to make terms with the rebels, but even then the Turks fell out among themselves, and Nāṣir-ed-dawla burnt and sacked part of Fusṭāṭ, and after defeating Mustanṣir's

little army, who made a good fight, entered Cairo. The rebel's messenger found the caliph in his empty palace, seated on a common mat, attended by three slaves. A daughter of the celebrated grammarian Ibn-Bābshād charitably sent him two loaves a day. To such a pass had the famine and the Turkish despoilers reduced the Commander of the Faithful.

At last a state of things which could not be worse began
1073 to mend. A plentiful harvest in 1073 put an end to the famine that had wasted Egypt for seven years. In the same year Nāṣir-ed-dawla was assassinated by some jealous rivals, and his body sent in pieces to various cities of the empire. The change of keepers, from one Turk to another, did little to improve the government of the

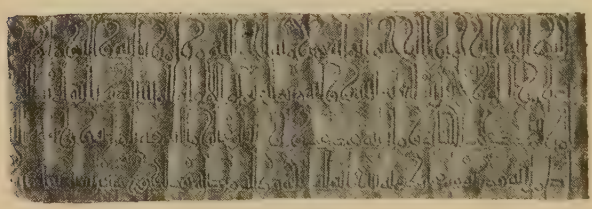


Fig. 31.—Inscription of Bedr el-G'emālī in mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, 1077.

country, but when the caliph, at his wits' end, sent for the governor of 'Akka (Acre) to take command, a complete change came over the face of affairs. Bedr el-G'emālī, an Armenian slave of the emīr G'emāl-ed-din b. 'Ammār, had risen to high office in the Syrian wars, had twice been governor of Damascus, and had successfully fought the Turks till he had become the most powerful general in Syria. He accepted Mustanṣir's appeal, only on condition that he brought with him his hardy Syrian troops—"the Easterns" as they were called, in distinction from the Turkish, Berber, and Sūdānī regiments of Egypt. Despising the risks of a sea-voyage in winter, when scarcely any one dared to put to sea off that coast, he sailed from

'Akka in December, 1073, reached Tinnīs with a favouring 1073
wind in four days, and landed at Damietta. On his approach the caliph summoned up courage to arrest the Turkish commander Īldeguz. Bedr then entered Cairo at the beginning of February. The Turks received him 1074
with cordiality, not knowing that he had been sent for. Each Turkish general was allotted as a victim to one or other of the Syrian officers, and next morning each of these appeared before Bedr, as was arranged, with a Turk's head in his hands. The detestable despotism was abolished in a night.

The caliph, overjoyed at his release from his oppressors, loaded his deliverer with honours, named him Amīr el-G'uyūsh or commander-in-chief, and presently added all the civil offices of state. He was, in fact, endowed with the full supreme government, and became the *alter ego* of the caliph. Bedr established himself in the Barǵawān street, and set about restoring order, executing all possible rivals, and recovering for his master as much as could be discovered of the palace property. When this was done he began the reduction of the provinces; slaughtered or subdued the Lewāta Berbers in the delta, 1074
and took Alexandria by storm; marched into Upper Egypt, where the blacks and the Arab tribes had long 1076
done as they pleased, and restored the caliph's authority as far as Aswān. The captives were so numerous that a woman could be bought for a dīnār, and a horse for half as much again. After this ruthless and sanguinary beginning, all was quiet. The fellāḥīn under his strong, just, and benevolent rule, soon began to enjoy a security and prosperity unknown for many years. In 1090 a return of taxation ordered by Bedr el-G'emālī showed that the revenue of Egypt and Syria had risen from the usual 2,000,000 or at most 2,800,000, to 3,100,000 *D.*[1] Indeed the remaining twenty years of Mustanṣir's reign saw nothing but peace and plenty in Egypt, though in Syria there was continual war, which threatened at one

[1] This, if it refers to the land tax of Egypt *alone*, is probably the same return as that cited by Abū-Ṣāliḥ (ff. 8*a*-9*a*) as having been made

time to break over the frontier. For the first time since the reign of 'Azīz, Cairo became the home of architects. A new brick wall was built round the palace-city ; the three
1087 great stone gates, the Bāb-en-Naṣr, Bāb-el-Futūḥ (1087), and Bāb Zawīla or Zuweyla (1091) were removed and rebuilt within the new wall, and assumed the imposing appearance they wear to this day. The three gates are stated to have been the work of three brothers, architects, from Edessa, each of whom built a gate.[1] As has been seen, Yāzūrī and others employed artists from Mesopotamia and 'Irāḳ, and there is nothing improbable in Bedr importing architects from Edessa, which was full of his Armenian fellow-countrymen. According to Abū-Ṣalīḥ, however, the gates and the new wall were planned by "John the Monk" (f. 51*a*) : but "planning" or designing (the Arabic word is explicit) does not include building,

"in the days of the ḳāḍi el-Ḳaḥḥāl" (i.e. Ibn-el-Ḳaḥḥāl, c. 1090), the details of which (for 1276 districts and 890 villages) are as follows :—

Northern Provinces.	Dīnārs.	Southern Provinces.	Dīnārs.
Esh-Sharḳiya . .	694,121	El-G'īzīya . .	129,641
El-Murtāḥīya . .	70,358	El-Aṭfīḥīya . .	39,449
Ed-Daḳahlīya . .	53,761	El-Būsīrīya . .	39,390
El-Abwānīya . .	4,700	El-Fayyūmīya . .	145,162
G'ezīrat-Ḳūsanīya .	159,664	El-Behnesā'iya . .	234,801
El-Gharbīya . .	430,955	El-Ushmuneyn and Ṭaḥā	127,676
Es-Semennūdīya . .	200,657	Es-Suyuṭīya [etc.]	[304,834?]
El-Menūfīyateyn . .	140,933		
Fūwa, etc. . . .	6,080	Total .	1,020,953
En-Nestarāwīya . .	14,910		
Rosetta, etc. . .	3,000	Total of North and South . .	3,060,993 *D.*
G'ezīrat-Benī-Naṣr .	62,508		
El-Buḥeyra . . .	139,313		
Ḥawf Ramsīs . .	[59,080?]		
Total .	2,040,040		

This estimate admittedly excludes the revenue from Alexandria, Damietta, and Tinnīs on the northern coast, and Ḳuft and Neḳāda (i.e. the provinces of Ḳūṣiya and Ikhmīmiya) in Upper Egypt, the revenues of which are estimated at 60,000 *D.* Abū-Ṣāliḥ adds that in the reign of el-Amir a poll-tax of $1\frac{1}{2}$ *D.* was imposed, which was raised to 2 *D.* by Ruḍwān, a wezīr of el-Ḥāfiẓ, no'ed for his oppression of Christians.

[1] Maḳr., i. 381.

and it is possible that the monk and the Edessa architects co-operated. The Edessa origin explains, as no Coptic source alone could do, the Byzantine appearance of these massive gateways. Edessa was long an outpost of the Roman empire against the caliphs, and its architects must have been well acquainted with the military

Fig. 32.—Gate of Zawīla, Cairo, 1091.

architecture of Byzantium. Nor could Bedr el-G'emālī himself, after his long wars in Syria, have been ignorant of the buildings of the mediæval Romans.[1]

[1] See M. van Berchem, *Notes d'archéologie arabe*, in *Journ. Asiat.*, 1891.

During these twenty years the great Armenian who had rescued Mustanṣir from the Turks kept his weak and pleasure-loving sovereign completely under his control. When Bedr el-G'emālī died in the spring of 1094 at the age of eighty, his son Abū-l-Ḳāsim Shāhānshāh succeeded to his power with the title of El-Afḍal. The caliph, who had seen such terrible vicissitudes of fortune, and deserved all his troubles, did not long survive his
1094 trusty minister. Mustanṣir died at the end[1] of December, in his sixty-eighth year and the sixty-first of his inglorious reign.

Before relating the causes which led to the fall of the Fāṭimid caliphate, some account may be given of the machinery of their administration. Arabic historians are usually wanting in this class of information, which they take for granted as familiar to their readers; and it is difficult to obtain any precise statement about the details of government under the early Arab and Turkish governors. For the Fāṭimid period, however, we possess a systematic outline of the military and administrative system, which, so far as it goes, is useful.[2]

The army was divided into three principal ranks: 1. Emīrs, who were subdivided into (*a*) gold-chain emīrs, the highest class; (*b*) sword-bearers, who escorted the caliph on horseback; (*c*) ordinary officers. 2. The officers of the guard, consisting of (*a*) the masters (ustāds) or eunuchs, who were held in high honour and given important posts; (*b*) the "young guard," a body of about 500 picked youths of family; and (*c*) the troops of the caliph's barracks, to the number of about 5000. 3. The regiments, each named after some caliph or wezīr or

[1] 18th of Dhū-l-Ḥiġġa, A.H. 487, or 29th Dec., 1094. A coin of Alexandria bearing the date 488 must have been issued, probably on the 1st of January, before the news of the caliph's death was known there.

[2] El-Ḳalḳashandī, translated by Wüstenfeld, *Die Geographie und Verwaltung von Aegypten* (1879), pp. 171-222. Ḳalḳashandī was a contemporary of Maḳrīzī, but like the latter he had access to a large number of earlier authorities and documents of the Fāṭimid period. He also gives a long and curious account of the numerous court ceremonies and pageants.

according to its nation, as the Ḥāfiẓīya, G'uyūshīya, Rūmīya (Romans, i.e. Greeks), Ṣaḳāliba (Slavs), Sūdānīya (blacks). The number of regiments was very large, and varied at different times. The pay ranged from 2 *D.* to 20 *D.* a month.

The fleet, which was stationed at Alexandria, Damietta, Ascalon and other Syrian ports, and Aydhāb on the Red Sea, numbered over seventy-five galleys, ten transports, and ten galleasses, under a high admiral.

Fig. 33.—Gate of Victory (Bāb-en-Naṣr), Cairo, 1087.

The official ministers of the caliphate were divided into two classes, the "Men of the Sword" and the "Men of the Pen."

The men of the sword superintended the army and war office, and consisted in: 1. The wezīr (unless he were a civil man of the pen). 2. The "lord of the door," or high chamberlain, who stood next to the wezīr, and was sometimes called the lesser wezīr, and

enjoyed the privilege of presenting ambassadors. 3. The field marshal (isfehsālār) or commander-in-chief, who commanded the whole of the forces, and looked to the protection of the palace. 4. The umbrella-bearer, a great emīr, who carried the parasol of state over the caliph. 5. The sword-bearer. 6. The lance-bearer. 7. The equerries. 8. The commandant of Cairo. 9. The commandant of Miṣr (Fusṭāṭ). To the men of the sword belonged also the household attendants, stewards, chamberlains, ink-bearer, and various court functionaries.

The men of the pen included (besides the wezīr, unless he belonged to the military order): 1. The chief ḳāḍī, endowed with very great powers, the head of the law, director of the mint, who held his court in the mosque of 'Amr on Tuesdays and Saturdays, seated on a raised divan, with his inkstand before him, the witnesses ranged on either hand in the order of their causes, four lawyers seated in front, and five ushers to keep order. 2. The chief preacher, who presided in the hall of science. 3. The inspector of markets (moḥtesib), who held unrestricted control over the bazars and streets, assisted by two deputies for Cairo and Miṣr, supervised weights and measures, prices, and trade generally, and punished cheats and defaulters. 4. The treasurer, who presided over the Beyt-el-Māl or state treasury, and had besides various duties, such as manumitting and marrying slaves, making contracts for building ships, etc. 5. The deputy chamberlain, who joined the "lord of the door" in introducing an ambassador to the caliph, each holding one of his hands, and never letting him loose. 6. The reader, who recited the Ḳorān to the caliph, in season and out of season.

A lower division of the men of the pen comprised the whole body of civil servants, attached to the following departments: 1. The wezīrate (unless the wezīr were a man of the sword). 2. The chancery, subdivided into the secretariate and the two branches of the record office or registry of the caliph's acts, one to take down and draft his instructions, the other to write them out in

fair copy. 3. The army pay office, which also attended to the proper mounting and furnishing of the troops. 4. The exchequer, subdivided into fourteen departments, dealing with every branch of the finances, accounts, allowances, presents, pensions, tribute, crown inheritance, royal factories, with special bureaux for Upper Egypt, Alexandria, etc. The physicians, of whom the caliph always kept four or five, and the poets, whose name was legion, also formed separate classes of the men of the pen attached to the court.

Outside these court functionaries were the local officials who governed the three divisions of the empire, Egypt, Syria, and the borders of Asia Minor. Egypt was administered by the four governors of Ḳūṣ, or Upper Egypt, Sharḳiya (Bilbeys, Ḳalyūb, Ushmūm), Gharbīya (Maḥalla, Menūf, and Abyār), and Alexandria (including all Buḥeyra). The governor of Upper Egypt ranked almost next to the wezīr, and had several deputy governors under him in the various provinces. Under these were the district officials and heads of towns and villages. The management of all local affairs was entrusted to the local authorities, including the maintenance by troops and corvée labour of the irrigation canals and dams belonging specifically to the district or village; but the larger dikes, which could not be assigned to one local authority, were managed by inspectors appointed annually from Cairo, with a large staff of skilled assistants. The system reads well on paper, but in practice there was doubtless much corruption and peculation. The general testimony of the Arabic historians, however, points to a mild and even benevolent treatment of the fellāḥīn as the prevailing policy of the Fāṭimid government.

CHAPTER VI

THE ATTACK FROM THE EAST

969-1171

Authorities.—As preceding; also Osāma, Bahā-ed-dīn, William of Tyre.

Monuments, Inscriptions, Coins, etc.—See preceding chapter.

Syria had been a dependency of Egypt, with brief intermission, since the days of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, but under the Fāṭimids the connection had been growing more and more strained. The orthodox inhabitants, especially in Damascus, strenuously repudiated the Shī'a heresy, and could be induced only by force to recognize the caliphs of Egypt. The Fāṭimid conquest by G'a'far b. Fellāḥ in 969 was immediately followed by revolt, and the intervention of the Ḳarmāṭīs practically severed Syria from Egypt for the next eight years. Even after the caliph 'Azīz in person had led a successful campaign in 977, and quashed the insurrection under Aftegīn, Damascus was still but nominally under the control of Egypt, and it
988 was not till 988 that the Syrian capital was thoroughly subdued for the time. The northernmost city of the Fāṭimid empire was then Tripolis.[1] Antioch still belonged to the eastern Roman empire; and Aleppo was in the possession of the last descendants of the

[1] The earliest Fāṭimid coinage at Tripolis dates from 974-5; the latest is 1101-2. But the Syrian coinage of the Fāṭimids was too intermittent (or too few examples have come down) for it to be taken as a chronological guide. The most regular mints were Filesṭīn (i.e. Ramla), Tyre, and Tripolis. Under el-Āmir, when Syria had nearly all fallen to the Crusaders, 'Asḳalān (Ascalon) became the Syrian mint of the Fāṭimids, 1109—17.

Ḥamdānids, ever sworn foes to Egypt, and protected by the Romans as a necessary buttress to Antioch, which the emperor Nicephorus had recently recovered from the Arabs (969). When Mangūtegīn, the Fāṭimid general, besieged Aleppo for thirteen months in 993-4, after defeating an army of 50,000 men despatched to its relief 994
by the Roman governor of Antioch, the emperor Basil II himself, abandoning a campaign against the Bulgarians, came to its support. At his approach the Egyptians retired on Damascus, and the emperor sacked Ḥimṣ and Sheyzar and made an unsuccessful attack on Tripolis. A parade of 250 Roman prisoners at Cairo was the only triumph enjoyed on this occasion by the caliph ʿAzīz.

Under Ḥākim, after two victories over the Romans, by sea off Tyre and by land near Apamea, peace was concluded for ten years with the emperor: but Syria 998
remained in a chronic state of revolt. Tyre had to be reduced, and the G'arrāḥ family at Ramla set up a rival caliph in the sherīf of Mekka, with the title of er-Rashīd; defeated the Fāṭimid army near Dārūm; and were with difficulty brought to some degree of submission by judicious bribes and diplomacy. Nominally, the Egyptian caliph acquired some prestige by the acknowledgment of his sovereignty in the mosques of the Euphrates valley, from Mōṣil to Kūfa, by the Arab (ʿOḳeylid) ruler Ḳirwāsh; but this temporary adhesion 1011
was summarily severed by the Buweyhid sultan of ʿIrāḳ. Nor was the brief accession of Aleppo to the Fāṭimid party in 1011, when the Ḥamdānids were expelled by their freedman, Ibn-Lu'lu, of much value. Such homage was in reality in the nature of an appeal for help against some pressing danger.

On the accession of Ẓāhir, the authority of the 1021
Egyptian government was scarcely felt in Syria. The capable commander of their army, Anūshtegīn ed-Dizbirī, the governor of Caesarea, had to face an insurrection under Ḥassān b. Daghfal in Palestine, another under Sinān around Damascus, and the hostility of Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās, who took Aleppo in 1025 from the Princess

Royal's Indian slave Fīrūz, by whom the city had been held for the last three years. Anūshtegīn at last defeated
1029 and killed Ṣāliḥ at the battle of Uḳḥuwāna near Tiberias, drove Hassān into exile among the Romans, and restored most of Syria, except the north, to the Egyptian caliph. Another defeat of the Mirdāsid Arabs
1038 on the Orontes, near Sheyzar, gave Aleppo [1] and the rest of northern Syria, except the Roman territory, to his master the child caliph Mustanṣir, and Anūshtegīn's firm rule not only preserved peace and order in Damascus, but induced the governor of Ḥarrān, by the Euphrates, to proclaim the caliphate of Egypt in the mosques of Ḥarrān, Sarūǵ, and Raḳḳa. Meanwhile a ten years' peace had been concluded with the emperor Michael IV, who was allowed to complete the restoration of the ruined Church of the Resurrection in 1048.

1043 The government of Anūshtegīn marks high-water in the Fāṭimid relations with Syria. From 1043 their power rapidly declined. The new governor, Naṣir-ed-dawla b. Ḥamdān, afterwards notorious in Egypt, found himself powerless at Damascus; Palestine was once more in revolt under Ḥassān; and two attempts to recover Aleppo from the Mirdāsids, in 1048 and 1049, proved fruitless, though 30,000 Egyptian troops were sent in the second year. It is true the Mirdāsid Mo'izz-ed-dawla afterwards submitted, sent the caliph 40,000 *D.*, and presently made his home at Cairo; [2] but his nephew
1060 carried on the struggle in 1060, after which Aleppo was never a Fāṭimid city.

A greater power, however, was rapidly advancing from the east, which merged all minor contests in a struggle for bare existence. The Selǵūḳ Turkmāns had subdued Persia, and in 1055 their leader, Ṭughril Beg, was recognized at Baghdād in the Friday prayers as the caliph's lieutenant, or in other words master. The Selǵūḳs were sternly orthodox and zealous for the faith:

[1] There is a coin of Aleppo, A.H. 429 (1037-8), with the name of Mustanṣir, in the Bibliothèque nationale at Paris.

[2] Coins of Aleppo from 1050 to 1055 bear the name of the caliph Mustanṣir.

to extirpate the Egyptian heresy was their sacred duty. To reduce Syria, as a first step, was no very difficult task, in its divided and rebellious state. The Selǵūḳ general Atsīz conquered Palestine and entered Jerusalem in 1071, and after laying siege to Damascus annually for five years and destroying the crops around, at last, with the connivance of one of its inveterate factions, acquired the city in 1076. Damascus never again belonged to the Fāṭimids.[1] The only capable leader in Egypt, Bedr el-G'emālī, was fully occupied in recovering the Nile valley for his indolent master, and had no force to spare for Syria. He bribed Atsīz to abstain from crossing the frontier—he had advanced as far as Gaza and el-'Arīsh, the border town—and meanwhile prepared ships to convey the Fāṭimid court to Alexandria if the worst should happen. Had Atsīz been adequately supported from the east, the fears of the great wezīr might have been realized, and the Selǵūḳs might have extinguished the Shī'a dynasty a hundred years before its actual fall. As it was, as soon as Egypt was pacified, the troops were free to be employed in Syria, and Damascus was at once besieged. The Egyptians had to retire on the approach of Tutūsh (the brother of Melik Shāh, the greatest of the Selǵūḳ sultans), who was appointed viceroy in Syria and entered Damascus in 1079. Still undaunted, Bedr himself, despite his seventy years, led a fresh campaign against the invaders in 1085, but his siege of Damascus was equally fruitless. He lived, however, to see some minor successes on the coast, where the Fāṭimid armies sent by his order took Tyre, which had been many years in revolt, and re-conquered 'Akka and G'ubeyl.

1071 1076 1078 1085 1089

The deaths of Bedr el-G'emālī and the caliph Mustanṣir made little difference in the situation. Bedr was succeeded in the wezīrate by his son el-Afḍal Shāhānshāh, who hastily set the youngest of the seven sons of the late caliph on the throne with the title of el-Musta'lī (1094—1101.)[2]

[1] The latest Fāṭimid coin of Damascus bears the date 1066-7.

[2] Abū-l-Ḳāsim Aḥmad el-Musta'lī-bi-llāh, "the exalted of God," struck coins at Miṣr (1095—1100-1), Alexandria, 'Akka, Tyre, and Tripolis (1101).

Fig. 34.—Dīnār of el-Musta'lī, Tripolis, 1101.

He thought a youth of eighteen more amenable to management than a mature man. The eldest son Nizār, who was close upon fifty, naturally resented this supersession, and set himself up at Alexandria, with the governor's approval, as the Imām el-Muṣṭafa[1]; and although he was forced to surrender a year later and vanished in his brother's prisons, he was long revered as the true Imām and head of the Shī'a by the Ismā'ilians, especially by the "Assassins" of Persia. On Musta'lī's death at the close of 1101 his son el-Āmir[2] (1101-1131), a child of five, was duly enthroned by el-Afḍal, who had a little seat made on the pommel of his own saddle and rode through Cairo with the baby caliph seated in front. The wezīr's power was now absolute, and for twenty years he governed Egypt as he pleased, as his father had done before him. Indeed from 1074 to 1121 these two great Armenians were, in all but name, kings of Egypt, and to their mild just rule, as much as to their energy and firm control, the country owed half a century of internal quiet and prosperity.

[1] El-Imām el-Muṣṭafā-li-dīni-llāh. Coins were issued in his name by the Assassins of Alamūt, who pretended to be his descendants; one is in the Hermitage at St. Petersburg, with the mint Kursī zarīn, "the Golden Throne," and date 4[9]5 A.H. A reputed son of Nizār is said to have struck coins as caliph in the Yemen with the title Imām Moḥammad b. Nizār. He was crucified at Cairo with the ex-wezīr Ma'mūn and his five brothers in 1128. Another son, el-Ḥasan, raised an army in Maghrib (Barḳa, perhaps), and was defeated and killed by Ḥāfiẓ's troops.

[2] Abū-'Alī el-Manṣūr el-Āmir-bi-aḥkāmi-llāh, "the ruler by the decrees of God." His coins were issued at Miṣr (1101—30), el-Mo'izzīya el-Ḳāhira (Cairo, 1114—30), Alexandria (1101—30), Ḳūṣ (1123-4), Ascalon (1109—16), and Tyre (1102—23). The epithet el-Mo'izzīya ("of Mo'izz") applied to Cairo is also used by Nāṣir-i-Khusrau in 1046.

The one engrossing topic of Afḍal's rule was the danger from the east. Not from the Selǵūḳs, for on the deaths of Melik Shāh (1092) and Tutūsh (1095) their empire broke into fragments, and the war of succession that paralyzed their influence in Persia was echoed by a lesser rivalry between the sons of Tutūsh, one of whom (Duḳāḳ) held Damascus, whilst the other (Ruḍwān) ruled at Aleppo and even had the Fāṭimid's name proclaimed in the mosques in the hope of winning Egyptian support against his brother. But though the Selǵūḳ power was broken in Syria, the impulse that brought them westward was still strong, and numerous bodies of hardy Turkmāns were gathered round the standards of daring chiefs, trained in the Selǵūḳ wars, and ready to embark on fresh conquests whenever a fresh leader should appear who could unite them for a common purpose. Meanwhile, in the lull between the Selǵūḳ hurricane and the gathering storm which was to break upon Egypt in the armies of Nūr-ed-dīn, a new force appeared which at first threatened to carry all before it. The temporary paralysis of the Moḥammadan dynasties in Persia and Syria, and the degenerate luxuriousness of the Fāṭimids in Egypt, offered an opportunity for invasion. In 1096 "the first Crusade began its eastward march; in 1098 the great cities of Edessa and Antioch and many fortresses were taken; in 1099 the Christians regained possession of Jerusalem itself. In the next few years the greater part of Palestine and the coast of Syria, Tortosa, 'Akka, Tripolis, and Sidon (1110) fell into the hands of the Crusaders, and the conquest of Tyre in 1124 marked the apogee of their power. It was the precise moment when a successful invasion from Europe was possible. A generation earlier, the Selǵūḳ power was inexpugnable. A generation later, a Zengī or a Nūr-ed-dīn, firmly established in the Syrian seats of the Selǵūḳs, would probably have driven the invaders into the sea. A lucky star led the preachers of the first Crusade to

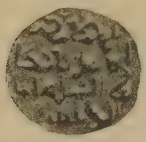


Fig. 35.—Glass Weight of el-Āmir.

1096

seize an opportunity of which they hardly realized the significance. Peter the Hermit and Urban II. chose the auspicious moment with a sagacity as unerring as if they had made a profound study of Asiatic politics. The Crusade penetrated like a wedge between the old wood and the new, and for a while seemed to cleave the trunk of Moḥammadan empire into splinters."[1]

When the news of the approaching Crusade reached Egypt, Afḍal welcomed it as a source of strength against the Selǵūḳs, and seems to have even anticipated an alliance with the Christians against the common enemy.[2] Emboldened by the prospect, he marched into Palestine
1098 Sept. and took Jerusalem after more than a month's siege from its Selǵūḳ commandants, the brothers Sukmān and Il-Ghāzī.[3] The dismissal of these valiant defenders only paved the way for the Crusaders, and when the Christian
1099 conquerors massacred 70,000 defenceless Muslims in the Holy City, Afḍal at last understood what he had to expect from his presumed allies. He received a further lesson
1099 Aug. 12 when the Franks surprised him before Ascalon, and attacking the Egyptians, in spite of a flag of truce, utterly routed them, captured their camp and baggage, and set fire to a wood in which many of the fugitives had sought refuge. Afḍal sailed hurriedly for Egypt, and Ascalon bribed the Franks to leave it alone. So long as he lived, however, the Armenian wezīr waged war against the invaders. In 1101 the Crusaders were again
1102 victorious near Jaffa, but in 1102 an Egyptian army, composed probably of some of Bedr's Syrian veterans, had their full revenge near Ascalon, defeated Baldwin and 700 knights, and compelled the king of Jerusalem to take refuge in a bed of rushes, whence he was smoked out and hunted as far as Jaffa. Ramla once more became a Saracen city. In the following year, several engagements took place. Afḍal sent his son, who beat the

[1] Lane-Poole, *Saladin*, 24, 25.

[2] He may even have proposed to become a Christian in order to cement the alliance. Cp. *Hist. Occ. des Croisades*, iv. 48, 78.

[3] They afterwards founded the Ortuḳid dynasties at Māridīn and Keyfa in Diyār-Bekr, one of which subsisted to the time of Tīmūr.

Franks at Yāzūr (when Baldwin hid in a haystack), took Ramla, and sent 300 knights as prisoners to Egypt, after killing the rest. A force of 4000 Egyptian horse was sent to Jaffa the same year, supported by a fleet; but the Crusaders were also reinforced, and no effort of the Egyptians could arrest their progress. By 1104 most of Palestine was in Christian hands, except a few coast fortresses, and of these 'Akka and G'ubeyl fell in that year. The struggle centred round Ramla for some time, and the Atābeg or Selǵūḳ governor of Damascus, Tughtegīn, made common cause with the Fāṭimids in endeavouring to save the remnant of Muslim power in the Holy Land; but after an indecisive battle between Jaffa and Ascalon in September, 1104, both sides retired exhausted. After 1109, when Tripolis at length fell after an heroic siege, 1109
Tyre became the hope of Islām and resisted all attempts of the Crusaders until 1124, when Ascalon remained the northern outpost of Egypt and almost the only relic of her former sway in Syria. In 1117 King Baldwin even 1117
invaded Egypt itself, burnt part of Faramā, and reached Tinnīs, when his fatal illness compelled him to return. The Egyptians attempted no reprisals, and henceforth, until the end of the Fāṭimid dynasty, defensive diplomacy was the prevailing policy of their wezīrs.

The wise rule of Afḍal came to an end when his 1121
sovereign, growing to manhood, chafed in leading strings, and had the great wezīr assassinated in the street at the close of 1121. The caliph visited the dying man and exhibited the deepest sympathy; and, as soon as his eyes were closed, spent forty days in plundering his house of the treasures which he had amassed during his long administration. The historian G'emāl-ed-dīn, who was acquainted with one of Afḍal's officers, declares that the wezīr's wealth comprised 6,000,000 *D.* in gold, 250 sacks (5 bushels each) of Egyptian silver dirhems, 75,000 atlas (satin) dresses, 30 camel-loads of gold caskets from 'Irāḳ, etc., together with an amber frame or lay figure on which to display the state robes. The milking of his vast herds was farmed out during his last year for 30,000 *D.* Among his institutions was that of a sort of

order of chivalry, called the "squires of the chamber," a body of youths furnished each with a horse and arms, and pledged to execute without faltering any command he gave them. Those who distinguished themselves were promoted to the rank of emīr. His successor, Ibn-el-Baṭāïḥī, styled el-Ma'mūn, though a capable financier and a tolerant minister, could not keep his place; he was
1125 imprisoned in 1125 and afterwards crucified.[1] The caliph now tried the experiment of being his own wezir, aided only by the monk Abū-Nejāḥ b. Kennā, who farmed the taxes of the Christians for 100,000 *D.* The monk became general collector of revenue, but gave himself such airs that the caliph had him flogged to death with thongs.

Fig. 36.—Dīnār of el-Āmir, Ḳūṣ, 1123 or 1125.

El-Āmir's sole rule made him universally detested. Oppression of every kind and wanton executions showed the innate cruelty of his nature, and in November, 1130,
1130 as he rode back from the Hawdaǵ—a delightful pleasure-house on the island of Rōḍa, which he had built for his favourite Bedawī mistress, and which rivalled his charming rosaries at Ḳalyūb—the caliph was set upon by ten of the Ismā'īlian Assassins, and died of his wounds the same night. Apart from his taste in roses, the most notable fact about his private life is that 5000 sheep, at 3 *D.* a head, were consumed in his kitchen every month.

El-Āmir left no son, and his cousin el-Ḥāfiẓ[2] succeeded him (1131-1149), at first as regent, pending the delivery of one of the late caliph's wives who was with child.

[1] He built the Grey Mosque (G'āmi' el-Aḳmar) in 1121-2, of which the ruins are still to be seen in the Beyn-el-Ḳasreyn.

[2] Abū-l-Meymūn 'Abdu-el-Meǵīd el-Ḥāfiẓ-li-dīni-llāh, "the guardian of the religion of God," struck coins only at Miṣr (Fusṭaṭ) and Alexandria, with dates from 1131 to 1148-9.

Unluckily for her, she bore a daughter, but before the regent became actual caliph a curious interregnum occurred. Afḍal's son Abū-'Alī, nicknamed Katīfāt, who had been made wezīr by the overwhelming voice of the army, was a staunch Imāmian or Twelve-Imāms-man, a believer in the return of the Mahdī, and a complete sceptic as to the Fāṭimid claim to the caliphate. He shut up the regent in the palace, and had the prayers recited and the coinage struck in the name of no living ruler but of the predicted Mahdī, or Imām el-Muntaẓar ("the expected").[1] This farce went on for a year, during which Katīfāt exercised plenary powers. He was not a bad ruler, nevertheless — the tradition of good government was strong in his family;—he was just and benevolent, tolerant and generous to the Copts, and a great lover of poetry. His autocracy could not last long, however, with the rightful caliph intriguing against him in the palace; and in December, 1131, whilst riding out to play polo, he was assassinated by some of the caliph's personal corps or "young guard."

Fig. 37.—Dīnār of "the expected Imām," Cairo, 1131.

El-Ḥāfiẓ now entered upon his real caliphate, at the 1131

[1] Coins bearing the name of "the Imām Moḥammad Abū-l-Ḳāsim el-Muntaẓar-li-amri-llāh, commander of the faithful," were struck at el-Mo'izziya el-Ḳāhira ("the victorious city of Mo'izz, i.e. Cairo), Miṣr (i.e. Fusṭāṭ), and Alexandria, in A.H. 525 (1131 A.D.), and another, struck at Miṣr in 526 (Nov.-Dec., 1131, for the wezīr was assassinated on Dec. 8), bears not only the titles of "the Imām el-Mahdī el-Ḳāïm-bi-amri-llāh Ḥuǵǵet-Allah-'alā-l-'Alamīn," which denote the same predicted personage as el-Muntaẓar, but also presents the name of "el-Afḍal Abū-'Alī Aḥmad" as "his lieutenant (nāïb) and khalīfa," titles which indicate an advance in the wezīr's pretensions. See Maḳrizī, Khiṭaṭ, i. 406; Lane-Poole, *Cat. of Or. Coins in the British Museum*, vol. iv., pp. ix.-xiii., 55-6; Sauvaire and Lane-Poole, *The Twelfth Imām on the Coinage of Egypt*, *J.R.A.S.*, N.S., vii. 140-151.

age of 57, with Yānis, an Armenian slave of Afḍal, as wezīr. Yānis was a strict disciplinarian, a hard, upright, intelligent, and detested man. In nine months he was found too overbearing, and the caliph had him poisoned
1132 by the court doctor. After this, perhaps in order to avoid arousing jealousy among the troops, or to escape the tyranny of a too powerful minister, Ḥāfiz tried for a time to do without any wezīr, and proved himself no mean administrator, till the quarrels of his sons over the appointment to the heirship brought about civil war between the rival battalions of the Reyḥānīya and the G'uyūshīya black soldiery, to whom the caliph was forced to sacrifice his elder son. The victorious G'uyūshīya mustered to the number of 10,000 in the Beyn-el-Ḳasreyn square, and demanded the head of prince Ḥasan, who had caused the deaths of many emīrs. The helpless caliph summoned his two court doctors: Abū-Manṣūr the Jew refused to do the job, but his Christian colleague, Ibn-Kirfa, mixed a deadly draught, which Ḥasan was forced to drink. Ibn-Kirfa was a man of considerable attainments in science, apart from his practical acquaintance with toxicology; he held several lucrative court appointments, such as master of the wardrobe, and possessed a charming house on the canal; but the caliph could not endure him after he had poisoned his son, and the too subservient doctor was cast into prison and executed soon after his victim.

The remaining years of Fāṭimid rule in Egypt were marred by the continual contests of rival ministers, supported by factions in the army. The troops set up as wezīr Bahrām, an Armenian Christian, who was nevertheless styled "the Sword of Islām," but his wholesale appointment of his fellow countrymen to all the offices and departments of state, and the consequent indulgence of Christians, led to his expulsion, together with 2000 of his Armenian protégés,[1] and his eventual

[1] The number may be exaggerated, but it should be noted that Bedr el-G'emālī brought an Armenian bodyguard with him to Cairo, and that for more than half a century the government had been in Armenian

adoption of the monastic life.[1] His successor, Ruḍwān, 1137
a gallant soldier and a poet, was the first to assume the title of king (melik), afterwards used by all Fāṭimid wezīrs: he was styled el-Melik el-Afḍal and Seyyid el-Aǧall ("the most excellent king and most illustrious noble"), but his titles did not save him from a fall: he was thrown into prison, and though after ten years he 1139
contrived to bore his way through the prison wall with the proverbial iron nail, and assembling many followers established himself in the Grey Mosque (el-Aḳmar) in front of the great palace of the caliph, he was cut down and his head was thrown into his wife's lap. A horrible 1148
story is told that his body was cut into small pieces and devoured by budding warriors, in the belief that they would thus assimilate his pith and courage.

The last year of the old caliph's reign—if reign it could be called when his authority hardly extended beyond the palace and was only maintained there by his drunken negro guard—was passed in a scene of constant faction and tumult; the streets were unsafe, and the people lived in a perpetual terror. The caliph was now 75 years of age, and suffered grievously from indigestion. His physician invented a drum, cunningly composed of the seven metals, welded at the exact moment when the southing of each of the seven planets promised fortunate results; and whenever this magic drum was beaten, the caliph's flatulence was relieved. This interesting machine was in the palace at the time of Saladin's conquest, and one of his Kurdish soldiers carelessly thrummed it, in ignorance of its peculiar properties. The effect was so astonishing that the man dropped the drum in confusion, and it was broken.

There is no doubt that under the Fāṭimids, on the whole, the Christians of Egypt were treated with unusual consideration, far more than under succeeding dynasties. Setting aside the persecutions of Ḥākim, which were merely part of a general tyranny, the Copts and

hands, no doubt to the great increase and aggrandisement of the Armenian colony.

[1] Abū-Ṣāliḥ, f. 84*a*.

Armenians had never before received so much benevolence from Muslim rulers. Under 'Azīz they were favoured beyond the Moḥammadans and were appointed to the highest offices of state. Under Mustanṣir and his successors, Armenians (whether Christians or not) protected their fellow-countrymen and through them the other Christians during the long period when the wezīrate was in their hands. Most of the financial posts of government were then, as always, in the possession of Copts. They were the farmers (ḍāmin) of taxes, and the controllers of accounts; and their ability made them indispensable. Throughout the reigns of the later caliphs we read constantly of the building and restoration of churches, recorded by the Christian Abū-Ṣālīḥ, whose contemporary history accurately reflects the state of Egypt at the close of the Fāṭimid rule. The caliph Ḥāfiẓ even welcomed the Armenian patriarch at his usual public levees on Mondays and Thursdays every week, to receive his instruction in history, and continued the practice up to his death. Ḥāfiẓ was fond of visiting monasteries, where a manẓara or belvedere was sometimes erected looking on the secluded gardens and commanding a view of "the blessed Nile," and he and his son Ẓāfir, and the last caliph 'Āḍid, used for this reason to frequent the monastery of Our Lady at el-'Adawīya, eighteen miles south of Cairo, and contributed to its support in return for the monks' hospitality. The caliph Āmir, a great lover of gardens, delighted in the monastery of Nahyā, west of G'īza, where he built a belvedere, and whence he used to go out hunting. Every time he went he gave the monks a thousand dirhems. He amused himself by standing in the priest's place in the church, but he refused to bow in order to enter the low door, and compromised matters by stooping and going in backwards.[1] The revenue of the Egyptian churches, largely derived from Fāṭimid gifts, amounted in 1180 to 2923 *D.* and 4826 sacks (of 5 bushels) of corn, and they owned 915 acres of land.

[1] Abū-Ṣāliḥ, ff. 2*b*, 7*a*, 46*b*, 61-2, etc.

On the death of Ḥāfiẓ in October 1149, his youngest son eẓ-Ẓafir[1] was set on the throne. He was a gay, handsome, careless youth of 16, who thought more of girls and songs than of arms and politics, and was wholly managed by the shrewd wezīr Ibn-es-Sālār, a Kurd and an orthodox Sunnī, who was styled el-Meliḳ el-'Adil. He had driven out the caliph's nominee, Ibn-Masāl, and was consequently hated by eẓ-Ẓāfir (whose "young guard" he suppressed and well-nigh exterminated in 1150), and as heartily detested by the people, whose lives were never safe from his executioners. His assassination by his wife's grandson, Naṣr, followed by the murder of the caliph by the same treacherous hands, belongs to one of the darkest chapters of Egyptian history. We have the story from the pen of a contemporary, the Arab chief Osāma, who used to hawk cranes and herons with Ḥafiẓ's court, was the guest of Ibn-es-Sālar, and the intimate, if not instigator, of his murderer.[2] The wezir's skull was placed in the Museum of Heads in the finance department by the overjoyed caliph, who gave the handsome young assassin twenty silver plates covered each with 20,000 *D.*, and encouraged him to follow up his first essay in the fine art. The suggestion was that he should make away with his own father and fellow-conspirator 'Abbās, who had succeeded to the wezirate of his murdered stepfather, Ibn-es-Sālār. Naṣr was not indisposed to the second crime, and 'Abbās, scenting danger, prepared to poison his son. The strained situation was relieved by the murder of the trusting caliph at a friendly entertainment in the young villain's own house. The next day Osāma was sitting in the palace porch, when he suddenly heard the clash of

Fig. 38.
Glass weight of eẓ-Ẓāfir.

1153 Apr.

1154 Apr.

[1] Abu Mansur Isma'il eẓ-Ẓafir-li-'adāi-dīni-llāh, "the conqueror of the enemies of God's religion," struck coins only at Misr and Alexandria, dated from 1149-50 to 1153-4.

[2] See H. Derenbourg, *Vie d'Ousâma*, 205-260.

swords: it was his friend 'Abbās with his thousand swordsmen, who had gone to the palace ostensibly to inquire for the vanished caliph, and was now massacring the caliph's brothers, whom he had the assurance to tax with the mysterious crime. The baby heir was displayed to the weeping court mounted on the wezīr's shoulder, and the soldiers shouted their mercenary homage. So ghastly was the scene that one of the old janitors of the palace died of terror behind his door with the key in his hand. Cairo rose in revolt, there was fighting in the streets, and the very women and children of the ḥarīms threw stones from the windows upon the wezīr's retainers, who immediately deserted him. 'Abbās could not withstand the storm of indignation and vengeance, and fled towards Syria.[1] On the way he was surprised and killed by the Franks, probably those of Montréal or of Karak by the Dead Sea, who had been set on his track by one of the murdered caliph's sisters. The source of all this tragedy, the inhuman Naṣr, was sold by the Templars to the avengers for 60,000 *D.*, sent to Cairo in an iron cage, tortured by the women of the court, paraded through the city without nose or ears, crucified alive at the Bāb-Zawīla, and left to hang there for many months.

Fig. 39.
Dīnār of eẓ-Ẓāfir, Miṣr, 1149.

The poor little child of four years, who entered upon his caliphate amidst all these horrors, and nearly died of fright on the awful day of his accession, was proclaimed with the title of el-Fāïz (1154-1160).[2] During the tumult

[1] A graphic account of these events is given by the eye-witness Oṣāma, possibly the Iago of the tragedy (Derenbourg, *Vie*, 238-258).

[2] Abū-l-Ḳāsim 'Īsā el-Fāïz-bi-naṣri-llāh, "the overcomer by God's help." His coins were from the mints of Miṣr and Alexandria, 1154-5 to 1160.

that succeeded the murder of his kindred, the women of the palace had cut off their hair in mourning and sent it —the strongest possible sign of entreaty in a Muslima— to the emīr Ṭalāi' ibn-Ruzzīk, the governor of Ushmuneyn, imploring him to come to the rescue. It was his advance, supported by the Arab tribes of the desert, and joined by the Sūdānī troops of the household, many emīrs, and the general mob of Cairo, that had compelled the instant flight of 'Abbās. Waving the women's tresses upon his lance, Ibn-Ruzzīk entered Cairo and took possession of the Dār-el-Ma'mūn, the sumptuous palace of 'Abbās and before him of Ibn-el-Baṭāïḥī.[1] He went to the room of 1154
the murderer Naṣr, raised a flagstone pointed out in the pavement, and there found the body of the murdered Ẓāfir, which he interred in the mausoleum of the caliphs amid universal lamentation. Then he set about restoring order, punishing the guilty, executing the truculent generals who had made havoc in Cairo for so many years, and establishing a reign of law.

El-Melik eṣ-Ṣāliḥ, as he was now styled, was a strong man, and Egypt was sorely in need of strong men at that time. Ascalon, her last outpost in Palestine, had fallen away from her during the divisions and confusion that followed upon Ibn-es-Sālār's assassination. It had long been a source of great solicitude, frequently attacked by the kings of Jerusalem, and doggedly defended by a large garrison, which was renewed twice a year from Egypt. The hurried return of one of these six-months' commanders, 'Abbās, to enjoy the fruits of his stepfather's assassination, left it comparatively unprotected; the Christians seized the occasion, and with the capture of Ascalon in the summer of 1153 vanished the last hold of the Fāṭimids on Palestine. That the Crusading rule had not been extended over Egypt itself was chiefly due to the growing power of the Turkish states on the east. The king of Jerusalem was too closely occupied, first with the savage onslaughts of Zengī, the Atābeg of Mōṣil, who

[1] It was converted by Saladin in 1177 into the Ḥanafī "College of the Swordmakers" (Maḳr. ii. 365-6).

had joined Aleppo to his dominions on the Tigris and Euphrates, harried Syria and defeated the Crusaders with great slaughter at Athārib in 1130, and had finally taken Edessa, "the conquest of conquests," in 1144.[1] After the death of Zengī two years later, his son Nūr-ed-dīn succeeded to his post as champion of Islām in Syria, and greatly strengthened his position by the annexation in 1154 of Damascus, which had long been in defensive alliance with the Crusaders. The collapse of the second Crusade under the emperor Conrad and Louis VII had disheartened and discredited the Franks; and the establishment of so strong a power as Nūr-ed-dīn's kingdom at Aleppo and Damascus in the immediate north and east rendered the position of the Jerusalem kingdom extremely insecure. Had Egypt been strong, had Egypt been of the same orthodox creed, a combination with Damascus would doubtless have driven the Crusaders to the coast— as such a union did a little later. The Egyptian wezīrs were fully alive to the value of Nūr-ed-dīn's support, and Ibn-es-Sālār had opened negotiations with him through the mediation of Osāma, who was well-known at both courts. But the weak point of Nūr-ed-dīn was excessive caution, and his ambition was satisfied with the ample dominions he possessed, without venturing upon wider schemes. Moreover, whilst as a notably devout Muslim he was bound to wage the Holy War against the infidels, his very piety raised scruples against any alliance with the schismatic caliph of Egypt. Thus it fell out that whilst the fear of Nūr-ed-dīn restrained the Franks from invading Egypt,[2] the horror of heresy withheld the sultan of Damascus from co-operation with Egypt against the common enemy.

Neither Damascus nor Jerusalem could afford to let Egypt fall into the hands of the other, and thus we find Cairo becoming the centre of diplomatic activity. The

[1] See an outline of Zengī's career in Lane-Poole, *Life of Saladin*, 35-61.

[2] The Sicilian fleet made a descent on Tinnīs in 1153, and again in 1155, but after plundering the coast cities it attempted no serious occupation of the country.

wezīr Ṣāliḥ ibn-Ruzzīk was eager for an alliance with Nūr-ed-dīn, and his pourparlers, expressed in elegant Arabic verse addressed to his friend Osāma, who was now again at Damascus, enlarged on a victory won by the Egyptian army under Ḍirghām near Gaza over the Franks in March, 1158, extolled the valour and numbers 1158
of the troops and ships of Egypt, and urged Nūr-ed-dīn to bestir himself to similar efforts, sketching a glorious campaign of combined triumphs.[1] He got nothing but evasive replies, couched in vague poetic metaphor, from Osāma ; Nūr-ed-dīn evidently distrusted the Egyptian proposals. Ibn-Ruzzīk even sent a formal embassy in October to Damascus, with handsome presents and a collection of the wezīr's war-songs, offering 70,000 *D.* towards the Holy War, but wholly in vain.

Failing in his policy of combined action against the Crusaders, Ibn-Ruzzīk was yet successful in maintaining order in Egypt itself. "He was eminent by his personal merit," says Ibn-Khallikān, "profuse in largesse, accessible to suitors, a generous patron to men of talent, and a good poet." His verse was collected in two volumes, and he had a bad habit of reciting it to his friends, not without retaliation. Like other wezīrs, he built a mosque, the ruins of which are still to be seen close to the Bāb-Zawīla, though much of the decoration is attributed to a later restoration. He was not above avarice, however, and farmed the taxes to the highest bidders on six months' tenures to the great injury of the fellāḥīn. He might have long survived their discontent, but he ran a more serious risk in imposing a strict regimen upon the caliph's household. The little caliph Fāïz had died in July, 1160, at the age of eleven, after six years of virtual 1160
captivity and constant epileptic seizures. His successor,

Fig. 40.—Glass weight of el-'Āḍid.

[1] See the poetical correspondence in the autobiography of Osāma, and Derenbourg *Vie d'Ousâma*, 285-295.

el-'Āḍid[1] (1160-1171), the last of the Fāṭimid caliphs, was only nine, and was chosen from the various possible heirs simply because his childhood made him easy to manage. But the wezīr had to reckon with the women of the ḥarīm, who hated his rigorous control; and an aunt of the caliph succeeded in procuring the great man's assassination. As Ibn-Ruzzīk lay dying, he begged the child to send the guilty woman to be punished, and had her executed before his eyes. His last words were a regret that he had not conquered Jerusalem and exterminated the Franks, and a warning to his son to beware of Shāwar, the Arab governor of Upper Egypt. The regret and the warning were well founded. Shāwar deposed and executed the wezīr's son, el-'Ādil Ruzzīk, at the beginning of 1163, and within the year the Christian king of Jerusalem was in Egypt.

The interference of Amalric was the result of a fresh
1163 Aug. change in the wezīrate. Shāwar was driven from Cairo by the popular favourite, Ḍirghām, a Lakhmī Arab, who had successfully commanded the troops against the Crusaders at Gaza, and held the post of colonel of the Barḳīya battalion and "lord of the door"—an office second only to that of wezīr. Shāwar fled to Nūr-ed-dīn and implored his help. He offered not only to pay the cost of an expedition, but promised a third of the revenues of Egypt in the form of an annual tribute.[2] The king of Syria was not indifferent to the importance of obtaining a hold upon Egypt: he knew that it was the master-key of the political situation and would form a prolific source of revenue. Yet he hesitated to accept Shāwar's overtures. Distrust of the man himself, and apprehension of the risks to which an expedition would be exposed when marching through the desert on the Crusaders' flank, made him pause. Events, however, moved too fast for his prudence. Ḍirghām quarrelled

[1] Abū-Moḥammad 'Abdallāh el-'Āḍid-li-dīni-llāh, "the strengthener of the religion of God." His few coins were struck at Miṣr (1161 and 1164-5), Cairo (1160, 1167—1171), and Alexandria (1167—71).

[2] The following account of the conquest of Egypt by Nūr-ed-dīn's armies is slightly abridged from Lane-Poole, *Life of Saladin*, pp. 81-97.

with Amalric over the yearly subsidy (which had apparently been paid of late by the wezīrs of Egypt to the Franks to stave off a Christian invasion [1]), and the Sept. new king of Jerusalem with prompt decision invaded Egypt. Ḍirghām, after a severe defeat near Bilbeys, ingeniously avoided total discomfiture by breaking down the dams and causeways and flooding the country with the imprisoned waters of the Nile, then at its height. Amalric had already retired to Palestine, but half satisfied with some sort of composition, when Ḍirghām, hearing of Shāwar's negotiations at Damascus, perceived his error in not conciliating the Latin king, and hastened to proffer an eternal alliance, to be cemented by increased tribute. This step must have been known to Nūr-ed-dīn: fortified by an auspicious consultation of the Ḳorān, he immediately cast his former scruples to the winds; and before Amalric could intervene, Shāwar was on the march to Egypt, supported by a strong force 1164 of Turkmāns from Damascus, led by Shīrkūh, with his Apr. nephew Saladin on his staff.

The Egyptians were defeated at Bilbeys, but rallied again under the walls of Cairo. For several days indecisive conflicts took place, Shāwar holding Fusṭāṭ, and the other the castle of Cairo. Then, to raise funds, Ḍirghām possessed himself of the *wakf*, the "money of the orphans," and at once the people began to fall away from him. Worse still, he was deserted by the caliph and the army. Driven to bay, for the last time he sounded the assembly. In vain "the drums beat and the trumpets blared, *ma-sha-llah!* on the battlements": no man answered. In vain the desperate emīr, surrounded by his bodyguard of 500 horse, all that remained to him of a powerful army, stood suppliant before the caliph's palace for a whole day, even until the

[1] William of Tyre calls it *annuam tributi pensionem* (*Hist.*, xix. 5), and others give the amount as 33,000 *D.* The tribute or blackmail must have been very recently instituted, for Ibn-Ruzzīk, who died in 1161, assuredly would have paid no such subsidy to the "infidels." Probably Shāwar began the payment in 1162, but the fact cannot be proved.

sunset call to prayer, and implored him by the memory of his forefathers to stand forth at the window and bless his cause. No answer came; the guard itself gradually dispersed, till only thirty troopers were left. Suddenly a warning cry reached him: "Look to thyself and save thy life!"—and lo! Shāwar's trumpets and drums were heard, entering from the Gate of the Bridge. Then at last the deserted leader rode out through the Zawīla gate: the fickle folk hacked off his head, and bore it in triumph through the streets; his body they left to be worried by the curs. Such was the tragic end of a brave and gallant gentleman, poet, and paladin.

May Shāwar, restored to power, was eager to see the backs of the allies who had effected his reinstatement. He cautiously excluded Shīrkūh from the fortified city of Cairo and kept him in the suburbs. Then safe, as he thought, within his own strong walls, he defied his ally, broke all his promises, and refused to pay the indemnity. Shīrkūh was not the man to forego his rights or condone broken faith; he sent Saladin to occupy Bilbeys and the eastern province. This hostile movement compelled Shāwar in turn to appeal to Amalric. On the arrival of the Crusaders the Syrian army entrenched itself at Bilbeys, where it resisted all assaults for three months. A fortunate diversion at last came to its relief. Nūr-ed-dīn was waging a successful campaign in Palestine. After a reverse at the hands of Gilbert de Lacy and Robert Mansel, he had taken Harenc and was laying siege to Cæsarea Philippi; and Amalric was sorely wanted at home to protect his own kingdom, always dangerously exposed upon its eastern marches. Nor was Shīrkūh less anxious to extricate himself from a situation where, attacked all day and every day, penned in behind weak earthworks, and running short of food, his position was neither safe nor agreeable. An armistice was accordingly arranged, and the two parties came to terms. On the 27th of

Oct. October, the Syrians marched out of their camp and filed off between the lines of the allied Crusaders and Egyptians, Shīrkūh himself, battle-axe in hand, bringing up the rear.

The expedition to Egypt had ended without glory, but it had accomplished its object; it had spied out the land, and Shīrkūh was able to report favourably on the possibility and advantages of annexation. Egypt was a country, he said, "without *men*, and with a precarious and contemptible government." Its wealth and defencelessness invited aggression. The ambitious general was devoured by desire for a viceregal throne at Cairo, and from this time forth he persistently urged Nūr-ed-dīn to authorize the conquest of Egypt. The bolder spirits at court supported his importunity, and the caliph of Baghdād accorded his blessing and encouragement to a project which involved the deposition of his heretical rival. Nūr-ed-dīn, ever cautious, resisted these influences for a while, but at last gave way,—possibly because rumours had reached him of a closer union between Shāwar and the Franks, which soon proved to be well founded.

It was, in fact, a race for the Nile. Shīrkūh started 1167
first, at the beginning of 1167, with 2000 picked horsemen, and, taking the desert route by the Gazelle Valley to avoid a collision with the Franks, but encountering on the way a violent and disastrous sandstorm, reached the Nile at Atfīh, some forty miles south of Cairo, where he might cross to the west bank without fear of molestation. He had hardly carried his army over, however, when Amalric appeared on the east side, having hurried from Palestine as soon as he heard of the enemy's movements. The two armies followed the opposite banks down to Cairo, where Amalric pitched his camp close to Fusṭāṭ, whilst Shīrkūh took up a position exactly facing him at Gīza. There each waited for the other to begin operations. Meanwhile, Amalric took the opportunity of the wezir's amicable dispositions to place their alliance on a more formal basis. Convinced of the unstable character of the minister, he resolved to have a treaty ratified by the caliph in person. The conditions were that Egypt should pay the king 200,000 gold pieces then and there, and a further like sum at a later date, in return for his aid in expelling the enemy. On this

agreement Amalric gave his hand to the caliph's representatives, and claimed a like ratification from the caliph himself.

The introduction of Christian ambassadors to the sacred presence, where few even of the most exalted Muslims were admitted, was unprecedented; but Amalric was in a position to dictate his own terms. Permission was granted, and Hugh of Cæsarea with Geoffrey Fulcher the Templar were selected for the unique embassy. The wezīr himself conducted them with every detail of oriental ceremony and display to the Great Palace of the Fāṭimids. They were led by mysterious corridors and through guarded doors, where stalwart Sūdānis saluted with naked swords. They reached a spacious court, open to the sky, and surrounded by arcades resting on marble pillars; the panelled ceilings were carved and inlaid in gold and colours; the pavement was rich mosaic. The unaccustomed eyes of the rude knights opened wide with wonder at the taste and refinement that met them at every step;—here they saw marble fountains, birds of many notes and wondrous plumage, strangers to the western world; there, in a further hall, more exquisite even than the first, "a variety of animals such as the ingenious hand of the painter might depict, or the license of the poet invent, or the mind of the sleeper conjure up in the visions of the night,—such, indeed, as the regions of the East and the South bring forth, but the West sees never, and scarcely hears of." At last, after many turns and windings, they reached the throne room, where the multitude of the pages and their sumptuous dress proclaimed the splendour of their lord. Thrice did the wezīr, ungirding his sword, prostrate himself to the ground, as though in humble supplication to his god; then, with a sudden rapid sweep, the heavy curtains broidered with gold and pearls were drawn aside, and on a golden throne, robed in more than regal state, the caliph sat revealed.

The wezīr humbly presented the foreign knights, and set forth in lowly words the urgent danger from without,

and the great friendship of the king of Jerusalem. The caliph, a swarthy youth emerging from boyhood,—*fuscus, procerus corpore, facie venusta*,—replied with suave dignity. He was willing, he said, to confirm in the amplest way the engagements made with his beloved ally. But when asked to give his hand in pledge of faithfulness, he hesitated, and a thrill of indignation at the stranger's presumption ran through the listening court. After a pause, however, the caliph offered his hand—gloved as it was—to Sir Hugh. The blunt knight spoke him straight: "My lord, troth has no covering: in the good faith of princes, all is naked and open." Then at last, very unwillingly, as though derogating from his dignity, the caliph, forcing a smile, drew off the glove and put his hand in Hugh's, swearing word by word to keep the covenant truly and in all good faith.[1]

The treaty thus ratified, Amalric attempted to throw a bridge of boats across the Nile; but the presence of the enemy on the other side defeated the plan, and he resorted to another. Descending to where the river forked into its two main streams, he conveyed his army over to the delta by night, and thence to the other side, in ships. Shīrkūh discovered the movement too late to oppose, and finding the enemy landed he retreated to Upper Egypt. The king pursuing came up with him at "the two Gates" (el-Bābān), ten miles south of Minya. Here was a plain, on the border where the cultivated land touched the desert, and numerous sandy hills gave cover to the combatants. Shīrkūh's captains at first advised him not to risk a battle; but one of them stood forth and said stoutly, "Those who fear death or slavery are not fit to serve kings: let them turn ploughmen, or stay at home with their wives." Saladin and others applauded; and Shīrkūh, always ready for hard knocks, gladly gave battle (18 April, 1167). He put the 1167 Apr.

[1] William of Tyre, *Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis gestarum*, lib. xix., cap. 19, 20. The embassy is not recorded by the Arabic chroniclers.

baggage in the centre, covered by Saladin's troop, which was to bear the first brunt of the attack. Saladin's orders were to fall back when pressed and draw the enemy in pursuit, and then to press them in turn, as the fight might allow. Shīrkūh himself took command of the right wing, composed of a body of picked horsemen, which was to cut up the enemy's rear, consisting of the less warlike Egyptians. It fell out as he expected. The Franks were drawn away by Saladin; the Egyptians were cut up and routed; and when the Crusaders, returning from the pursuit, found their allies fled, they also hastily retreated, abandoning their baggage and leaving Hugh of Cæsarea among the prisoners.[1] The victors, however, were not strong enough to follow up the success, march on to Cairo, and run Shāwar and Amalric to earth. Taking the lesser risk, Shīrkūh went north by a desert route and entered Alexandria without opposition. Here he installed Saladin as governor, with one half of his army, while with the other he again turned southwards to levy contributions in Upper Egypt.

The joint forces of the Franks and Egyptians now invested Alexandria, whilst the Christian fleet held the coast. The defence of the city was Saladin's first independent command, and he quitted himself well. He had but a thousand followers of his own, in the midst of a mongrel and partly foreign populace, who, as malcontents, were not sorry to take part against a feeble government or to defend their city against the savage and bloodthirsty Franks; yet, as merchants and tradesmen, could not conceal their terror of the siege-machines and infernal engines which the "infidels" brought against their walls. Provisions, moreover, ran short; and short rations make a humble stomach. At last they

[1] Ibn-el-Athīr, *Kāmil*, 548; according to his *Atābegs* it was a month earlier. The numbers engaged are variously estimated. The Arab historians give Shīrkūh only 2000 horsemen. William of Tyre (xix. 25), on the other hand, puts the Saracen force at 9000 men mailed (*loricis galeisque*), 3000 archers, and at least 10,000 Arabs armed with spears. The Latins, he says, had only 374 knights, an uncertain number of light infantry (Turcopoles), and a body of Egyptians who were more a burden than a help.

rose in a tumult and openly talked of surrender. Saladin meanwhile had sent to his uncle for help, and Shīrkūh was hurrying down from Ḳūṣ laden with treasure. The news put fresh heart into the people, already spurred on by Saladin's spirited exhortations and the promise of reinforcement, or frightened into a desperate courage by his tales of the monstrous barbarities inflicted by the Franks upon the vanquished. They held out for seventy-five days, in spite of hunger and incessant assaults, till it became known that Shīrkūh was at the Abyssinians' Lake, laying siege to Cairo. On this, Amalric gave up all thoughts of Alexandria, and a peace was arranged, by which both parties agreed to leave Egypt to the Egyptians. Alexandria was surrendered to Shāwar; prisoners were exchanged; and Shīrkūh led the exhausted remnant of his 2000 troopers back to Damascus. 1167 Aug. 4

The Christians claimed the campaign as a triumph, and the evacuation of Alexandria as a surrender; but if the Arab chroniclers are right in saying that Amalric paid Shīrkūh 50,000 pieces of gold to go away, the advantage would appear to have been on the side of the Muslims. On the other hand, the Franks, in violation (apparently) of their agreement, not only left a Resident at Cairo, but insisted on furnishing the guards of the city gates from their own soldiers; they also increased the annual subsidy to be paid by Shāwar to the king of Jerusalem to 100,000 gold pieces. Not content with this hold, the more impetuous among Amalric's counsellors presently began to urge the complete conquest of Egypt, and their advice was strongly supported by the garrison they had left at Cairo and Fusṭāṭ, who had naturally the best means of discovering the weakness of their defences. The king of Jerusalem

Fig. 41.—Dīnār of el-'Āḍid, Cairo, 1168.

of the wezīr. Thus ended the brief and checkered career of a remarkable and politic minister ; an Arab chief, moreover, of ancient lineage, with all the Bedawī's daring and the ancestral love of poetry—insomuch that he once filled 'Ōmāra's mouth with gold in delight at an ode—and, it must be added, with the Arab's full share of falsehood and deceit.

The caliph el-'Āḍid, who was much impressed by the gallant bearing of his deliverers, immediately appointed Shīrkūh to the vacant office, clad him in the robes of wezīr, invested him with plenary powers, and gave him the titles of el-Melik en-Nāṣir, "Victorious King," and Commander-in-chief. The people were as pleased as the pontiff ; they had liked the jolly soldier as he rode over the country a year and a half ago, even though he was levying taxes; and the Cairenes appreciated the liberal manner in which he had disbursed from his heavy military chest, and had refreshed them with the looting of Shāwar's palace, where they left not so much as a cushion for his lavish successor to sit on. The Arab poet saw more clearly when he remarked that the claws of "the Lion"[1] were now fastened on his prey. The "Lion of the Faith," however, lived scarcely more than
1169 Mar. two months to enjoy his quarry, but died suddenly, 23 March, 1169. He was succeeded by his nephew, the famous Saladin, and two years later the Fāṭimid Caliphate was abolished.

It is remarkable that, although several of the Fāṭimid caliphs were men of intellectual culture and highly appreciative of literary talent, the period of their rule was unproductive in writers of exceptional merit. It was not for lack of patronage, for the wezīrs of Egypt, as well as some of the caliphs, were often generous in their gifts to scholars, poets, and divines. The wezīr Ibn-Killis used to hold meetings every Thursday night, when he would read his compositions to the assembled savans, rhetoricians, grammarians, and divines, and poets

[1] Asad-ed-dīn, "Lion of the Faith," was the Arabic surname of Shīrkūh, which is itself Persian for "Mountain-Lion."

would recite their verses, usually panegyrics of their host. He employed a regular staff in transcribing manuscripts, and every day a large table was laid for the learned men who joined his household and other guests. The caliph's physician, et-Temīmī of Jerusalem, was a man of real science, and his librarian, esh-Shābushtī, wrote a history of the monasteries. Abū-r-Rakāmak of Antioch (†1008-9), whom Tha'labī described as "the pearl of his age, the amalgam of excellences, master of poetry in its light as in its serious moods," was among the panegyrists who attended the levees of Ibn-Killis, and wrote odes in praise of him and of the caliphs Mo'izz, 'Azīz, and Ḥākim. El-Kindī, the historian and topographer of Egypt (†961), lived at Fusṭāṭ, and his continuator, Ibn-Zūlāk (†997), an Egyptian, also wrote a history of the Ḳāḍīs. But the most famous men of the early Fāṭimid time were the Ḳāḍī en-No'mān and his sons and grandsons, who held the highest legal and religious offices for forty years, from the conquest of Egypt to the middle of the reign of Ḥākim, who accorded them special privileges. These Ḳāḍīs, like most of their order, were not merely learned in the law and able judges, but men of the highest education of the age, familiar with all branches of Arabic literature, and themselves historians and poets. Another celebrated civil servant (though he wore a uniform) of the time of Ḥākim was el-Musebbiḥi (†1029), an Egyptian by birth, who wrote the history of his country in 26,000 pages, and other works on religion, poetry, astrology, curiosities of literature and history, and the arts of the table, to the extent of 35,000 pages more. The wealth of the Fāṭimid court and the encouragement given to the polite sciences drew many foreigners to Cairo. El-Ḳuḍā'ī, the historian and jurisconsult (†1062), Ibn-Bābshādh, the grammarian (†1077), and Abū-Ya'ḳūb en-Naǵīramī (†1126) of Baṣra, a distinguished philologer, were amongst these visitors; and the Arabic manuscripts on philology, poetry, and the "Days" of the Arabs, copied by the last's accurate pen at an extremely moderate price, or delivered orally at his precise dictation, long remained the received texts in

of the wezīr. Thus ended the brief and checkered career of a remarkable and politic minister ; an Arab chief, moreover, of ancient lineage, with all the Bedawī's daring and the ancestral love of poetry—insomuch that he once filled 'Omāra's mouth with gold in delight at an ode—and, it must be added, with the Arab's full share of falsehood and deceit.

The caliph el-'Āḍid, who was much impressed by the gallant bearing of his deliverers, immediately appointed Shīrkūh to the vacant office, clad him in the robes of wezīr, invested him with plenary powers, and gave him the titles of el-Melik en-Nāṣir, "Victorious King," and Commander-in-chief. The people were as pleased as the pontiff ; they had liked the jolly soldier as he rode over the country a year and a half ago, even though he was levying taxes; and the Cairenes appreciated the liberal manner in which he had disbursed from his heavy military chest, and had refreshed them with the looting of Shāwar's palace, where they left not so much as a cushion for his lavish successor to sit on. The Arab poet saw more clearly when he remarked that the claws of "the Lion"[1] were now fastened on his prey. The "Lion of the Faith," however, lived scarcely more than
1169 Mar. two months to enjoy his quarry, but died suddenly, 23 March, 1169. He was succeeded by his nephew, the famous Saladin, and two years later the Fāṭimid Caliphate was abolished.

It is remarkable that, although several of the Fāṭimid caliphs were men of intellectual culture and highly appreciative of literary talent, the period of their rule was unproductive in writers of exceptional merit. It was not for lack of patronage, for the wezīrs of Egypt, as well as some of the caliphs, were often generous in their gifts to scholars, poets, and divines. The wezīr Ibn-Killis used to hold meetings every Thursday night, when he would read his compositions to the assembled savans, rhetoricians, grammarians, and divines, and poets

[1] Asad-ed-dīn, "Lion of the Faith," was the Arabic surname of Shīrkūh, which is itself Persian for "Mountain-Lion."

would recite their verses, usually panegyrics of their host. He employed a regular staff in transcribing manuscripts, and every day a large table was laid for the learned men who joined his household and other guests. The caliph's physician, et-Temīmī of Jerusalem, was a man of real science, and his librarian, esh-Shābushtī, wrote a history of the monasteries. Abū-r-Rakāmak of Antioch (†1008-9), whom Tha'labī described as "the pearl of his age, the amalgam of excellences, master of poetry in its light as in its serious moods," was among the panegyrists who attended the levees of Ibn-Killis, and wrote odes in praise of him and of the caliphs Mo'izz, 'Azīz, and Ḥākim. El-Kindī, the historian and topographer of Egypt (†961), lived at Fusṭāṭ, and his continuator, Ibn-Zūlāk (†997), an Egyptian, also wrote a history of the Ḳāḍīs. But the most famous men of the early Fāṭimid time were the Ḳāḍī en-No'mān and his sons and grandsons, who held the highest legal and religious offices for forty years, from the conquest of Egypt to the middle of the reign of Ḥākim, who accorded them special privileges. These Ḳāḍīs, like most of their order, were not merely learned in the law and able judges, but men of the highest education of the age, familiar with all branches of Arabic literature, and themselves historians and poets. Another celebrated civil servant (though he wore a uniform) of the time of Ḥākim was el-Musebbiḥi (†1029), an Egyptian by birth, who wrote the history of his country in 26,000 pages, and other works on religion, poetry, astrology, curiosities of literature and history, and the arts of the table, to the extent of 35,000 pages more. The wealth of the Fāṭimid court and the encouragement given to the polite sciences drew many foreigners to Cairo. El-Ḳuḍā'ī, the historian and jurisconsult (†1062), Ibn-Bābshādh, the grammarian (†1077), and Abū-Ya'ḳūb en-Naǵīramī (†1126) of Baṣra, a distinguished philologer, were amongst these visitors; and the Arabic manuscripts on philology, poetry, and the "Days" of the Arabs, copied by the last's accurate pen at an extremely moderate price, or delivered orally at his precise dictation, long remained the received texts in

Egypt. The poet Ibn-el-Khallāl (†1171), described by his contemporary, 'Imād-ed-dīn (Saladin's secretary), as "the pupil of Egypt's eye, combining all the noble qualities of his country," at the time of Ḥāfiẓ, was president of the correspondence department, where the art of writing despatches in the most elaborate style was studiously cultivated. When a candidate for admission was asked what qualifications he possessed for the art of correspondence, he replied, "None, except that I know the Ḳorān and the Ḥamāsa by heart." "That will do," said Ibn-el-Khallāl. It was as though an Englishman should say that he could repeat the whole of the Bible and the "Golden Treasury." The wezīr Ibn-es-Sālār was a devout Shāfi'ite Muslim as well as a tyrannical governor, and the college he founded at Alexandria to propagate the teaching of the theological school initiated by the Imām Shāfi'ī had an excellent president in the eminent traditioner and divine es-Silafī of Iṣfahān (†1180), among whose pupils was Ibn-el-G'arrāḥ (†1219), the poet, calligrapher, and ornament of the correspondence office. He elaborated a riddle which takes three large quarto pages to unravel. The Ḳāḍi er-Rashīd ibn-ez-Zubeyr (†1166), poet and accomplished man of letters, was another of Ibn-es-Sālār's friends.

That there was not a larger number of distinguished scholars during the two centuries of Fāṭimid rule in Egypt is partly due to the insecurity of life—the court poet, 'Abd-el-Ghaffār, for example, was wantonly beheaded by Ḥākim, as were some of the celebrated No'mān Ḳāḍīs—but much more to the heretical character of the dynasty. Orthodox Muslims shunned the court of caliphs whose doctrines and claims they utterly repudiated. A great deal of intellectual activity, however, was shown by the rank and file of students in Cairo during this period, and although the University of the Azhar had not yet attained the celebrity which it acquired under the orthodox rule of the succeeding dynasties, there was already the nucleus of a great theological school. The era of Egyptian colleges begins with the reign of Saladin.

In art, as has been shown, the immense wealth of the

Fāṭimids tended to encourage the production of costly and beautiful objects of luxury, and the caliphs and their wezīrs were notable builders. The great mosques of el-Azhar (though restored out of all semblance to the original design) and Ḥākim are still standing to testify to their zeal, and the remains of the smaller mosques or chapels of el-Aḳmar and of es-Ṣāliḥ ibn-Ruzzīk display the bold and effective designs and austere Kūfic inscriptions for which Fāṭimid art is renowned. The three massive gates of Cairo, built by Roman architects and resembling in plan and in details the heavy gates of Byzantine fortresses, are among the most enduring relics of the Shī'a government in Egypt, and it is worth noticing that the heretical formula of faith inscribed in beautiful Kūfic characters over the Gate of Victory in the reign of Mustanṣir has triumphantly survived eight centuries of dominant orthodoxy.

CHAPTER VII

SALADIN

1169—1193

Authorities.—Bahā-ed-dīn, Ibn-el-Athīr, 'Imād-ed-dīn, Abū-Ṣāliḥ, Abū-Shāma, Ibn-Khallikān, el-Maḳrīzī; William of Tyre, Ernoul, Itinerarium Regis Ricardi; Lane-Poole's *Life of Saladin* (1898).

Monuments.—Citadel of Cairo and third wall of city.

Inscriptions.—Irrigation decree at Damascus, A.H. 574; restoration tablet in great mosque of Damascus, 575 (these two have disappeared, but are recorded by Waddington and van Berchem); citadel of Cairo 579 (Casanova, *Mém. Miss. Arch.*, vi. 569); mosque of el-Aḳṣā, Jerusalem (de Vogüé, *Temple de Jer.*, 101); Dome of the Rock, Jerusalem, 585 (de Vogüé, 91); Ḳubbat Yūsuf, Jerusalem; Church of St. Anne, Jerusalem, 588 (de Vogüé, *Églises de la Terre Sainte*, 244, van Berchem, *Inscr. Ar. de Syrie, Mém. de l'Inst. Egypt*, 1897, Pl. v. fig. 10); tomb of Saladin, Damascus (inscr. disappeared, but recorded by Ibn-Khallikān, iv. 547).

Coins.—Minted at Cairo, Miṣr, Alexandria, Damascus, Ḥamāh, Aleppo.

Glass weights.—Bearing name of 'Abbāsid caliphs el-Mustaḍī and en-Nāṣir, without Saladin's name or date (Lane-Poole, *Cat. Arab. Glass Weights in B.M.*, 36-8).

THE epoch of Saladin's rule, though brief, was the most glorious in the history of Muslim domination in Egypt; but it owed its glory to causes outside. Of his reign of twenty-four years, Saladin[1] passed only eight at Cairo; the other sixteen were spent in campaigns in Syria, Mesopotamia, and Palestine. These external wars can only be briefly described here, and the chief place must

[1] Saladin is the European softened form of Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn, "Honour of the Faith." His full names and titles were El-Melik en-Nāṣir Abū-l-Muẓaffar Ṣalāḥ-ed-dunyā-wa-d-dīn Yūsuf ibn Ayyūb.

Saladin's generosity and personal charm soon gained him the confidence of the Egyptians, and the substitution of his own father and brothers,—a conspicuously able and gallant family,—in the place of suspected officers of
1169 the court, strengthened his position. A rising of the caliph's black troops was repressed after some hard fighting in the streets, and the Sūdānīs were banished to the Ṣa'īd, where rebellion smouldered for several years. Hardly was the negro revolt checked when Damietta was attacked by the combined fleets of the Eastern emperor and the king of Jerusalem, numbering 220 galleys. Saladin had just time to reinforce the garrison, which proved equal to repulsing even the powerful mangonels and movable siege-towers of the enemy, whilst the army of Cairo harassed them outside. Famine and storm came to the aid of the Muslims, and the half-drowned starving invaders made peace and returned in great dejection to Palestine. This was the turning-point in the Franco-Egyptian struggle. Henceforth, instead of going forth to attack, the kingdom of Jerusalem was forced to stand upon its defence.

1170 Saladin followed up this success by a raid into Palestine, in which he plundered the town of Gaza, and in the same year took Eyla, at the head of the gulf of Akaba, the key of the Red Sea route for pilgrims to Mekka. To carry out this operation he resorted to a device which was repeated by his adversaries afterwards; he built ships in sections at Cairo, and carried the parts overland to the Red Sea, where they were put together. The result of these successes against the "infidels" was such a measure of popularity in Egypt that Saladin felt himself strong enough to take a decisive step. As a strictly orthodox Muslim, he had chafed under his forced recognition of an heretical caliph, and he had only submitted to the situation because he did not feel sure of popular support. To educate public opinion he had founded

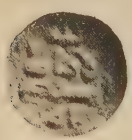


Fig. 42.—Glass weight of caliph el-Mustaḍi, issued by Saladin, 1171.

three orthodox colleges in 1170; and now, with the added reputation of the "holy war" successfully waged in Palestine, he caused the name of the 'Abbāsid caliph to be proclaimed instead of the Fāṭimid in the mosques on Friday, 10 Sept., 1171. This ecclesiastical revolution passed off without a murmur. The assembled congregation looked merely surprised. The last of the Fāṭimids, happily, never learnt the secret of his deposition. He had been a recluse in his palace since the arrival of Saladin, and when his name was suppressed he lay dying. The news was mercifully withheld from him; and the last of the famous dynasty, which had been given such great opportunities and had misused them so contemptibly, died three days later, ignorant of his fall.[1] His family and kindred were maintained in gilded captivity, and his 18,000 slaves and servants distributed. Of all the treasures that he found in the palaces, Saladin kept nothing for himself. He gave some to his followers, some he presented to his sovereign Nūr-ed-dīn; the library of 120,000 manuscripts he gave to his learned chancellor, the Ḳāḍī el-Fāḍil; the rest was sold for the public purse. Nor did it suit his simple and austere mode of life to take up his residence in the stately halls of the late caliph. He remained in the "House of the Wezīr," and gave up the palaces to the officers of the army. No longer a royal residence, the beautiful mansions of the Fāṭimids fell into decay, and not a vestige of them has been preserved. "O censurer of my love for the sons of Fāṭima," cried 'Omāra the poet, 1171 Sept.

[1] The caliph el-'Āḍid left eleven sons, four sisters, four wives, and other relations to the number of 152, whom the majordomo Ḳarāḳūsh shut up in different buildings of the palace, separating the sexes, but indulging them with every luxury except posterity. Nevertheless they contrived to rear grandsons of the caliph, and the family was not extinct in 1260. A curious magic cup from Cairo, dated 571 (1175-6), bears the name of "the Imām el-Mo'taṣim-bi-llāh Abū-l-'Abbās Ẓāhir, the moon being in Cancer," and this may refer to one of the sons of el-'Āḍid, whose claim was perhaps supported by the pro-Fāṭimid party, who continued for some years to conspire in the hope of restoring the fallen dynasty or of profiting by its nominal restoration. See Casanova, *Les derniers Fatimides, in Mém. de la Miss. Arch.*, vi. 415-445.

"join in my tears over the desolate halls of the twin palaces!"

Saladin's career, from his accession to power, falls into three distinct periods, which may be called the Egyptian, Syrian, and Palestinian in regard to the chief scene of action, or the Defensive, Consolidating, and Aggressive in reference to policy. From the day he became ruler of Egypt he had vowed himself solemnly to the Holy War, the war of extermination against the Franks. Henceforward his whole policy was directed to that one great end. During the first or Egyptian period (1169—1174) he was on the defensive, not only against the Crusaders, but against the friends of the Fāṭimids, and even against his liege-lord the king of Syria. The policy of this period was to resist internal and foreign attack, avoid a collision with Nūr-ed-dīn, and strengthen himself in Cairo by every possible means, political and military. The second or Syrian period (1174—1186), beginning with the death of Nūr-ed-dīn, saw Saladin, as now the leading Muslim ruler of the near East, extending his sway over Syria and Mesopotamia, and consolidating all the available forces of Islām for the final struggle with the "infidels." The third or Palestinian period (1186—1193) was wholly devoted to the Holy War against the Crusaders, and ended with the peace of Ramla, followed in a few months by the death of the champion of Islām. Through all three periods the one aim was steadily kept in view, and every act of policy, every campaign, was strictly directed to the main object—the creation of a united Saracen empire, strong enough to drive the Franks to the sea-board, if not into the sea. Whatever personal ambition may have mingled unconsciously with it, aggrandizement in Saladin's case meant primarily, if not solely, the triumph of Islām over the "infidels."

I. 1169-1174

The first or Egyptian period had begun well. The Crusaders had not ventured to renew the attack by land, and the invasion by sea had been a fiasco. The mutiny of the black troops of Cairo—the greatest of all internal dangers—had ended in their expulsion to Upper Egypt. The Fāṭimid caliphate had been abolished

with scarcely a sign of popular disapproval. The next step was to fortify himself alike against internal revolt and external invasion. The Fāṭimids had contented themselves with a fortified palace on the plain. Saladin, with a soldier's eye, had perceived the weakness of the position, and had already chosen a better site for his purpose. So far each successive dynasty in Egypt had enlarged the capital by extending it in the form of suburbs or vast palaces towards the north-east. Instead of carrying on this plan, Saladin "sought to unite the sites of all the four capitals, and to build a Citadel—the famous 'Castle of the Mountain'—on the westernmost spur of Mount Muḳaṭṭam, to be the centre of government and to form a military stronghold capable of overawing the whole city and resisting assaults from outside. His plan was to connect this fortress by a bastioned wall with the old fortifications of the Fāṭimid 'city,' and to extend it so as to enclose the site of Fusṭāṭ and Ḳaṭā'i', and thus to sweep round to the river; but the plan was not completed, and even the Citadel was not finished till long after his death. Saladin's enlargement of the area of the city was accompanied by the demolition of whole suburbs between the old 'city' and the shrine of Nefīsa. These were replaced by pleasure-gardens, and it is recorded that the tall Zawila gate could be seen from the door of Ibn-Ṭūlūn's mosque. Jehan Thenaud, who accompanied an embassy from Louis XII to Cairo at a later period, found these gardens still a striking feature of the city: 'moult somptueulx et grans jardins plains de tous fruictiers: comme cytrons, lymons, citrulles, oranges, aubercotz, cassiers et pommes de musez ou d'Adam pour ce que l'on dict estre le fruict duquel Adam oul trepassa le commandement de Dieu. Lesquelz jardins tous les soirs et matins sont arrousez de l'eau du Nil que tirent beufz et chevaulx.'[1] Traces of some of these pleasure-grounds may even now be seen from the battlements of the Citadel.

[1] *Le voyage et itinaire de oultre mer faict par Frère Jehan Thenaud*, cited in Schefer's *Nassiri Khosrau*, 133.

"It has been supposed that Saladin designed the Citadel of Cairo to protect himself against a possible insurrection of the partisans of the late dynasty. A sufficient explanation, however, is found in his early associations: every Syrian city had its citadel or fortress, and experience had shown many a time that the town might be taken whilst the citadel remained impregnable, a refuge for the people and a means of recuperation. Therefore Cairo must have a citadel too. It might soon be needed as a tower of defence against his liege-lord Nūr-ed-dīn himself. Saladin had propitiated the king of Syria with presents from the treasures of the Fāṭimid palace; prayers were offered for him as sovereign lord every Friday in the mosques, above all in the great mosque of Ḥākim, which temporarily supplanted the Azhar as the chief mosque of the city; and his name appeared on the coins struck by Saladin at Cairo. But in spite of this nominal subjection and the absence of all symbols of personal sovereignty, Saladin was virtually his own master; and supported as he was by a strong army commanded by his brothers and nephews, he was in fact king of Egypt. Nūr-ed-dīn was well aware of this, but his difficulties with the Franks, with the Selǧūḳ Sultan of Rūm, and with various contentious rulers in Mesopotamia, left him no leisure to clip the wings of his vassal in Egypt. He could not even count upon his co-operation in the Holy War; for Saladin was convinced that if once his suzerain had the chance of seizing his person, there would be an end of his power; and nothing could induce him to venture within Nūr-ed-dīn's reach. Not only this, but he seems to have carried this dread so far that he preferred to have

Fig. 43.—Dīnār of Nūr-ed-dīn, issued by Saladin, Cairo, 1173.

the Franks on his borders as an obstacle to Nūr-ed-dīn's advance."[1]

This dread in some measure accounts for his desultory and half-hearted attacks upon Montréal and Karak, near the Dead Sea, in 1171 and 1173, and it is conjectured with much probability that his southern campaigns of 1173-4 were undertaken with a view to providing a place of retreat in case Nūr-ed-dīn carried out his threat of invading Egypt. A division of Saladin's army had already conquered the African littoral from Barḳa to Gabes in 1172-3; but this strip of coast offered no strategic position for defence. The expedition to the Sūdān was prompted by the necessity for castigating 1173
the retreating but still rebellious blacks, but another probable object was to examine the resources of the country as a possible refuge. Saladin's elder brother, Tūrānshāh, after pursuing the blacks into Nubia, took the city of Ibrīm (the Roman Primis) near Korosko, pillaged the church of the monophysite Christians, tortured the bishop, and satisfied his Muslim prejudice by slaughtering 700 of the pigs that there abounded.[2] But his report on the climate and products of the Sūdān was discouraging, and Saladin sent him to Arabia to seek a better country. Tūrānshāh reduced the whole of the Yemen (Arabia Felix), with its cities of Ṣan'ā, 'Aden, Zebīd, and G'ened, and established his government 1174
at Ta'izz, whence the Yemen was ruled by members of Saladin's family for fifty-five years.

The absence of a gallant general and a considerable army in the Yemen furnished an opportunity to the partisans of the Fāṭimids who still hoped to eject the young "mamlūk," as they called Saladin, from his seat, and to re-establish the old order, which promised better profits to the hangers-on of a luxurious court. The plot was generally ascribed to the Arab poet 'Omāra, but whoever was the original instigator, it found wide support. Egyptian and Sūdānī officers, abetted even by some of Saladin's jealous Turkmāns, joined in the con-

[1] Lane-Poole, *Saladin*, 118-120. [2] Abū-Ṣāliḥ, f. 96.

spiracy ; the kings of Sicily and Jerusalem were induced to co-operate by promises of gold and territory ; the master of the Assassins was invited to send some of his secret murderers ; and preparations were made for a combined attack by sea and land, in which Saladin was to be enmeshed. Fortunately the intended victim got wind of the secret, seized the leading conspirators, including the poet-politician, and crucified them all.
Apr. The inferior ranks of the plotters were exiled to Upper Egypt.

"The sea attack, which was to have supported the Cairo conspiracy, did not take place till the late summer. The Franks of Palestine did not move when they heard that the plot had failed ; but the king of Sicily, less well-informed, despatched a large fleet, estimated at 282
July vessels, which arrived off Alexandria on 28 July. The scanty garrison were completely taken by surprise, but they tried to resist the landing, which was nevertheless effected near the pharos. The catapults and mangonels which the Normans had brought were soon playing upon the curtain of the city walls, and the defenders were obliged to fight desperately all the first day till night fell, to resist the storming parties. The next day the Christians advanced their machines close up to the walls, but reinforcements had joined the garrison from the neighbouring villages, and again the attack was beaten off. On the third day, there was a vigorous sortie : the machines were burnt, the enemy lost severely, and the garrison returned flushed with triumph. Scarcely were they within the gates, when an express arrived from Saladin, to whom they had sent for support. The courier had ridden from Cairo that same day with relays of horses, and, reaching Alexandria between three and four in the afternoon, loudly proclaimed the approach of Saladin's army. The tidings put fresh heart into the defenders, and they rushed out again in the gathering darkness, fell upon the camp of the Normans, and drove them, some to the ships, some into the sea. The news that Saladin was on the march finished the fiasco : the Normans slipped their moorings and fled, as swiftly and

suddenly as they had come. The three days' wonder vanished on the horizon, and Alexandria breathed again."[1]

The conspiracy had been suppressed at Cairo in April; the Norman invasion was repelled in July; in the same month Amalric, the king of Jerusalem, died, and was succeeded by Baldwin, a child and a leper; but meanwhile a still greater obstacle to Saladin's career had been removed in May by the death of Nūr-ed-dīn, the noble sultan of Syria. By this far-reaching event, Saladin became at one bound the leading Muslim sovereign of the near East. His only possible rivals were Nūr-ed-dīn's son, a mere child, in Syria; Nūr-ed-dīn's nephew, Seyf-ed-dīn, the prince of Mōṣil and head of the family of Zengī; and the Seljūḳ sultan of Rūm or Asia Minor, and none of these was his equal in military power or capacity. To oppose the Crusaders successfully there must be one king and one consolidated Muslim empire, and these several principalities must be brought into line in a general advance. Thus began the second—the Syrian or Consolidating period of his career.

II. 1174-1186

Saladin dealt with them separately. Syria was, of course, his first object. Its child-king was in the hands of a clique, and the scheming emīrs were making terms with the Franks. An appeal from Damascus supplied the necessary justification for the first step. With only 700 picked horsemen, Saladin rode across the desert to the Syrian capital and took possession in the name of the child-king. Passing through Emesa and Ḥamāh, he reached Aleppo, where Nūr-ed-dīn's heir, or rather his wezīr, prudently shut the gate in his face. Saladin's protestations of loyalty to his old master's son were not believed, and an attempt was made to assassinate him by means of the emissaries of the "Old Man of the Mountain," whilst the Franks, under Count Raymond of Tripolis, made a diversion in favour of their Muslim ally. The siege of Aleppo was therefore raised, and Saladin was checked. He had to be content for the

1174 Nov.

Dec.

[1] Lane-Poole, *Saladin*, 127-8.

present with the possession of all Syria south of Aleppo. Nor was he allowed to hold this without interference. The

1175 Atābeg of Mōṣil despatched an army from Mesopotamia to combine with his cousin of Aleppo, and the joint forces marched upon Ḥamāh. In face of this formidable attack, Saladin essayed to make terms, but all overtures

Apr. 13 being rejected he won a brilliant victory at the Horns of Ḥamāh, and pursued the enemy up to the gates of

1176 Aleppo.[1] A second victory in the following year, at the

Apr. 11 Turkmān's Wells, over Seyf-ed-dīn himself, ended in the

July 29 total rout of the Mesopotamians, and a treaty of alliance with the young king of Aleppo, by which Saladin was recognized as sovereign over all the countries he had conquered, from Egypt almost to the Euphrates.

Fig. 44.—Dīnār of Saladin, Cairo, 1179.

An interval of six years passed (1177-82) before this first step was followed by the annexation of Mesopotamia. Peace reigned between Saladin and the house of Zengī, and there was also a nominal truce with the Crusaders, negotiated by Humphrey of Toron, whose friendship had even gone the length of admitting Saladin to the rank of

[1] Technically, Saladin's independent sovereignty dates from this victory, for it was only after this success that he issued coins in his own name. As wezīr of Egypt he had successively placed on the coinage the names of the Fāṭimid caliph el-'Āḍid (A.H. 565, 566, 1169-71 A.D.), and of Nūr-ed-dīn (A.H. 567, 569, 1171-4 A.D.), but never his own name. When he occupied Damascus, he placed the name of Nūr-ed-dīn's son eṣ-Ṣāliḥ on the copper coins, adding his own as well. In 570 (A.D. 1174-5, but undoubtedly in the latter year) for the first time gold coins of Cairo and Alexandria appeared with the titles of "the king strong to aid, Joseph son of Ayyūb," el-Melik en-Nāṣir Yūsuf ibn Ayyūb. The title el-Melik en-Nāṣir was bestowed upon him by the Fāṭimid caliph on his appointment as wezīr. There is a nearly complete series of Saladin's Cairo dīnārs from 570 to 589 (1175-93), and a less continuous series of Alexandria from 570 to 585. His Damascus and Aleppo coinages were in silver and copper, and he also used the mint Ḥamāh.

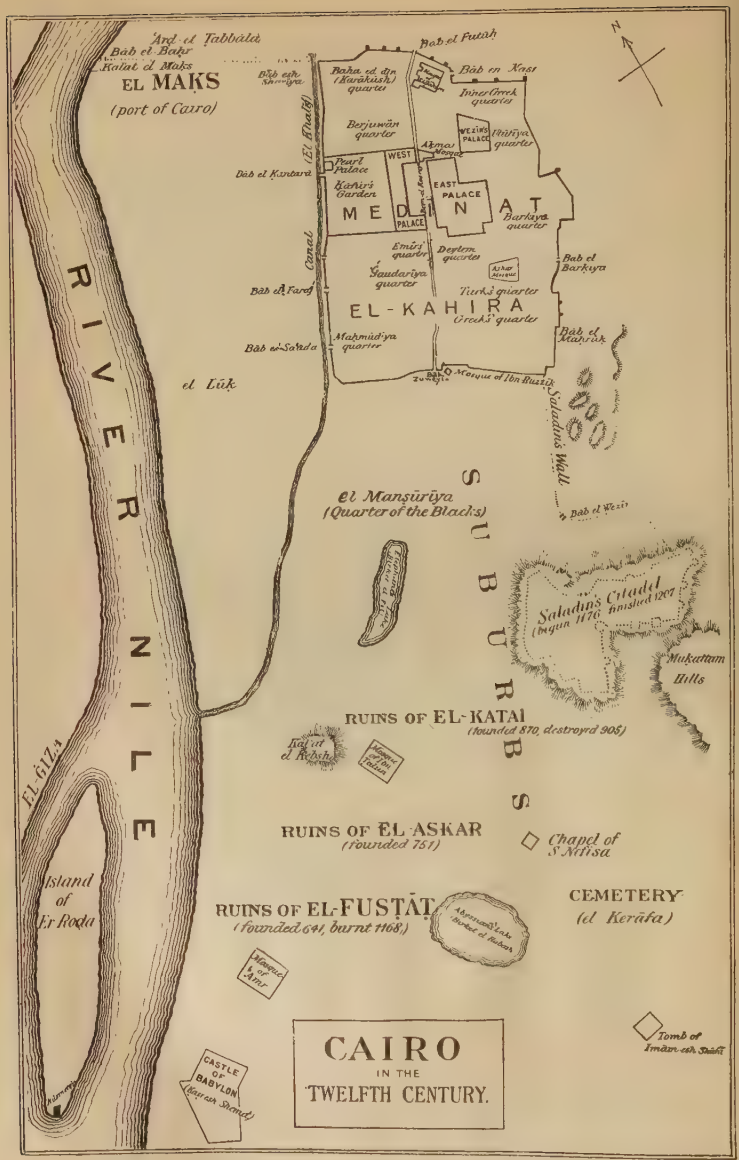
knighthood.[1] The organisation of his wide dominions, and the fortification of Cairo, occupied much of his time. The new stone walls were laid out, and the building of the Citadel was begun, though it was not finished till the reign of his nephew Kāmil thirty years later. The enceinte may still be recognized through a considerable extent of walls, but the citadel has so often been restored and remodelled by the Mamlūk sultans and by Moḥammad 'Alī Pasha, that it is difficult to identify much of the original work ;[2] the founder's inscription, however, may still be read over the old "Gate of the Steps," a dark portal in the west face of the original enceinte. It records how "the building of this splendid Citadel,—

Fig. 45.—Citadel of Cairo (drawn in 1798).

hard by Cairo the Guarded, on the terrace which joins use to beauty, and space to strength, for those who seek the shelter of his power,—was ordered by our master the

[1] *Itin. Reg. Ric.*, i. 3 ; cp. v. 11, and William of Tyre, xvii. 17, and *l'Ordène de Chevalerie.*

[2] See, however, the elaborate historical description of M. P. Casanova in *Mém. de la Miss. Arch.* vi., and M. van Berchem's *Notes d'Archéologie Arabe*, *Journ. Asiat.* 1891, where it is remarked that Saladin's citadel and enceinte belong to the French type of defences, introduced by the Crusaders, in contradistinction from the earlier Byzantine type employed by Bedr el-G'emāli in the second wall and the three existing gates.


'Ard el Ṭabbāla
Bāb el Bakr
Kalaat el Maks
EL MAKS
(port of Cairo)
Bāb el Futuh
Bāb en Nasr
Baḥa el dīn (Karākush) quarter
Bāb esh Shaʿriya
Khān el Khalīlī
Bīmaristān Kalāūn
Turkish quarter
Berjuwān quarter
WEZIR'S PALACE
Ghūriya quarter
AKMAR Mosque
WEST PALACE
EAST PALACE
Pearl Palace
Bāb el Kantara
Karākūsh Garden
MEDIAN
Barkiya quarter
Emīr's quarter
Bedrīya quarter
Gaudariya quarter
Turk's quarter
Bāb el Barkiya
Bāb el Fareḥ
EL-KAHIRA
Greeks' quarter
Bāb el Mahrūk
Bāb es-Sa'āda
Maḥmūdiya quarter
Mosque of Ibn Ruzzik
Saladin's Wall
el Lūk
RIVER NILE
El Manṣūrīya
(Quarter of the Blacks)
SUBURBS
Saladin's Citadel
(begun 1176, finished 1207)
Mukattam Hills
RUINS OF EL-KATAI
(founded 870, destroyed 905)
Kaṭāʾi el Kebīr
Mosque of Ibn Tulun
EL GIZA
RUINS OF EL-ASKAR
(founded 751)
Chapel of St Mīrsa
Island of Er Roda
RUINS OF EL-FUSṬĀṬ
(founded 641, burnt 1168)
CEMETERY
(el Kerāfa)
Mosque of Amr
Tomb of Imām esh Shāfi'
CASTLE OF BABYLON
(Ḥiṣn esh Shamʿ)
CAIRO
IN THE
TWELFTH CENTURY.

King Strong-to-aid, Honour of the World and the Faith, Conquest-laden, Yūsuf, son of Ayyūb, Restorer of the Empire of the Caliph ; with the direction of his brother and heir the Just King (el-'Ādil) Seyf-ed-din Abū-Bekr Moḥammad, friend of the Commander of the Faithful ; and under the management of the Emīr of his Kingdom and Support of his Empire Ḳarāḳūsh son of 'Abdallāh, the slave of el-Melik en-Nāṣir, in the year 579 (1183-4)."

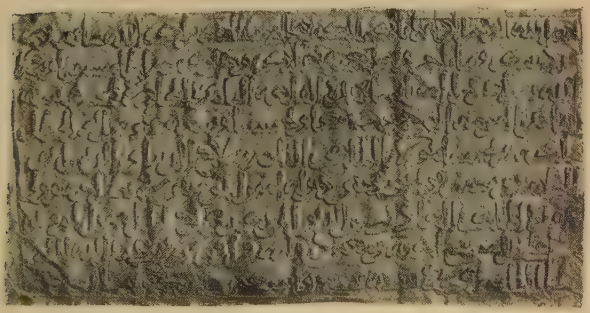


Fig. 46.—Saladin's inscription on the Gate of Steps in the Citadel of Cairo, 1183.

The famous "Well of the Winding Stairs," 280 feet deep, was excavated in the solid rock by the eunuch Ḳarāḳūsh under Saladin's orders ; but the other buildings (now demolished) associated with his name belonged to later times. The people of Egypt were proud to name public works after their great sultan, and thus his memory is preserved in the Cairo aqueduct (a Mamlūk work), and even in the chief canal of Upper Egypt, which is still known as the "River of Joseph," Baḥr Yūsuf, though it dates from the time of the Pharaohs. Saladin's chief public work outside Cairo was the great dike of G'īza, built (1183-4) like the Citadel with stones taken from the smaller pyramids, and carried on forty

arches along the border of the desert, as an outwork against a possible invasion from the west.[1]

But perhaps none of his innovations had more permanent influence than the *medresa* or collegiate mosque. Hitherto there had been no theological colleges at Cairo. Beyond the ordinary elementary schools, almost the only lectures that could be attended were given in the old mosque of 'Amr. The Fāṭimid "Hall of Science" was an exception, but it was largely devoted to initiation into the several degrees of Shī'a mysticism and the discussion of speculative philosophy. The college—or mosque where regular teaching was given, generally quite gratuitously, to all who came—was an innovation from Persia, introduced into Syria by Nūr-ed-dīn, and imported into Egypt by Saladin, who was eager to impart the Shāfi'ite form of orthodoxy to the misguided Egyptians. He founded colleges for this purpose at Alexandria and Cairo, the earliest being built close to the tomb of the Imām Shāfi'ī himself in the southern Kerāfa or cemetery. Others were the Nāṣirīya (or Sherīfiya) and Ḳamḥīya colleges near the mosque of 'Amr at Fusṭāṭ, and the Medresa of the Swordmakers, installed in the old palace of Ma·mūn in Cairo itself. None of these has been preserved, but it is only after Saladin's time that we find the familiar cruciform medresa or collegiate mosque with its four deep porticos, where the doctors of the four orthodox sects (Ḥanafi, Shāfi'ī, Mālikī, and Ḥanbalī) taught their circles of students.

In the administration of his kingdom Saladin had the valuable assistance of a faithful and learned servant. The Ḳāḍī el-Fāḍil, an Arab of Ascalon, had been in the secretariate of the Fāṭimid caliph since the time of el-'Ādil the wezīr, and on Saladin's accession to power became his chancellor or wezīr, and exercised great influence in that high office during the whole of the reign of Saladin and his son and grandson, until his own death in Jan., 1200. He was famous for his ornate style and the elegant finish of his despatches. Saladin trusted

[1] Maḳr., Khiṭaṭ, ii. 204, 151; Ibn-G'ubeyr, 49.

him implicitly. He was as devout and orthodox as his master, and also founded a theological college in Cairo. It was perhaps due to his rigid tenets that the Christians, who had been indulged under the later ignoble Fāṭimids, were subjected, if not to persecution, certainly to confiscations under the enlightened rule of Saladin.[1]

The six years' interval, however, was not wholly spent in works of peace. There were several brushes with the Franks, who had already forgotten their truce, and forayed the country about Damascus. Saladin retorted by invading their peculiar province, the Holy Land. At Tell G'ezer, near Ramla, he was surprised and utterly routed by king Baldwin backed by 375 knights, and had to ride for his life. It was his first, indeed his only, serious defeat. In three months, however, he was able to take the field again at Ḥimṣ with a fresh army, and in 1179 he won a brilliant victory over the king of Jerusalem at Marǵ Oyūn (Mergion), and took seventy knights prisoners, including the masters of the Temple and Hospital, Raymond of Tripolis, Balian and Baldwin of Ibelin, and Hugh of Tiberias. The victory was followed by the destruction of the castle at Jacob's Ford which the king had erected as a menace to the Saracens.

1177 Nov. 25

1179 June

Aug.

Fig. 47.—Gate of Steps in Citadel of Cairo, 1183.

[1] Abū-Ṣāliḥ, 25a, 67b, etc.

Meanwhile the Egyptian fleet of seventy vessels harried the coast of Palestine and brought back a thousand Christian prisoners, who were usefully employed in building the Citadel of Cairo. The winter was spent in equipping a larger navy, and when Saladin opened the campaign in the spring with a combined advance by sea
1180 and land, king Baldwin prudently proposed a truce, which was forthwith concluded for two years and confirmed by solemn oaths. Turning north to Cilicia, Saladin entered into negotiations with the Selǵūḳ sultan of Ḳōnīya, the king of Lesser Armenia, and the princes of Mōṣil, G'ezīra, Irbil, Keyfā, and Māridīn, who all set
Oct. 2 their seals to a solemn pact, whereby they bound themselves on oath to keep peace and amity with one another for the space of two years. For this time war was to be unknown within their borders, and a holy truce, a *Magna Pax Saracenica*, was to reign throughout the near East.

The great truce showed that Saladin's influence now overawed all smaller powers from the Black Sea and the Persian Gulf to the Mediterranean, and the temporary union of all the neighbouring Muslim states was a long step towards that united effort which he intended to make against the crusading powers. It was the beginning of the policy which used the warlike tribesmen of Mesopotamia as recruits for the Holy War. The death
1181 of Nūr-ed-dīn's son, the king of Aleppo, and the perfidious negotiations between the Mesopotamian princes and the Franks, opened the way; and when Saladin left Cairo, as it proved for ever, on 11 May, 1182, it was to carry out his great schemes as the champion of Islam. After some engagements with the Franks, and an unsuccessful
1182- siege of Beyrūt, he marched into Mesopotamia and
1183 subdued the whole country, excepting the city of Mōṣil.
1183 June Aleppo was purchased by exchange; and, after two unsuccessful but exhausting sieges, Mōṣil at last consented
1186 May to become Saladin's vassal. By this treaty the whole of Northern Mesopotamia and part of Kurdistān were permanently joined to his empire.

The object of his long and arduous campaigns on the

Tigris and Euphrates had been attained. He had now allies instead of enemies on his northern flank. Before this no invasion of the Christian territory could safely be undertaken without posting an army of observation to guard against attack from the north ; but now he could advance with confidence. He had also more troops at his back, and could not only command the full strength of his Syrian and Egyptian levies, but also count upon large contingents from the Mesopotamian provinces. In the Holy War, upon which he was now to embark in deadly earnest, all the great barons of those parts came to reinforce the Muslim army, and the princes of Zengī's line, the lords of Mōṣil, Sinǵār, G'ezīra, Irbil, Ḥarrān, and even the Kurds from beyond the Tigris, swelled the general muster with their vassals and retainers.

Fig. 48.—Dirhem (silver coin) of Saladin, Aleppo, 1186.

Thus prepared and strengthened, Saladin entered upon the third period of his career—the Palestinian or Aggressive. There had been provocations and reprisals for several years. Reginald of Châtillon, lord of Karak, had entered the Red Sea, seized pilgrim ships, and even invaded Arabia with the intention of destroying the tomb of the Prophet at Medīna and the Ka'ba at Mekka. He was pursued by the Egyptian fleet, and his expedition was cut to pieces. In Palestine there had been an indecisive battle near La Fève (el-Fūla), and twice had Saladin laid unsuccessful siege to Reginald's impregnable fortress of Karak. A treaty of peace for four years was then arranged by Raymond of Tripolis, (the regent of the infant king Baldwin V), who was personally on terms of friendship if not actual alliance with Saladin ; but the peace was a hollow form whilst all Europe was beating to arms, and English knights from the Cheviots to the Pyrenees were taking the Cross, and

1183 Apr. Oct. Nov. 1184 Aug.

the two great military orders were burning, as ardently as Saladin himself, to strike a blow for the faith. The smallest spark would kindle the conflagration. The spark came from Reginald of Chatillon, who for the third time, in spite of the treaty, pounced upon a peaceful caravan of merchants who were journeying past his stronghold. It was not only a rich prize, but was rumoured to include one of Saladin's sisters. The provocation was ample ; Saladin vowed to kill the truce-breaker with his own hand, and kept his word.

III. 1187-1193 The history of the Holy War of 1187 to 1192 is familiar to students, and forms no part of the history of Egypt. The order of events is all that need be mentioned.

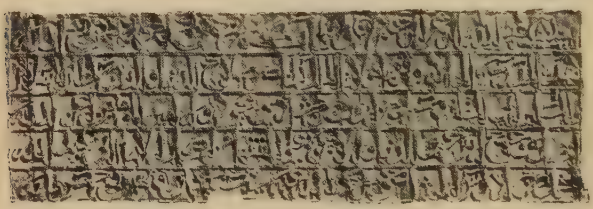


Fig. 49.—Saladin's inscription at church of St. Anne, Jerusalem, 1192.

1187 July 4 The crushing defeat of the Crusaders under their new king, Guy of Lusignan, at Ḥiṭṭīn, near Tiberias, was followed by the rapid conquest of Palestine. Saladin's army spread over the Holy Land, and the whole kingdom of Jerusalem, with the exception of a few castles and fortified cities, was subdued in a month. Ascalon fell in September, and on 2 October Jerusalem itself capitulated on honourable terms. Tyre alone escaped capture in the first rush of conquest, almost by a miracle ; and its second successful resistance (Nov., Dec.) was the turning point in Saladin's victorious career. The county of Tripolis and the principality of Antioch, all the coast cities north of Tyre, were easily occupied in a single 1188 brilliant campaign, May—Sept., 1188, and Antioch itself was obliged to agree to a humiliating truce. The great

inland fastnesses of Belvoir, Safed, and Karak, that still held out, were taken in December and January. Nothing remained of all the conquests of the Crusaders but Tyre and Belfort.

Tyre, however, was the rallying point of the Franks. Thither the garrisons let free by Saladin, with more magnanimity than prudence, as each city or fortress capitulated, immediately betook themselves. Thither came king Guy and most of the nobles and knights who had been released on their solemn pledge never again to bear arms against the sultan. From Tyre marched the army which began the memorable siege of 'Akka,[1] and welcomed the powerful reinforcements of the third Crusade. Tyre was the fatal wooden horse of Saladin's Troy. Had he overcome the impatience or revived the exhaustion of his troops, and sacrificed every other interest to the one object of taking Tyre, there might have been no siege of 'Akka and no third Crusade. Without that ποῦ στῶ even Richard of England would have found it hard to bring his Danish battle-axe to bear upon the Saracens.

The siege of 'Akka by Guy of Lusignan began on 1189
28 August, 1189; the siege of the besiegers by Saladin began two days later. The first great battle between the Franks and the double enemy—the garrison within and the relieving army encircling the Christians—was fought on 4 October, and ended in the repulse of the Crusaders with heavy loss. Saladin neglected to follow up his victory, and the Franks spent the winter in entrenching and strengthening their position before 'Akka. In the spring the reports of the approach of the 1190
German crusade under Frederick Barbarossa drew off a large part of the Saracen forces. A second great attack on the Muslims on 25 July, however, was severely punished; but the success was not followed up, and the chances of annihilating the besieging army were sensibly diminished by the landing of Henry of Champagne with 10,000 fresh men. The siege and countersiege went on, with constantly lessening hopes for the Saracens. The

[1] The Arabic 'Akka represents the ancient Akko. The modern French spelling, Acre, should be abandoned in English.

Duke of Swabia brought the survivors of the German army into 'Akka in October, and the first English fleet arrived
Oct. 12 in the same month. Still Saladin more than held his own. An attempt of the Christians to bring in pro-
Nov. 12-14 visions from Haifa was checked by a strenuous engagement at the Spring-Head, and then winter turned the plain into a sea of mud, and both sides waited for the spring, while famine and fever decimated the Christian camp. Meanwhile Saladin had revictualled 'Akka, and relieved the exhausted garrison.

1191 The leaders of the third Crusade at last arrived: Philip of France at Easter, Richard of England on 8 June. With such reinforcements the long siege soon
July 12 came to an end. On 12 July 'Akka surrendered. Saladin was no party to this act of the exhausted garrison, but he had been unable to relieve it, and was forced to accept the situation. Negotiations for peace had been opened before the capitulation, and were concluded after it; but some delay in carrying out the stipulations with regard to the surrender of Christian
Aug. 16 prisoners so exasperated Richard that he massacred 2700 Muslim prisoners in cold blood in sight of the two camps. There was no more talk of peace, and the king of England (Philip had already set off on his return to France) marched down the coast with the intention of taking Ascalon and then striking inland for Jerusalem. Saladin hung upon the Crusaders during the whole
Sept. 7 march, but after a defeat at Arsūf he was obliged to draw off his forces to Ramla, and, on the approach of
1192 Jan., winter, to Jerusalem. Two attempts to march on the
June Holy City brought Richard actually in sight of his goal, but dissensions in the mixed council of the Crusaders and the increased strength of the Saracens frustrated the design. Richard retired disappointed to 'Akka, and
July 27 Saladin seized the opportunity to make a dash upon Jaffa, which was immediately relieved and defended by the king of England and a handful of knights—the most brilliant feat of the whole war, of which both sides were now weary. Ever since the battle of Arsūf negotiations for peace had been carried on in a desultory manner;

but now that Richard was ill and the state of England urgently called for his presence, they were pressed to a conclusion, and a treaty was signed for three years, by Sept. which the Crusaders retained the coast cities from 'Akka to Jaffa, and pilgrims were permitted to visit the holy places at Jerusalem.

The Holy War had lasted five years. Before the decisive victory at Ḥiṭṭīn in July, 1187, not an inch of Palestine west of the Jordan was in Muslim hands. After the peace of Ramla in September, 1192, the whole land was Muslim territory except a narrow strip of coast from Tyre to Jaffa. To recover this strip the whole of Europe had risen in arms, and hundreds of thousands of Crusaders had fallen. The result hardly justified the cost. Saladin, on the other hand, came out of the war with power unshaken. He had been loyally supported by the whole strength of his empire and his vassals, from Egypt to the Tigris: Kurds, Turkmāns, Syrians, Arabs, and Egyptians mingled in his armies, and all were Muslims and his servants when he called upon them for an effort. Not a province had fallen away, only one youthful vassal rebelled for an instant, though the trials and sufferings of the long campaigns had severely taxed the soldiers' endurance and faith in their leader. After the war was over he still reigned unchallenged from the mountains of Kurdistān to the Libyan desert, and far beyond these borders the king of Georgia, the Catholicos of Armenia, the Sultan of Ḳōniya, even the emperor of Constantinople, were eager for his alliance. He lived to see the triumph of his life's ambition: he had driven the Christians out of the Holy City and restored the unity of Islam. The exhaustion of the long campaigns, however, had enfeebled his never robust health, and a fever carried him off at Damascus, six 1193 months after the peace. The popular conception of his Mar. 4 character has not erred. Magnanimous, chivalrous, gentle, sympathetic, pure in heart and life, ascetic and laborious, simple in his habits, fervently devout, and only severe in his zeal for the faith, he has been rightly held to be the type and pattern of Saracen chivalry.

CHAPTER VIII

SALADIN'S SUCCESSORS

(THE AYYŪBIDS)

1193—1250

Authorities.—Ibn-el-Athīr, Abū-Shāma, 'Abd-el-Laṭīf, Ibn-Khallikān, Joinville, Abū-l-Fidā, el-Maḳrīzī, el-'Aynī;—modern, Kugler, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge*, Winkelmann, *Kaiser Friedrich II*, Röhricht, *Beiträge zur Geschicht'e der Kreuzzüge*, and various arts.; cf. *Regesta regni Hierosol.*

Monuments.—Tomb of Imām Shāfi'ī, 1211; completion of the citadel of Cairo; medresa of el-Kāmil (almost disappeared), 1224; tombs of emīr Ismā'īl, 1216, and Sheykh el-Fārisī, 1225; minaret of (old) Ḥasaneyn, 1235-6; medresa of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, 1243.

Inscriptions.—On monuments enumerated above; 'Ādil on fortress at Mt. Tabor, 1211.

Casket of el-'Ādil II in V. & A. Mus.; *Coins.*—See under each reign.

Since 1182, when Saladin left Cairo for the last time, Egypt had played a subsidiary part in the empire of which it was the head. The centre of politics was removed to Syria, and Egypt had to be content to act as a recruiting-ground for the levies which its sultan was constantly demanding for the reinforcement of his exhausted armies. The practice throughout these wars was to fight in the summer; and when the winter rains stopped military movements in Syria and Palestine the various contingents were sent to their homes to recover health and attend to their farms. In Egypt this practice saved much hardship, for the winter was the season for the principal agricultural operations. During the sultan's absence, his brother el-'Ādil Seyf-ed-dīn, the "Saphadin" of the Crusaders, administered Egypt with the assistance of the Ḳāḍī el-Fāḍil. In 1184, indeed, he was trans-

THE AYYUBID DYNASTIES

The subjoined tables (taken from *The Mohammadan Dynasties*, by the present writer) show the succession of the various members of the Ayyūbid family in the seven chief divisions of the empire. They all descended from five sons of Ayyūb—Saladin, ʻĀdil, Shāhānshāh, Tūrānshāh, and Tughtegīn,—except the Emesa branch which descended from Shīrkūh, Ayyūb's brother. An upright stroke between successive names indicates sonship.

A.—EGYPT.

	A.D.
En-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn Yūsuf (*Saladin*) .	1169
El-ʻAzīz ʻOthmān (son)	1193
El-Manṣūr Moḥammad	1198
El-ʻĀdil Seyf-ed-dīn * (*Saphadin*) . .	1200
El-Kāmil Moḥammad *	1218
El-ʻĀdil II *	1238
Eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb * (brother) . . .	1240
El-Muʻaẓẓam Tūrānshāh * . . .	1249
El-Ashraf Mūsā	1250
	—1252

* These Sulṭāns also ruled at Damascus.

D.—MESOPOTAMIA.

	A.D.
El-Awḥad Ayyūb (son of ʻĀdil) . . .	1200?
El-Ashraf Mūsā (son of ʻĀdil, *see Damascus*)	1210
El-Muẓaffar Ghāzī (son of ʻĀdil) . .	1230
	—1245

E.—ḤAMĀH.

El-Muẓaffar I Taḳī-ed-dīn ʻOmar (son of Shāhānshāh) . . .	1178
El-Manṣūr I Moḥammad . . .	1191
En-Nāṣir Ḳilij-Arslān	1220
El-Muẓaffar II Maḥmūd (brother) . .	1229
El-Manṣūr II Moḥammad . . .	1244
El-Muẓaffar III Maḥmūd . . .	1284

El-'Ādil Seyf-ed-dīn (*see Egypt*) . . 1196
|
El-Mu'aẓẓam 'Īsā 1218
|
En-Nāṣir Dāwūd 1227
El-Ashraf Mūsā (*of Mesopotamia*) . . 1228
Eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl (son of 'Ādil) . . 1237
El-Kāmil (*of Egypt*) 1238
El-'Ādil II ,, ... 1238
Eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl (restored) . . . 1239
Eṣ-Ṣāliḥ (*of Egypt*) 1245
El-Mu'aẓẓam (*of Egypt*) . . . 1249
En-Nāṣir Yūsuf (*of Aleppo*) . . . 1250
—1260

C.—ALEPPO.

Eẓ-Ẓāhir Ghāzī (son of Saladin) . . 1186
|
El-'Azīz Moḥammad 1216
|
En-Nāṣir Yūsuf (*see Damascus*) . . 1236
—1260

cousin of the last) 1310
El-Afḍal Moḥammad 1332
—1341

F.—EMESA (ḤIMṢ).

El-Ḳāhir Moḥammad (son of Shīrkūh) . 1178
|
El-Muǵāhid Shīrkūh II 1185
|
El-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm 1239
|
El-Ashraf Mūsā 1245
—1262

G.—ARABIA.

El-Mu'aẓẓam Tūrānshāh (brother of Saladin) 1173
Seyf-el-Islām Tughtegīn (brother of Saladin) 1181
Mu'izz-ed-dīn Ismā'īl (son of Tughtegīn) 1196
En-Nāṣir Ayyūb (son of Tughtegīn) . 1201
El-Muẓaffar Suleymān (grandson of 'Omar) 1214
El-Mes'ūd Ṣalāḥ-ed-din-Yūsuf (son of Kāmil) 1215
—1228

[*To face p.* 212.

ferred to Aleppo and his nephew Taḳī-ed-dīn 'Omar sent to Egypt instead; but 'Omar proved intractable, and 'Ādil was restored to Cairo in 1186, with Saladin's second son el-'Azīz as nominal chief. 'Adil was the ablest of his brother's kinsmen, a good general and hard fighter, but also and beyond all a skilful diplomatist and shrewd politician. He loyally supported his brother in his campaigns, led the Egyptian contingent to the annual rendezvous in Palestine, distinguished himself especially in several engagements on the plain of 'Akka, and was indefatigable in beating up recruits, equipping ships, and supplying stores and money for Saladin's campaigns. He was personally on a friendly footing with Richard of England, and it was he, and not Saladin, who was a guest in the English camp. One of his sons was knighted by Cœur de Lion,[1] and "the noble Saphadin" was the intermediary to whom Richard applied when he negotiated the treaty of Ramla. Everything indicated el 'Ādil as the successor of his heroic brother.

Saladin, however, had naturally ordered the succession in favour of his own sons, three of whom, for some years before his death, had held the governments of the three 1193
chief provinces. The eldest, el-Afḍal, had Damascus and central Syria; el-'Azīz, Egypt; and ez-Ẓāhir, Aleppo. Their cousins ruled at Ḥamāh, Ḥimṣ, and Ba'albekk; and an uncle governed the Yemen. Mesopotamia and Diyār-Bekr became the special appanage of Saladin's brother el-'Ādil. From the beginning of this division, however, Egypt was clearly regarded as the supreme province. Damascus struck a coin, in the very year of Saladin's death, in the name of 'Azīz of Egypt, though Afḍal was its own ruler. But whatever homage was paid, there was no unity among the members of the family. 'Azīz besieged his brother in Damascus within the year, and though peace was patched up by the mediation of 1194
'Ādil and Ẓāhir, the quarrel broke out again in the

[1] *Itin. Reg. Ric.*, v. 11. A similar honour was accorded by Frederick II to the emīr Fakhr-ed-dīn, the general who afterwards commanded at Manṣūra against Louis IX.

following year, when Afḍal pursued his younger brother into Egypt as far as Bilbeys. Again the prudent uncle intervened, aided by the venerable Ḳāḍī el-Fāḍil,[1] who had been Saladin's chief adviser; and 'Azīz found himself saddled with 'Ādil as his minister at Cairo, to the detriment of his independent authority. 'Ādil had been a loyal right hand to his brother, but he was not the man to let sentiment stand in the way of his own advance. Saladin's sons were breaking up the empire, and 'Ādil resolved to reunite it under his own personal command.

The key of the situation he knew to be Egypt. He had carefully argued Afḍal out of his design of seizing Cairo, because he wanted it for himself. Afḍal, a pleasure-loving, wine-bibbing profligate, would be a danger to Egypt; whereas 'Azīz had all the virtues and the special merit of being peculiarly biddable. He was "full of generosity," says one who knew him,[2] "most brave and modest, a youth of high morals and no touch of avarice: he knew not how to say no." This was the proper instrument for 'Adil to play on. The two agreed to oust Afḍal from Damascus, where his tardy self-reform could not efface the memory of his weaknesses. The
1196 July city was easily occupied, and delivered over to 'Ādil as viceroy under 'Azīz. Friendly with Egypt and master of central Syria, 'Ādil now went north to settle his Mesopotamian possessions (1198-9), which after Saladin's death had been threatened by his old rival, the Atābeg of Mōṣil. He speedily reduced the country to order, and from that time up to the Mongol invasion the Euphrates country remained in the hands of his sons.

1198 Nov. 'Ādil was recalled from the north by the news of the early death of 'Azīz,[3] from a fever caught whilst hunting in the Fayyūm, and of the immediate arrival of the

[1] El-Fāḍil died in Jan., 1199, and his colleague the secretary 'Imād-ed-dīn in 1201. See Lane-Poole, *Saladin*, 187-9.

[2] 'Abd-el-Laṭīf, ed. Sacy, 469.

[3] El-'Azīz struck coins at Cairo A.H. 589—595 (1193-8 A.D.); at Alexandria, 589—595; Damascus, 589 and 594; and Aleppo, 592 (1196). The last two were issued by 'Ādil and Ẓāhir, without their own names, in token of vassalage.

family scapegrace, Afḍal, at Cairo. Here he posed as guardian to his brother's infant heir, el-Manṣūr,[1] and took the opportunity to lead the Egyptian troops to the conquest of Damascus, aided by Ẓāhir of Aleppo, who shared his brother's hatred of their uncle. But 'Ādil was at Damascus before them, the besiegers retired, and Afḍal was forced to capitulate and to deliver up Egypt. 'Ādil was now master of the whole of Saladin's empire,[2] with the exception of Arabia and of northern Syria, where the three dynasties of Aleppo, Ḥimṣ, and Ḥamāh, whilst recognizing his supremacy and rendering military service, maintained their own virtual independence. The child Manṣūr was soon deposed, and 'Ādil appointed his own sons as viceroys (*nāʾib*) over the various provinces under his control: el-Kāmil represented him in Egypt, el-Muʿaẓẓam at Damascus, el-Awhad, el-Fāʾiz, el-Ashraf, and el-Ḥāfiẓ in the several districts of the Tigris and Euphrates country.

1199

1200 Feb.

Fig. 50.—Dīnār of el-'Ādil, Alexandria, 1199.

Egypt was still the head of the empire, but it was passing through a period of distress. An exceptionally low Nile produced a failure of the crops in 1201, repeated in 1202, and famine and pestilence ensued. The Baghdād physician, 'Abd-el-Laṭīf, who lived at Cairo for ten years (1194—1204), attending the professors' lectures at the Azhar mosque, records the terrible experiences of the famine. The distress was so desperate

1201-2

[1] El-Manṣūr's coinage is dated A.H. 595, 596 (1198-9) at Cairo and Alexandria.

[2] El-'Ādil struck coins at Cairo A.H. 597—615 (1200—1218); Alexandria, 596—614; Damascus, 599—615; Mayyāfāriḳīn, 591 (1195); Ḥarrān, 591; Edessa, 601, 604 (1204-8). His name was also inscribed as suzerain on the coinage of eẓ-Ẓāhir of Aleppo, 599; el-'Azīz of Aleppo, 614; and el-Ashraf of Diyār-Bekr, 612.

that the inhabitants emigrated in crowds, whole quarters and villages were deserted, and those who remained abandoned themselves to atrocious practices. People habitually ate human flesh, even parents killed and cooked their own children, and a wife was found eating her dead husband raw. Men waylaid women in the streets to seize their infants, and baby fricassee and haggis of children's heads were ordinary articles of diet. When detected the criminals were burnt alive ; but few were caught. The very graves were ransacked for food. This went on from end to end of Egypt. The roads were death-traps, assassination and robbery reigned unchecked, and women were outraged by the multitude of reprobates whom anarchy and despair had set loose. Free girls were sold at five shillings apiece, and many women came and implored to be bought as slaves to escape starvation. An ox sold for 70 *D.*, and corn was over ten shillings the bushel. The corpses lay unburied in the streets and houses, and a virulent pestilence spread over the delta. In the country and on the caravan routes flocks of vultures, hyenas, and jackals mapped the march of death. Men dropped down at the plough, stricken with the plague. In one day at Alexandria an imām said the funeral prayers over 700 persons, and in a single month a property passed to forty heirs in rapid succession. The depreciation of property was disastrous. Owing to the decrease of population, house-rent in Cairo fell to one-seventh of its former price, and the carvings and furniture of palaces were broken up to feed the oven-fires. Violent earthquakes, which were also felt throughout Syria and as far north as Armenia, shook down countless houses, devastated whole cities, and increased the general misery.

Meanwhile 'Ādil was steadily consolidating his empire. His chief fear was that the Franks might take advantage of the internal divisions among Saladin's successors to renew the crusade. So, indeed, they did, but in so desultory and feeble a fashion that their efforts scarcely injured the Muslim power. Henry of Champagne, the titular king of Jerusalem, was too weak to venture on a

forward movement, and was obliged to be content to govern his coast cities and observe the truce which 'Azīz had prudently renewed on his accession. The prince of Antioch and Tripolis was perpetually engaged in keeping his neighbour, the Armenian king of Cilicia, at bay. There was no present danger from the Syrian Franks, and if a new crusade were to be set on foot, it must come from Europe. Again the pope, Celestine III, summoned the Christians to the Holy War. England and France were too busy with their own quarrel to listen to his appeal; but the emperor Henry VI took the cross in 1195, assembled an army of 60,000 men and a fleet of forty-four vessels on the Apulian coast, and despatched them under the command of the bishop of Würzburg to 'Akka, where they arrived in September, 1197. The Germans, however, were no welcome allies to the French followers of Henry of Champagne, and found themselves acting alone. 'Ādil took advantage of their hesitation to seize Jaffa, and the death of king Henry almost at the same time produced further confusion. Amalric of Lusignan, king of Cyprus, was chosen to succeed him on the imaginary throne of Jerusalem, and married his widow, Isabella, who had already survived three husbands. Not daring as yet to march on Jerusalem, the Germans, after defeating 'Ādil near Sidon, seized Beyrūt, which had already been dismantled on their approach, and then in concert with Boemond of Antioch prepared an attack upon the Holy City. At this moment the news came of the sudden death of their emperor; the Germans abandoned the siege of Toron (Tubnīn) and hurried home, and 'Ādil and 'Azīz were content to make peace.

1197 Sept.

1198 Feb.

The Latin Crusade, fortunately for the Muslims, stopped at Constantinople, where it established the Latin kingdom, which lasted for nearly half a century and drew off many adventurers from the Christian forces in Syria. Beyond a few skirmishes in the neighbourhood of Crac des Chevaliers and Markab, and a raid upon the coast of Egypt, no hostilities of importance took place, and in 1204 Amalric made a fresh truce with the Egyp-

1203

tian sultan, who was glad to purchase tranquillity by the restoration of Jaffa and Ramla to the Franks. A similar truce was concluded with Tripolis in 1207. The sultan was a born diplomatist, and always preferred a treaty to a battle. He secured powerful support and corresponding immunity by the commercial treaty which he negotiated with Venice in 1208, whereby the Venetians acquired special trading facilities in Alexandria and up the Nile in return for their alleged good offices in restraining the Crusaders from an advance upon Egypt. Meanwhile Amalric had died in 1205, and his stepdaughter Mary (Isabella's child by Conrad of Montferrat) succeeded to the crown of Jerusalem, and was provided with a
1210 husband, John of Brienne, who was presently to show himself a vigorous Crusader; but at first his forces were unequal to any attempt upon the Holy City. Pope Innocent III again sounded the war-cry, but the first response,
1212 the luckless "Children's Crusade," only filled Egypt with youthful captives, betrayed to the enemy. Ashamed, perhaps, at the heroic example of the "children," Andreas, king of Hungary, supported by the grand-duke Leopold of Austria, Hugh of Cyprus, the king of Armenia, Ranulf of Chester, and many nobles and
1217 Oct. prelates, landed a considerable force at 'Akka, and Hungarians, South Germans, Frisians, and Rhinelanders, flocked to their standards. They made three useless expeditions, first to Beysān and even beyond the Jordan; then to the fortress which 'Adil had built on Mount Tabor, which they failed to take; and thirdly against Beaufort. The sultan of Egypt watched their movements, but dared not risk an engagement. Finally the king of Hungary went home in deep chagrin, but some of the Germans remained and helped to strengthen the coast fortresses, and especially to build Castle Pilgrim (Mons Peregrinus) near Ḥaifa.

Before this the Crusaders had begun to realize that the best way of overcoming an enemy is to strike at his vital part. Egypt was the vital part of the Muslim empire, and until Egypt were subdued, petty raids in Palestine were merely a waste of strength. Reinforced

by a fleet of Frisians and men of the Rhine, John of Brienne at last plucked up courage to make a descent upon Damietta. The king of Jerusalem was accompanied by the archduke of Austria, Count William of Holland, the Count of Wied, and the masters of the Temple, Hospital, and Teutonic order, and a large army was soon encamped on the shore of the delta. Damietta was strongly fortified by a triple bastioned wall, by a great tower planted on an island in the Nile, by chains stretched across the river, and by the natural advantages of its position on a peninsula partly defended by water. 1218 Apr. May

Fig. 51.—Carved border of a sheykh's tomb, 1216.

The Crusaders were on the west bank, and their efforts were directed to capturing the great tower in mid-stream. They set up siege-towers on their ships, with scaling ladders, but the fire and shot of the garrison, strongly supported by Kāmil's army on the east bank, withstood their first assault. They then lashed vessels together and built a yet more powerful castle, with a drawbridge, and moored it alongside the river tower; and on St. Bartholomew's Day, after a fierce struggle, the defenders were forced to capitulate. July 1 Aug. 24

The loss of this bulwark of Egypt killed the sultan,

'Ādil died on 31 August, 1218, at the age of seventy-three or seventy-five. He had enjoyed a long and brilliant career from the day, fifty years before, when he had entered Egypt with Shīrkūh. He had served his famous brother loyally and with exceptional ability for nearly a quarter of a century, and after his death he had spent another twenty-five years in laboriously restoring the powerful empire which Saladin's jealous sons had broken up. He had succeeded in all his plans. Every part of Saladin's empire, except northern Syria, was under his control and governed by one or other of his many sons. Cairo, Damascus, Edessa, Ḥarrān, G'a'bar, Mayyāfāriḳīn, even the Yemen, had each a son of the great sultan for its governor, and his frequent journeys from end to end of his empire kept each and all in a high state of efficiency and preparedness :—

> A Monarch, whose majestic air
> Fills all the range of sight, whose care
> Fills all the regions everywhere ;
> Who such a watch doth keep
> That, save where he doth set his lance
> In *rest* to check the foe's advance,
> His eye with bright and piercing glance
> Knows neither *rest* nor sleep.[1]

The Franks had been powerless against him ; their little raids had scarcely injured him ; and the few sacrifices of territory he had made—Beyrūt, Jaffa, Nazareth—were well repaid by long intervals of tranquillity, during which he was continually increasing his strength. His personal character must have been attractive, for he won the admiration and friendship of King Richard and many other Crusaders. His oriental biographer[2] describes him as a man of extraordinary prudence and foresight, armed with information and fortified by experience, and therefore fortunate in all his undertakings. He was endowed

[1] Bahā-ed-dīn Zuheyr, ii. 258, paraphrased by Palmer to preserve the play upon the Arabic word for slumber or rest. Bahā-ed-dīn was a contemporary poet, who afterwards became the confidant and court poet of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, 'Ādil's grandson.

[2] Ibn-Khallikān, iii. 235 ff.

with remarkable physical powers, sound health, and high spirits; a great eater, who could finish off a roast lamb at a meal; passionately fond of women: he indulged in pleasure with his whole soul, and, like other strong men, made the most of his enjoyments as he did of his work.

He left to his eldest son the difficult task of driving 1218 out the Franks. El-Kāmil[1] inherited many of his father's qualities: he was a good soldier and a skilful diplomatist —too wily, indeed, for the taste of his contemporaries. He set to work at Damietta with great energy, threw a bridge or pontoon over the Nile to obstruct the Frankish vessels, and led repeated but fruitless assaults upon the enemy's position. When the bridge was cut by the Crusaders, he sank ships to block the passage. Camp fever and the Nile inundation did the Christians more damage than his onslaughts, but the very unhealthiness of their camp compelled them to advance. They determined to cross at all hazards, and with this object they deepened a large canal and thus brought their fleet up to a spot thirteen miles south of Damietta. Though 1219 at the first attempt they were frustrated by the solid array of Kāmil's troops on the opposite bank, a conspiracy among the leading Muslim generals, which threatened the sultan's throne, if not his life, and forced him to fly by night up country, produced such confusion that the Crusaders crossed almost unopposed, captured Feb. 7 the Saracen camp, and closed round Damietta. But their difficulties were not yet over. Kāmil, aided by his brother Mu'azzam of Damascus, raised a new army, harassed the besiegers night and day, burnt their bridges, and destroyed their siege-works and entrenchments. In spite of all his efforts, however, the blockade was maintained, and starvation began to do its part. The weary Crusaders were constantly relieved and reinforced from Europe; French and English knights and men-at-arms

[1] El-Kāmil's coinage is dated Cairo, 616—35 (1219—38); Alexandria, 617—34; Miṣr, 624; Damascus, 615—19, 627; Ḥarrān, 623, 635. He also is named as suzerain on coins of el-'Azīz of Aleppo, 619; el-Ashraf of Diyār-Bekr, 615, and el-Muẓaffar of Diyār-Bekr, 618, 63x.

under the counts of Nevers and Marche and the earls of Winchester, Arundel, and Chester, came to their support; whilst the still more exhausted garrison steadily dwindled, till of about 50,000 men only 4000 remained able to stand to arms. The contest was too unequal to last much longer.

Seeing this the sultan asked for terms. He offered to surrender the whole of the kingdom of Jerusalem as it was before Saladin's conquest of 1187, if Damietta were spared. Incredible as it appears, this amazingly profitable exchange was refused as inadequate: further concessions were demanded. The Crusaders were in no humour for terms of any kind. The papal legate, cardinal Pelagius, who had been elected commander-in-chief, filled with the exaltation of a pilgrim of the cross, would have no traffic with the "infidels"; others held that Damietta was too valuable a commercial centre to be abandoned. The king of Jerusalem and the northern knights in vain urged the advantages of the exchange. The cardinal carried the day, and it was resolved to press the war to the uttermost. The greatest opportunity that the Crusaders had ever been offered was irretrievably lost. When Philip Augustus, who had known how the Saracens could fight before 'Akka, heard that the Crusaders had refused to take a kingdom in exchange for a city, he exclaimed, "They are fools and simpletons!" It is true
Nov. 5 Damietta fell by assault, the remnant of the exhausted garrison was ruthlessly massacred, and the alarm of the Muslims was such that they hastily demolished the walls of Jerusalem and other cities in Palestine, lest they might become strongholds of the enemy. But the taking of Damietta did not imply the conquest of Egypt. With their usual incapacity the Franks delayed action, and spent a year and a half at Damietta quarrelling amongst
1221 themselves. It was not till July, 1221, that, again strongly reinforced from Germany, they took the field against the sultan. Moreover, they had chosen the wrong route for the conquest of Egypt. Damietta was a valuable port, but it was not the base from which to advance upon Cairo, the essential objective of attack.

Any army marching on the capital of Egypt would naturally choose the old road from Pelusium to Bilbeys. It had been used again and again by invaders, from the days of Cambyses and Alexander to the conquest of 'Amr and the expeditions of Amalric I. Beyond the hardships of a desert march, it presented no obstacles to the advance upon Cairo. But between Damietta and the capital lay a network of canals and arms of the Nile, offering a dozen obvious positions of defence, and constituting a series of traps to an invading army which was totally ignorant of the geography of the country.[1]

By this time Kāmil had built strong fortifications on the Nile, a little south of Damietta, at a village which he afterwards enlarged into the city of el-Manṣūra, "the Victorious." He had also summoned his kinsmen, and one and all, laying aside their rivalries in face of the common danger, rallied to his support. Mu'aẓẓam of Damascus had joined him from the first, and now the princes of Aleppo, Ḥamāh, Ḥimṣ, Ḥarrān, and every part of the empire, led their contingents to the rescue of their chief. Never since Saladin lay before 'Akka had the dynasty shown a more united front than when they lined the bank of the Nile to dispute the passage of the Crusaders.

The Franks had advanced southwards, but were July
speedily brought to a stand by the obstacle of Manṣūra and its resolute garrison of hardy Syrians and highlanders from the north, entrenched behind the "canal of Ushmūm," the old Tanitic arm of the Nile. The season was ill-chosen, for the river was rising; a number of canals intersected the flat low-lying lands of the delta, impeded strategic movements, and enabled the Muslims to bring up a fleet to their support. As soon as the inundation had risen high enough, bodies of Muslim troops spread over the plains behind and around the enemy, and cut the dams which restrained the Nile waters; the country became a lake, and the Crusaders found themselves on a peninsula, surrounded by water and by watchful foes,

[1] See Oman, *Art of War in the Middle Ages*, 264-5.

and practically cut off alike from advance or retreat.
Aug. On the night of 26 August they made their desperate attempt to escape to Damietta by the narrow causeway that still remained passable. Hardly were they in motion when the enemy was upon them from every quarter. The road to the north was already occupied in force by the Saracens. Struggling through the inundated fields, enmeshed among the deeper canals, the knights fought their way with magnificent valour. For two nights and days the hopeless contest was maintained, and then the Crusaders cried for quarter. The more hot-headed Muslims were for exterminating the "infidels" at one blow; but Kāmil, true to the statesmanlike policy of his father, overruled them. He perceived that generous terms would end the war of the creeds, at least for a time, whilst a butchery would infallibly lead to a crusade of revenge and probably nerve the garrison of Damietta
Aug. 31 to resistance. He allowed the Crusaders to depart; they must evacuate Egypt, surrender Damietta, and keep the peace for eight years. The proviso was added, however, that any crowned European king should have the right to break the truce. A fresh reinforcement from Germany about this time landed near Damietta, and took the news of the treaty in very ill part; but repudiation was out of the question, whilst the main army and valuable hostages were still in the power of
Sept. 7 the Saracens. In a week the whole of the crusading host, which had begun the campaign forty months before with high hopes and signal success, left the shores of Egypt in shame.

All this time there had been no attempt to recover Jerusalem. The neglect was not due merely to strategical reasons. The spirit of the Crusaders had changed; zeal for the faith had mellowed into worldly wisdom. The men on the spot, the Franks settled in Syria, preferred their wealthy coast cities, full of Italian traders and bordered by rich cultivated lands, to the desolate interior of Palestine, laid waste by the struggle with Saladin and the systematic neglect of his successors, who had no wish to tempt the Christians to an occupation. The mer-

chants, and especially the Venetians, seeing no commercial advantages in arid plains, deserted villages, and waterless routes, had fixed their eyes on Damietta and Alexandria, which to them were worth fifty Jerusalems. The old craving for the city of Christ's passion had been quenched in the appetite for wealth. Yet the spirit was not dead: it still animated the indomitable bishops of Rome, and, despite his philosophical attitude towards religion, the call of Christendom compelled the young emperor Frederick II to undertake a new crusade. The peace of 1221 had reserved to a "European crowned head" the right of rupture, and Frederick was clearly indicated in the proviso. He had taken the cross as early as 1215; he had sent troops to reinforce the luckless army in Egypt at the very time of its surrender; in 1225 he married the "heiress of Jerusalem," the daughter of King John of Brienne, and, though Yolande died three years later, he claimed and assumed her crown to the exclusion of her father. His crusade was delayed year after year on one pretext or another, and he brought upon himself the ban of the impatient pope; but at last, despite the papal prohibition, he sailed for Syria, with only 600 knights, more "like a pirate and follower of Mohammad," said Gregory IX, than as a king and a soldier of Christ. 1228 June

Frederick's Crusade was unique in all its circumstances. He won Jerusalem against the will of the church and without a single battle. His forces, in truth, were too weak to risk an engagement with the powerful armies of the Saracens. His contemptuous treatment of John of Brienne had alienated the sympathies of many of the settled Christians; his contest with Rome lost him the support of zealous churchmen. The religious orders of the Temple and Hospital sullenly refused to follow a leader who was under the curse of the Holy See. No one in Syria seemed to care very much about the recovery of Jerusalem. But Frederick had an argument on his side that outweighed all these negations. Kāmil had encountered a rival in his brother Mu'aẓẓam, the lord of Damascus, who was suspected of taking advantage

of the exhaustion after the siege of Damietta, and of presuming upon his own services in the war, to shake off the sovereign powers[1] that Egypt claimed over the empire of Saladin. Alarmed at this disaffection, Kāmil had sent an embassy to Frederick, as sovereign of the Saracens of Sicily, offering him the kingdom of Jerusalem in exchange for his support. In return bishop Bernard of Palermo had come on a mission to Cairo, and costly presents had been exchanged. Frederick was on exceptionally good terms with the Muslims, and his toleration gave rise to suspicions of his orthodoxy. The pope, as we have seen, called him "a follower of Mohammad," and the correspondence which has been published between the emperor and the Arab philosopher Ibn-Sabīn,[2] together with the metaphysical discussions into which Frederick loved to draw Kāmil's envoys after his arrival in Syria, point at least to what we should now call emancipated views, which in those days were apt, in the case of less distinguished advocates, to lead to the stake. An Arab historian confesses that "the emperor was the most excellent among the kings of the Franks, devoted to science, philosophy and medicine, and well-disposed towards Muslims," and twenty years later Joinville found that his kinship to Frederick was the best passport with the mamlūks. This toleration, probably shared by Kāmil, who had associated with European nobles, doubtless led to a mutual appreciation. There is no evidence that any treaty was signed, but some understanding was arrived at. Meantime the situation was changed. Mu'aẓẓam died in the winter of 1227; the danger of Syrian rivalry was hardly critical enough to press Kāmil to any great renunciation, and it says much for the emperor's diplomacy that he was able to bring his
1229 Egyptian correspondent to the point of the treaty, signed on 11 February, 1229, and ratified on oath a week

[1] This is denied by Abū-l-Fidā, who says that Mu'aẓẓam was invariably deferential to Kāmil, and always caused his name to be recited as sovereign in the public prayers.

[2] Published by Prof. Mehren.

later by the two sovereigns. Kāmil was no doubt in some measure committed by his previous proposals, but his main motive is to be found in the valuable counter-guarantees of the emperor.

The treaty of 1229 was the most remarkable that was ever signed between a Christian and a Moḥammadan power, before the days of European engagements with the Turkish empire. On his part the sultan of Egypt surrendered Jerusalem (which was not to be fortified, however), together with Bethlehem, Nazareth, and the pilgrim road to Jaffa and thence to 'Akka, into the absolute possession of the emperor, reserving only the *ḥaram* of Jerusalem, enclosing the mosque of 'Omar, for the exclusive use and possession of unarmed Muslims. He also released all Christian prisoners, including many of the unhappy victims of the "Children's Crusade." The emperor in return engaged to defend the sultan against *all* enemies, even Christians, and guaranteed that the northern Syrian princes of Antioch, Tripolis, and various other places, should receive no assistance from any external power. These engagements were to hold good for ten years and a half.

There is no doubt that, if the treaty were honestly observed, Kāmil gained much more than he lost by it. The territory sacrificed was of little value, and the only part of Jerusalem specially sacred to the Muslims was reserved; whilst the advantages of the emperor's defensive alliance were overwhelming. However satisfactory the result may have appeared to the two high contracting parties, the treaty roused a storm of indignation among the zealots of both sides. The Holy City was indeed once more Christian—save one part—but at what a cost of honour! Frederick, said the papal party, had bargained with the "infidels" instead of slaying them. Most of the old Latin kingdom was still in the hands of the Saracens. And the prince of Antioch, and the military orders who held many castles in the north of Syria, deeply resented the clause that cut them off from all succour from Europe; it looked, indeed, very much like a spiteful revenge for their disaffection. The

Muslims, for their part, regarded the whole transaction as a shameful betrayal of Islām to the "infidel."

1229 Mar. 17 Frederick entered Jerusalem within a month of the treaty, and, enthroning himself in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, set the crown upon his own head. The next day the archbishop of Caesarea placed the Holy City under an interdict, to the amazement and indignation of the crowds of pilgrims: "the place where Jesus Christ suffered and was buried," they cried, "is banned by a pope!" Scared by the calamity, they hurriedly followed the emperor to 'Akka, whence, after appointing honest men to govern his new acquisitions, and strengthening by all possible means the Teutonic order, he May 1 sailed for Italy. The Crusade was over, and though it had procured the recovery of Jerusalem, the city was in the midst of a hostile country and could not be held against any attack in force. Kāmil religiously observed the treaty he had sworn (as did the Christians by the pope's reconsidered order), but he could not always prevent bands of fanatical Muslims from ill-using the pilgrims and disturbing the peace of the Holy City. The emperor's haughty treatment of many of the Syrian and Cypriote nobles left unhealed wounds and led to a series of quarrels. The gain to Christendom from the Crusade was insignificant, but the fault lay more with the

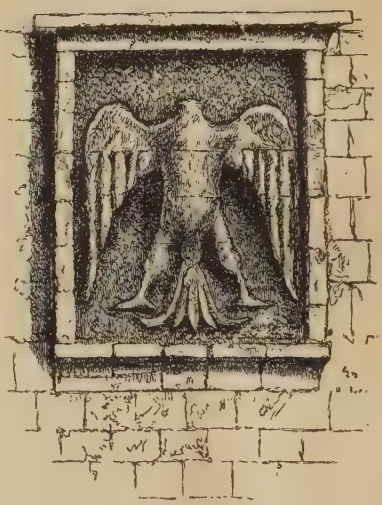


Fig. 52.—Eagle on Citadel of Cairo, probably early 13th century.

pope and his supporters than with the indiscreet emperor.

The nine remaining years of Kāmil's life were free from crusading molestation, and also from serious rivalry among his own kindred. His title to be the head of the various provinces ruled by the Ayyūbids was generally recognized. He appointed his brother Ashraf as viceroy at Damascus, and the two brothers made an expedition into the Euphrates country, and took Āmid from the Ortuḳid prince whose ancestors had reigned there for 130 years. Kāmil endeavoured to cement the family union by marrying his daughters to the princes of Aleppo and Ḥamāh, and though unsuccessful in a campaign against Kay-Ḳubād, the Selǵūḳ sultan of Asia Minor, he recovered Edessa from him, and maintained his authority over the whole of the empire inherited from his father. It was not maintained without friction, for the minor princes of his family regarded him with jealous suspicion and distrusted his crafty diplomacy. There was a rupture with Ashraf in 1236, and on his death in 1237 Kāmil marched upon Damascus to assert his rights as supreme king. The city was defended by his brother eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl, supported by the lords of Aleppo and Ḥimṣ, who were not descended from 'Ādil and had always held as aloof as they dared from him and Kāmil. After a vigorous siege, an accommodation was arranged; the Egyptian sultan was given Damascus, Ṣāliḥ received Ba'albekk and other cities; and Ḥimṣ was punished for meddling. But the exposure and hardships of a winter campaign proved too much for Kāmil's strength; fever ensued, and at Damascus he died. For forty years he had governed Egypt, twenty before and twenty after 'Ādil's death. As a statesman he was his father's equal, prudent and firm in counsel,

1233 to 1236

Fig. 53.—Dīnār of el-Kāmil, Alexandria, 1225.

1238 Jan.

Mar. 8

an energetic and capable administrator, who managed his kingdom alone. After the death of his father's wezīr, Ṣafī-ed-dīn, he employed no prime minister, but performed all the business of the state himself. Egypt prospered exceedingly under his reign. He laboured to improve the irrigation system, personally inspected the work of the engineers, extended and improved the canals, dikes, and dams, ensured the safety of travellers, completed the fortification of the Citadel of Cairo; and being a devout Muslim he founded many institutions, such as the Dār-el-Ḥadīth or Kāmiliya college in the Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn. Like most of his family he loved learning and the society of scholars, and was able to hold his own in the literary debates which took place at his Thursday evening receptions.

He was succeeded by his son el-Ādil II,[1] a profligate who was deposed by a conspiracy among his officers in a couple of years, when his brother es-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb[2] assumed the throne. The chief events of Ṣāliḥ's reign took place in Syria, where he had a determined enemy in his uncle, eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl, who had seized Damascus in 1239 and now sought to strengthen himself by the support of the Franks, to whom he surrendered the castles of Shekīf, Ṣafad, Tiberias, and Ascalon. The Christians, however, were in no very efficient condition. The disastrous crusade of the king of Navarre, the duke of

1240 May 31

Fig. 54.—Dīnār of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, Cairo, 1239.

1239 Nov.

[1] The younger 'Ādil's coins are dated Cairo, 635—37 (1238—40); Damascus, 635. He died in prison in the citadel of Cairo in Feb., 1248. There is a casket of inlaid silver and brass bearing his titles in the Victoria and Albert Museum at South Kensington.

[2] Eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb struck coins at Cairo, 637—46 (1240—48); Damascus, 644, 645; and he is named as suzerain on a coin of en-Nāṣir of Damascus, 647 (1249).

Burgundy, and the count of Montfort, defeated at Gaza, and barely rescued from destruction by the prudence of 1241
Richard of Cornwall and Simon of Montfort, paralyzed the energy of the Franks. The savage Khwārizmian tribes, driven westward by the invasion of Chingiz Khān, and called in by Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb to aid in the extirpation of the Christians, took Jerusalem, massacred 7000 of the 1244 Sept.
helpless inhabitants, and restored the Holy City once more and finally to Islām. The combined forces of the Franks and the Syrian Muslims were disastrously routed Oct.
by the Egyptians and Khwārizmians near Gaza ; Ayyūb recovered Damascus (1245), and Ascalon (1247); and restored his kingdom to the same height of power that it had reached under his father and grandfather. His victori-

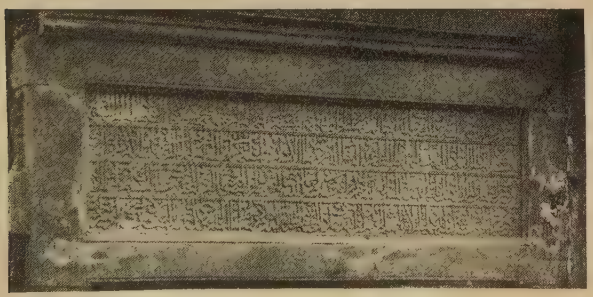


Fig. 55.—Inscription on tomb of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, at Cairo, 1252.

ous campaigns were only checked by a severe illness, during which he received the despatch announcing
Louis IX's invasion of Egypt. He immediately had 1249.
himself transported in a litter to the threatened scene of war.

The Crusade of Louis of France was perhaps the only expedition since the days of Godfrey of Bouillon that deserved the name of a Holy War. It was led by a saintly hero, a veritable Sir Galahad, whose "whole life was a prayer, his whole aim to do God's will" ; a king

whose high and noble character inspired universal trust and reverence; a leader whose courage and endurance rested on the sanctions of faith as well as on the obligations of knightly honour. The very loftiness and purity of his nature, however, were impediments in controlling an unruly and licentious army, but the main cause of his lamentable failure is to be sought partly in his ignorance of the topography of the field of action, partly in the inadequacy of his force. His was no crusade of all Europe, such as St. Bernard had excited; Germany and Italy were absorbed in the quarrel between pope and emperor, and the king of France had to depend mainly on his own subjects. He collected some 2800 French knights, with their numerous squires and men-at-arms, and 5000 archers, and these were joined by small contingents from England, Cyprus, and the Syrian Franks.[1] The French sailed in 1720 ships, but the larger half was dispersed by storms between Cyprus and Egypt and driven into the Syrian ports, and only 700 vessels reached Damietta at the beginning of June.[2]

1249 June

The city was garrisoned by Arabs of the Kināna tribe, famous for their bravery, supported by an Egyptian army under Fakhr-ed-dīn; but no sooner had the French appeared than the garrison fled, followed by all the inhabitants, and the Egyptians fell back on Manṣūra.

Louis occupied Damietta almost without striking a blow. Like John of Brienne he had landed on the wrong side of the Nile, but as the enemy in their haste had neglected to destroy the pontoons, he crossed without difficulty. Again, like his predecessor of thirty years before, he committed the fatal mistake of delaying his advance. His one chance was to push on to Cairo before the Nile rose and whilst the Saracens, panic-stricken at the loss of Damietta, were paralyzed by the illness of their dying sultan, whose stern execution of the

[1] The Arab historians estimate the total force in round figures at 50,000.

[2] According to Joinville, 27 May; but most authorities place the occupation of Damietta, which took place immediately after the arrival of the fleet, on June 5 or 6.

fugitive Kināna scarcely reassured his followers. Instead of this, the French waited at Damietta nearly six months, expecting the arrival of the rest of the troops who had been driven to Syria. These reached the seat of war in October, and a debate was then held whether to go to Alexandria or to march direct upon Cairo. It was decided to "strike at the head of the snake," and the march towards Cairo began. Once more the vicious precedent of 1219 was followed. Forgetful or ignorant of the disastrous lessons then learnt, the Crusaders again risked the endless obstacles of an advance through a country intersected by deep canals and arms of the Nile, instead of choosing a fresh departure and an easy march through open country from Pelusium. They took a month to work their way less than fifty miles up the river, and all this time, during nearly seven months of unexpected grace, the Saracen army had been constantly reinforced, and had so completely recovered from its panic that the Christians were frequently surprised in their tents by adventurous Muslims, eager to win the reward offered for every "infidel" head.

Oct. Nov. 20

The French were brought to a stop at exactly the same spot as their unfortunate precursors of 1219. They reached Sharmesa at the corner where the old Tanitic branch of the Nile—then known as the canal of Ushmūm, and now as the Little River (Baḥr-eṣ-Ṣugheyyir)—divides eastwards from the great Damietta arm. On their right was the main course of the eastern Nile, in front the Little River, on the opposite side of which could be seen the camp of the Egyptian army resting on the town of Manṣūra, some four miles south of the point where the rivers divided,[1] and supported by ships on the

Dec. 21

[1] The Rev. E. J. Davis, of Alexandria, in his *Invasion of Egypt by Louis IX*, 32—34, gives some interesting topographical details derived from local observation and researches. He states that in 1249 the Little River branched off from the Damietta arm some four or five miles north of Manṣūra, instead of (as now) close to the town. Joinville's name for the Little River, "canal de Rexi," he derives from the village of Dereksa, still existing, and not from "Rosetta," thus vindicating Joinville from an absurd mistake. He also records the discovery of a large number of skulls, pronounced to be European,

main stream. To advance, one or other of the two rivers must be crossed, and Louis chose the smaller. He immediately began throwing a dam or causeway across the Little River, and before Christmas he had erected two "cats" or pent-houses to protect the working parties, and a couple of belfries or armed towers to guard the cats. The Saracens on the other side undermined the bank, which was speedily washed away by the stream, so as to maintain the breadth of the channel, and they directed a heavy discharge of missiles from their sixteen stone-slings (*perrières*, *petrariae*) upon the French defences. The latter replied from eighteen machines, and an artillery duel was kept up across the river for some time. The causeway was the centre of the attack. The Muslims harassed the working parties by a sustained fire of bolts, arrows, and stones, by land and water, and twice they destroyed the cats and other wooden works by a copious discharge of Greek fire. To add to the dangers of this position, they crossed the Little River at a lower part, and attacked the king's army from the rear. They were beaten off, but Louis had now to entrench his camp on the north-east, and guard it on all sides.

The causeway was still unfinished, the river as impassable as ever, when a traitor—some "infidel of Salmūn," it was said—betrayed a secret ford, higher up the Little River, for 500 gold pieces; and on
Feb. 9 Shrove Tuesday, the king of France took the flower of his knights, his mounted men, and horse-archers to the place. The cavalry crossed in three divisions or "battles;" first, the Templars, then the second division and horse-archers, under the king's brother, Robert count of Artois, and in the rear, the king's battle and his personal following. The passage was unopposed, though not unobserved, but no sooner had the count of Artois reached the other side than, in direct disobedience of the king's orders, he insisted on an immediate ad-

scattered over a considerable area, "like a vast cemetery," north-east of Manṣūra, which he believes to be the remains of the Crusaders who fell in the battle of Shrove Tuesday.

vance against the enemy. The master of the Temple and William Longsword, titular earl of Salisbury, vainly prayed him to wait till the king's division had crossed. He replied with taunts, which left them no option but to join him in his foolhardy gallop. They all charged furiously through the Saracens' camp [1] right into Manṣūra and out at the other side. They slew the Muslim commander-in-chief, Fakhr-ed-dīn, who was in the bath and had barely time to get his weapons. He had been knighted by Frederick II, but his knighthood did not save him. The Crusaders broke up into scattered bands, and enjoyed their fill of personal encounters, regardless of any formation or precaution against attack. They were even venturing upon the conquest of the sultan's palace on the river bank behind the city, when their well-deserved fate overtook them.

The ordinary Egyptian and Arab levies had broken in disorder, but the trusty squadrons of perhaps 10,000 mamlūks, whom Ṣāliḥ had carefully trained as a *corps d'élite*, were not so easily scared. They rallied near the palace, and their furious charge under Beybars the Arbalesteer turned the fortune of the day. The Crusaders were driven into the narrow streets of Manṣūra, which were already barricaded and the windows and roofs manned by archers; and here or in the entanglements of the tents the chivalry of France was cut to pieces. The count of Artois and 300 of his knights were killed; of the Templars scarcely five escaped; Longsword and nearly all the English stood their ground to the death; the horse-archers were exterminated, and the Muslims reckoned 1500 knights and nobles among the dead. The remnant were driven towards the Little River, where Louis, after repeated charges, had succeeded in gaining a position opposite the unfinished causeway. In repelling the assaults of the mamlūks, the king exposed himself to great danger, and many of his best knights were captured and

[1] This is not clear in Joinville, but appears evident from the letter of Jean Pierre Ṣarrasin to Nicholas Arrode, printed at the end of Michel's edition of Joinville.

rescued. It was impossible with swordsmen alone to drive off the mounted bowmen of the enemy, who held the advantage of a long range ; but the army on both sides of the river had been desperately hard at work building a make-shift bridge over the space still open between the causeway and the south bank. The captured *perrières* and other engines of the enemy, fascines, and timber of all sorts, furnished the material ; and by sunset the duke of Burgundy, who commanded the camp, was able to send across a body of infantry cross-bowmen, under the constable of France, who effectually covered the exhausted remnant of the cavalry, and compelled the mamlūks to draw off. Before this, however, many of the French, in panic, had plunged their horses into the river in the hope of reaching the camp, and the stream was dark with the floating bodies of drowned men and horses.

The battle of Manṣūra was but a Pyrrhic victory. Louis indeed held possession of the south shore of the Little River, and had captured the enemy's camp and destroyed their war-engines. But he had lost perhaps half his cavalry and all his horse-archers, and had so little discomfited the Saracens that in three days they were vigorously attacking the bridge-head which he had constructed to guard the causeway, whilst he was only able to maintain the defensive. The battle is a signal illustration of the essential interdependence of cavalry and infantry. Without his foot archers, Louis would have been driven into the river. It was probably inevitable that his advance across the ford should be made by mounted men alone ; but once across, their first object should have been to get into touch with the infantry left behind on the north side, and to complete the bridge. This was clearly the king's plan, and its ruin was solely due to the impetuosity of the count of Artois.[1]

The chief credit of the day belongs to the steady

[1] Mr. Oman has ably criticized the battle of Manṣūra in his *History of the Art of War in the Middle Ages*, 338—50.

fighting of the mamlūks, who bore the brunt of the battle and inflicted the chief punishment upon their rash opponents. Their steadiness was the more remarkable because they were without a king to lead them. Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb had died on Nov. 21, when the French were just setting forth from Damietta on their fatal march. He is described as a prince of strong character, ascetic, taciturn, severe, and intensely proud and autocratic. He was ambitious, and undoubtedly maintained and even enhanced all the power he had inherited from el-Kāmil.[1] His death at the critical moment was a serious disaster. His eldest son Tūrānshāh was far away at Keyfa in Diyār-Bekr. The natural result of an interregnum at such a time would be a struggle between rival emīrs for the regency or even the throne, and the collapse of any organization against the enemy. Fortunately, Ṣāliḥ left in his ḥarīm a singularly capable woman—a Turkish, or, as some say, Armenian slave, named Sheǵer-ed-durr ("Pearl-spray"). She at once took charge of the situation. Calling together two or three trusty emīrs, she formed her plans in consultation. The sultan's death was concealed; he was given out to be seriously ill, but his meals were regularly sent in to where he was supposed to lie, and the necessary orders of state duly appeared, authenticated by his autograph forged by Suheyl the eunuch. Whatever suspicions may have been aroused, no overt disturbances occurred, and Sheǵer-ed-durr and her officers managed the government and defence of the country with unqualified success. She was still the mainspring of the state, holding the court, receiving the ministers and generals on behalf of her "sick" master, and watching over the discipline of 1250
the army, when the battle of Manṣūra was fought. Through all the anxious time between November and February, when the heir, who had been urgently summoned, at last arrived, Sheǵer-ed-durr held the Muslim kingdom together.

[1] He built the castle of Rōḍa, and that of Kebsh, between Cairo and Fusṭāṭ, besides the town of Ṣāliḥīya. His tomb-mosque still stands in the Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn at Cairo.

Feb. 27 When Tūrānshāh came, she immediately resigned her temporary authority. The young man, who enjoyed no very popular reputation, at least conducted the campaign with energy and skill. His first move was to take a number of ships to pieces and transport them on camel-back to a point on the Damietta arm of the Nile at some Mar. distance below the French fleet ;[1] there they were put together, and the result of the stratagem was the capture of thirty-two French ships and the stopping of all supplies for the crusading army. Louis was now in a hopeless position. He was not strong enough to break through the enemy and force his way to Cairo ; his supplies were cut off, and the troops began to feel the effects of low rations, added to the deadly influence of camp fever. Still he waited, too proud to turn his back upon the enemy, though he retired to the north side of the Little River, still holding the bridge-head on the south. At last he opened negotiations, in the vain hope that the Saracens would renew the terms offered by Kāmil in 1219—an exchange of Damietta for the kingdom of Jerusalem—but this time it was the Muslims who declined the bargain. Finally, when the army was all but starving, and fever, want, and wounds had exhausted its strength, the king burned his war-engines, abandoned Apr. 5-6 his camp and baggage, and set out by night on the desperate retreat towards Damietta, himself taking the post of danger in the rearguard. In the confusion, the bridge and causeway over the river were left standing. The Saracens streamed over in pursuit, massacred the abandoned sick, kept up a running fight as far as Fāreskūr, two-thirds of the way to Damietta, and there made an end of the Christian army. Tūrānshāh himself wrote that 30,000 Crusaders were slain ; it is at least certain that almost the whole French host was either

[1] They were probably transported "from the Nile at Semennūd overland to the great canal which issues from the canal of Mahalla a little to the south of the town of that name. In 1249 this canal communicated with the Nile a long distance down by means of a side canal" (Davis, 46).

killed or taken prisoners, and of the prisoners all except those of gentle birth were massacred.

King Louis was laid low with fever when he was taken, and the Sieur de Joinville, who wrote the moving chronicle of the crusade and himself played a brave man's part in the battle of Manṣūra, was also among the captives. They were eventually held to ransom for 100,000 livres (10,000,000 francs) for the lives of the army, and the surrender of Damietta in exchange for the king. It is related that Louis exhibited such regal indifference when the amount of the ransom was stated to him, that Tūrānshāh, not to be outdone, reduced the sum by a quarter. The prisoners went in great peril when the sultan, who had contrived to make himself generally hated in his two months' reign, had offended his stepmother and slighted the Baḥrī generals, was murdered by the mamlūks.[1] Happily, the woman who May 2
had already saved Egypt again assumed the throne, and the terms of ransom were honourably confirmed, in spite of the opposition of the more fanatical Muslims. The French went to Damietta, where Louis's queen had scraped together the stipulated half of the ransom. Thence he sailed in May for 'Akka, with the remnant of Nov.
his gallant and unfortunate army. Damietta, which had tempted so many Christian invasions, was soon afterwards razed to the ground and rebuilt on a safer site further inland, whilst a boom was stretched across the mouth of the river.

With the murder of Tūrānshāh, the Ayyūbid dynasty came to an end in Egypt. The mamlūks were now the masters, and their history belongs to the next chapter. Beyond 'Abd-el-Laṭīf's description of the famine years, we have few detailed notices of the internal condition of Egypt under the sultans of the line of Saladin. The general but vague testimony of the historians goes to show that the country was prosperous as a rule, and that the three kings, whose reigns cover nearly the

[1] Joinville was an eye-witness of the murder, which was accomplished in the river where the sultan was swimming to escape with a sword stuck in his ribs.

whole interval from 1196 to 1250, were intelligent and capable governors, fully alive to the agricultural interests of the land, and to the importance of order and justice. We hear of no revolts or conspiracies, except against two notoriously unworthy sultans. Of the high character and cultivated tastes of the three chief rulers, 'Ādil, Kāmil, and Ṣāliḥ, we have contemporary evidence from Ibn-Khallikān, Ibn-el-Athīr, and Bahā-ed-dīn Zuheyr ; and it is clear that the society which these learned men, and 'Abd-el-Laṭīf, met in Cairo was intellectually distinguished and found appreciation at the court. Bahā-ed-dīn was the secretary and intimate of Ṣāliḥ, and his poetry reflects the court life of Egypt before the middle of the thirteenth century. It is not what is generally expected in oriental poetry, but in its playfulness, *bonhomie*, humour, and light treatment of serious things, it more resembles European *vers de société*, whilst in some of its panegyrics it succeeds in being stately without affectation, and admiring without servility. The Ayyūbid kings showed a business-like readiness to open the country to European trade. In 1208 'Ādil granted special facilities to the Venetians throughout Egypt, and allowed them to build a fundak or mart, called the Sūḳ-ed-dīk, at Alexandria. Similar privileges were granted about the same time to the Pisans, who sent a consul to Alexandria, and these concessions were renewed in 1215-6. The Christian invasion of 1219 naturally interfered with commercial relations, and no further record of trading privileges occurs till 1238, when 'Ādil II confirmed their former rights to the Venetians. The duties paid by non-Muslim traders on all goods imported into Egypt was a tenth of their value.[1]

[1] In an interesting description of Fusṭāṭ, Ibn-Sa'īd, the Spanish Moor, states that "ships and vessels of all sorts arrive from all the lands of the earth at the quays on the Nile. . . . As for the merchandize from the Mediterranean and the Red Sea which comes to Fusṭāṭ, it is beyond description, for it is here collected, not at Cairo, and from here it is forwarded to all parts of the country." The passage has been translated by Mr. Corbet (see Mrs. Butcher's *Church of Egypt*, ii. 148—51).

The relations of the Ayyūbids with their Christian subjects grew more friendly as time went on. Saladin and his brother ʿĀdil had been severe and exacting, but Kāmil was recognized by the church of Egypt as the most generous and beneficent sovereign they ever had. As prince regent he often interceded with his father in favour of the Christians, and when he succeeded him he continued the same policy, and resolutely refused to meddle in the petty squabbles of the "national church." His correspondence with the emperor Frederick showed a toleration which was rare among Muslims, and apparently led the Christians to believe that the sultan might be converted. St. Francis of Assisi himself visited the court in 1219, and preached before Kāmil, and was at least received with respect; and in 1245 we find Ṣāliḥ writing to pope Innocent IV regretting that he was unable to argue with the Preaching Friars by reason of the impediment of an unknown language. The crusade of St. Louis, however, exasperated the Saracens, and it is said that 115 churches were destroyed in consequence of the conquest of Damietta.

As a whole the period of Ayyūbid rule in Egypt, in point of imperial power, internal prosperity, and resolute defence against invasion, stands pre-eminent in the history of the country.

CHAPTER IX

THE FIRST MAMLŪKS

1250—1277

Authorities.—Abū-l-Fidā, en-Nuweyrī, el-Maḳrīzī, el-'Aynī, Abū-l-Maḥāsin, es-Suyūṭī; modern—Weil, *Geschichte des Abbasidenchalifats in Egypten*; Quatremère, *Hist. des Sultans Mamlouks*, and *Mém. sur l'Égypte*; Lane-Poole, *Art of the Saracens*, and *Catalogue Or. Coins in B.M.*; Röhricht, *Regesta*; Howorth, *Hist. of the Mongols*, iii.

Monuments at Cairo.—Tomb-mosque of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, 1250; tomb of Sheǵer-ed-durr; medresa (1262), and mosque of eṣ-Ẓāhir Beybars, 1267-9; Dār-el-'Adl, below ramparts of citadel.

Inscriptions.—On monuments above; emīr Bīlbek in chapel of Fāṭima, 1254; tomb of 'Abd-er-Raḥmān el-Ḳurashī, 1259; Beybars in Azhar, 1266; on citadel of Damascus, 1261; at tomb of Khālid at Ḥimṣ, 1266, 1267; on white mosque at Ramla, 1267; at Karak, 1271; at Ṣafed, Crac des Chevaliers, Bānias, Yubna, Lydda, and el-Kahf (M. van Berchem, *Corpus* and *Inscr. Ar. de Syrie*, and MSS. notes).

Coins.—See under each reign.

THE word *mamlūk* means "owned," "belonging to," and was specially applied to white male slaves captured in war or purchased in the market. The habit of employing a large body-guard of foreign and especially Turkish slaves dates from the time of the 'Abbāsid caliphs of Baghdād (see above, pp. 59ff.), who imported the handsome vigorous youth of central Asia to protect them against the Arab tribes and the rising power of the provincial governors, and found that their Turkish guard became their gaolers. In the same fashion the most able and ambitious of the slave generals of the Selǵūḳ sultans became the founders of the numerous independent dynasties that gradually shared what was left of the Selǵūḳ empire. The practice of employing slave officers and troopers naturally prevailed among the dynasties that had risen from the same condition. Nūr-ed-dīn and Saladin were surrounded by choice companies of mamlūks, brought up with peculiar care,

exercised in all manly exploits, splendidly equipped and trained in the art of war. The system of a *ḥalḳa* or bodyguard of white slaves or freed-men was continued under Saladin's successors, and was brought to the highest pitch of efficiency by his grandnephew eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb. This sultan had early experience of the jealousies of his kinsmen and the hostility of the Franks; he put little trust in the ordinary Egyptian and Arab levies, and created a small but perfectly trained army of purchased slaves, his personal property, who owed everything to his favour. He imported these mamlūks from various markets, but wherever they were bought, the great majority were Turks. The *corps d'élite* of picked horsemen were stationed at the castle which he had built on the island of Rōḍa, opposite Fusṭāṭ, on the Nile, and from their river barracks they acquired the name of the fluvial or "Baḥrī Mamlūks," "the white slaves of the river." They were not the only mamlūks in his service, by any means, but they were the most favoured and powerful regiment. The circumstance of slavery was so far from a stigma that a little later we find a celebrated emīr (Ḳawṣūn) looked askance upon because he had *not* been a slave, and the relationship of slave to master in the east has always approached kinship more nearly than servitude. The Baḥrīs were proud of their origin, and it formed no bar to their advancement. Their colonels, or "emīrs of a thousand," exercised great influence, and one of them, Fāris-ed-dīn Aḳṭāi, succeeded Fakhr-ed-dīn as commander-in-chief after the battle of Manṣūra. These officers had already risen, before Ṣāliḥ's death, from the ranks of the common slaves to posts of honour at their master's court; they had become cup-bearers, or tasters, or masters of the horse, and had won their enfranchisement; and these freed mamlūks became in turn the masters and owners of other mamlūks. Thus at the very beginning of their history we find a number of powerful emīrs who had acquired a large body of retainers whom they led to battle and who were ready to support them to the death. After the murder of Tūrānshāh, which was the work of the Baḥrīs, it was but a short step to

the throne, and for the next 130 years the colonels of this celebrated regiment, and their descendants, rapidly succeeded each other as sultans of Egypt.[1] The only title to kingship among these nobles was personal prowess and the command of the largest number of adherents. In the absence of other influences the hereditary principle was no doubt adopted, and we find one family, that of Ḳalā·ūn, maintaining its succession to the throne for several generations; but as a rule the successor to the kingly power was the most powerful lord of the day, and his hold on the throne depended chiefly on the strength of his following and his conciliation of the other nobles. The annals of mamlūk dominion are full of instances of a great lord reducing the authority of the reigning sultan to a shadow, and then stepping over his murdered body to the throne. Most of these sultans died violent deaths at the hands of rival emirs, and the safety of the ruler of the time depended mainly upon the numbers and courage of his guard. This body-guard enjoyed remarkable privileges and was the object of continual solicitude on the part of the sultan. As his own safety and power depended upon the guards' fidelity, he was accustomed to bestow upon them grants of lands, rich dresses of honour, and unstinted largesse. The greater part of the land of Egypt came to be held by the emirs and soldiers of the guard in fiefs granted by the crown. These soldiers of the guard numbered several thousand, and must have passed from sultan to sultan at every change of ruler; their colonels became important factors in the choice of rulers, and often deposed or set up a king as seemed good to them. The sultan, or chief mamlūk, was in fact more or less, according to his character, at the mercy of the officers of his guard; and the principal check he possessed upon their ambition or discontent was found in their own mutual jealousies, which might be played upon so as to neutralize their opposition.

[1] Some of the following pages are reprinted, with emendations, from my *Art of the Saracens in Egypt*, ch. iii.

Each of the great lords, were he an officer of the guard, or a court official, or merely a private nobleman, was a mamlūk sultan in miniature. He, too, had his guard of mamlūk slaves, who waited at his door to escort him in his rides abroad, were ready at his behest to attack the public baths and carry off the women, defended him when a rival lord besieged his palace, and followed him valiantly as he led the charge of his division on the field of battle. These great lords, with their retainers, were a constant menace to the reigning sultan. A coalition would be formed among a certain number of disaffected nobles, with the support of some of the officers of the household or of the guard, and their retainers would mass in the approaches to the royal presence, while a trusted cup-bearer or other officer, whose duties permitted him access to the king's person, would strike the fatal blow; and the conspirators would forthwith elect one of their number to succeed to the vacant throne. This was not effected without a struggle; the royal guard was not always to be bribed or overcome, and there were generally other nobles whose interests attached them to the reigning sovereign rather than to any possible successor, except themselves, and who would be sure to oppose the plot. Then there would be a street fight; the terrified people would close their shops, run to their houses, and shut the great gates which isolated the various quarters and markets of the city; and the rival factions of mamlūks would ride through the streets that remained open, pillaging the houses of their adversaries, carrying off women and children, holding pitched battles in the road, or discharging arrows and spears from the windows upon the enemy in the street below. These things were of constant occurrence, and the life of the merchant classes of Cairo must have been exciting. We read how the great bazar, called the Khān-el-Khalīlī, was sometimes shut up for a week while these contests were going on in the streets without, and the rich merchants of Cairo huddled trembling behind the stout gates.

The uncertainty of the tenure of power, and the

general brevity of their reigns (they average about five years), make it the more astonishing that the mamlūk sultans found leisure to promote the many noble works of architecture and engineering which distinguish their rule above any other period of Egyptian history since the Christian era. The actual office of sultan was no sinecure, apart from the constant vigilance needed to manage the refractory mamlūks. The sultan was supreme judge, and had to sit regularly, not only to hear causes, but to receive complaints and petitions from any subject who chose to present them. He had to control a large correspondence, and most sultans took a personal share in drafting the dispatches to all parts of the empire and to foreign powers. The most famous and energetic of all the Baḥrī sultans, Beybars, established a well-organized system of posts, connecting every part of his wide dominions with the capital. Relays of horses were in readiness at each posting-house, and twice a week the sultan received and answered reports from all parts of the realm. Besides the ordinary mail, there was also a pigeon post, which was no less carefully managed. The pigeons were kept in cots in the Citadel and at the various stages, which were further apart than those of the horses; the bird was trained to stop at the first post-cot, where its letter would be attached to the wing of another pigeon for the next stage. The royal pigeons had a distinguishing mark, and when one of these arrived at the Citadel with a dispatch, none was permitted to detach the parchment save the sultan himself; and so stringent were the rules, that were he dining or sleeping or in the bath, he would nevertheless at once be informed of the arrival, and would immediately proceed to disencumber the bird of its message. The correspondence conducted by these posts was often very considerable, as may be seen by an example of the business hours of Beybars. He arrived before Tyre one night; a tent was immediately pitched by torchlight, the secretaries, seven in number, were summoned, with the commander-in-chief; and the adjutant-general (*Emīr ʿalam*) with the military secretaries were instructed to

draw up orders. For hours they ceased not to write letters and diplomas, to which the sultan affixed his seal; this very night they indited in his presence fifty-six diplomas for high nobles, each with its proper introduction of praise to God.

In addition to necessary business, state ceremonies occupied no inconsiderable part of the sultan's time. The mamlūk court was a minutely organized system, and the choice of officers to fill the numerous posts of the household, and the tact demanded in satisfying their jealousies and disagreements, to say nothing of the constant presentation of ceremonial dresses of honour, the writing of diplomas, and granting of titles and appanages, must have been a tax upon their master. The posts about the royal person were valuable and highly prized, and it needed some diplomacy to arrange the cabinet and household appointments to the satisfaction of everybody. Besides the great officers of state, such as the Viceroy (*Nāib-es-Saltana*) or Wezīr, Commander-in-Chief (*Atābeg-el-'Asākir* or *Emīr-el-Kebīr*), the Master of the Household (*Ustāddār*), Captain of the Guard (*Rās-Nawba*), Armour-bearer (*Silāḥdār*), Master of the Horse (*Emīr-Akhōr*), Cup-bearer (*Sāḳī*), Taster (*G'āshnekīr*), Chamberlain, Equerry, Secretaries, Grooms-in-Waiting, etc., there were many smaller posts, which often commanded great power and influence. The *Emīr-Meǧlis*, "Lord of the Seat," so called because he enjoyed the privilege of sitting in the sultan's presence, was the superintendent of the court physicians and surgeons; the *G'amdār*, or Master of the Wardrobe, was a high official; the *Emīr-Shikār*, or Grand Huntsman, assisted the king in the chase; the *Emīr-Ṭabar*, or Master of the Halberds, held almost the rank of the Captain of the Guard, and commanded the *Ṭabardārs*, or Halberdiers, the Gentlemen-at-Arms of the sultan, ten in number; the *Bashmakdār* carried the sovereign's slippers; the *G'ūkāndār* bore the sultan's polo-stick, a staff of painted wood about four cubits long, with a curved head; the *Zimāmdārs* were eunuch guards. The various household departments had also their officers, who were often great

nobles and men of influence in the realm. The *Ustāddār-es-Suhba* presided over the cookery; the *Ṭabl-khānāh*, or Drummery, was the department where the royal band was kept, and it was presided over by an officer called the *Emīr-ʿAlam*, or adjutant-general. The sultan's band is stated at one time to have comprised four drums, forty kettle-drums, four hautbois, and twenty trumpets. The permission to have a band was among the most coveted distinctions of mamlūk times, and those lords who were allowed to have a band playing before their gates were styled *Emīr-Ṭabl-khānāh*, or Lord of the Drums; they were about thirty in number, and each had command of a body of forty horsemen, with a band of ten drums, two hautbois, and four trumpets, and an appanage of about the value of 30,000 dīnārs. The practice of employing these ceremonial bands went out with the Ottoman conquest.

Then there was the *Tisht-khānāh*, or Vestiary, where the royal robes, jewels, seals, swords, etc., were kept, and where the clothes were washed; the *Sharāb-khānāh*, or Buttery, where were stored the liquors, sweetmeats, fruits, cordials, perfumes, and water for the sovereign; and the *Ḥawāiǵ-khānāh*, or Larder, where the food and vegetables required for the day were prepared. At the time of Ketbughā the daily amount of food prepared here was 20,000 lbs., and under en-Nāṣir the daily cost of the larder was from 21,000 to 30,000 dirhems.

It will be seen that court life was complicated even in the fourteenth century, and the state ceremonies of a mamlūk sultan must have involved as much etiquette as any modern levée, and presented a much more splendid spectacle. When the sultan rode abroad in state, to hold a review or to make a progress through his dominions, the composition of his escort was elaborately ordered. Beybars, for example, rode in the centre, dressed in a black silk *ǵubba*, or vest with large sleeves, but without embroidery or gold; on his head was a turban of fine silk, with a pendant hanging between the shoulders; a Bedawi sword swung by his side, and a Dawūdī cuirass was concealed beneath his vest. In front a great lord

carried the *ghāshiya*, or royal saddle-cloth, emblem of sovereignty, covered with gold and precious stones; and over the sultan's head a prince of the blood or the commander-in-chief bore the state parasol of yellow silk, embroidered with gold and crowned with a golden bird perched upon a golden cupola. The housing of his horse's neck was yellow silk embroidered with gold, and a *zunnārī* or cloth of red atlas satin covered the crupper. The royal standard of silk and gold thread was borne aloft, and the troops had their regimental colours of yellow Cairene silk, embroidered with the escutcheons of their leaders. Just before the sultan rode two pages on white horses with rich trappings; their robes were of yellow silk with borders of gold brocade, and a *kuffīya* of the same: it was their duty to see that the road was sound. A flute-player went before, and a singer followed after, chanting the heroic deeds of former kings, to the accompaniment of a hand-drum; poets sang verses antiphonally, accompanying themselves with the kemenga and mōṣil. Ṭabardārs carried halberds before and behind the sultan, and the state poniards were supported by the polo-master (*G'ūkāndār*) in a scabbard on the left, while another dagger with a buckler was carried on the monarch's right. Close behind him rode the *G'amakdār*, or mace-bearer, a tall, handsome man, who carried the gold-headed mace aloft, and never withdrew his eyes from the countenance of his master. The great officers of the court followed, with little less pomp. When a halt was called for the night, on long journeys, torches were borne before the sultan, and as he approached the tent, which had gone on in front and been pitched before his arrival, his servants came to meet him with wax candles in stands inlaid with gold; pages and halberdiers surrounded him, the soldiers sang a chorus, and all dismounted except the sultan, who rode into the vestibule of the tent, where he left his horse, and then entered the great round pavilion behind it. Out of this opened a little wooden bedroom, warmer than the tent, and a bath with heating materials was at hand. The whole was surrounded by a stockade, and the mamlūks mounted guard

in regular watches, inspected periodically by visiting rounds, with grand rounds twice in the night. The *Emīr-Bābdār*, or Grand Doorkeeper, commanded the grand rounds. Servants and eunuchs slept at the door. Joinville describes the sultan's camp at Damietta. It was entered through a tower of fir-poles covered round with coloured stuff, and inside was the tent where the officers left their weapons when they sought audience of the sultan. "Behind this tent was a doorway similar to the first, by which you enter a large tent, which was the sultan's hall. Behind the hall there was a tower like the one in front, through which you entered the sultan's chamber. Behind the sultan's chamber there was an enclosed space, and in the centre of this enclosure a tower, loftier than all the others, from which the sultan looked out over the whole camp and country. From the enclosure a pathway went down to the river, to the spot where the sultan had spread a tent over the water for the purpose of bathing. The whole of this encampment was enclosed within a trellis of wood work, and on the outer side the trellisses were spread with blue calico, and the four towers were also covered with calico."

The historian Maḳrīzī is fond of telling how the sultan made his progresses, held reviews of his troops, led a charge in battle, or joined in the games at home. The mamlūks were ardent votaries of sport and athletic exercises. Nāṣir was devoted to the chase, and imported numbers of sunḳurs, saḳrs, falcons and hawks, and presented valuable fiefs to his falconers, who rode beside him, hawk on wrist. Beybars was a keen archer, and a skilful hand at making arrows. He erected an archery ground outside the Gate of Victory at Cairo, and here he would stay from noon till sunset, encouraging the emīrs in their practice. The pursuit of archery became the chief occupation of the lords of his court. But Beybars, like most of the mamlūks, was catholic in his tastes; he was fond of horse-racing; spent two days in the week at polo; was famous for his management of the lance in the tournaments which formed part of the amusements of the day; and was so good a swimmer that he once swam

across the Nile in his cuirass, dragging after him several great nobles seated on inflated carpets.

Such outward details of the life of the mamlūks may be gathered in Maḳrīzī: but if we seek to know something of the domestic life of the period, we must go elsewhere. We find indeed occasionally in the historian an account of the revels of the court on great festivals, and how there were concerts in the citadel, where a torch was gently waved to and fro to keep the time. But to understand the home-life of the mamlūks, we must turn to the *Thousand and One Nights*, where, whatever the origin and scene of the stories, the manners and customs are drawn from the society which the narrators saw about them in Cairo in the days of the mamlūks; and the various articles of luxury that have come down to us, the goblets, incense-burners, bowls, and dishes of fine inlaid silver and gold, confirm the fidelity of the picture. With all their prayers and fasts and tedious ritual, the Muslims of the Middle Ages contrived to amuse themselves. Even in their religion they found opportunities for enjoyment. They made the most of the festivals of the faith, and put on their best clothes; they made up parties—to visit the tombs, indeed—but to visit them right merrily on the backs of their asses; and they let their servants go out and amuse themselves too in the gaily illuminated streets, hung with silk and satin, and thronged with dancers, jugglers, and revellers, fantastic figures, Ḳarāḳūsh (the oriental Punch), and the Chinese Shadows.

The poet Bahā-ed-dīn Zuheyr, the secretary of Ṣāliḥ, who survived his master and died in 1258, gives a vivid picture in his verses of the joyous society of early mamlūk times, from which it is evident that there was no very strict observance of the Muslim rule of temperance among the gay courtiers. The wine-cup is as prominent in Zuheyr's poems as in 'Omar Khayyām's. Many of the mamlūk sultans are described as being addicted to wine, and the great lord Beysarī was at one time stated to be incapable of taking part in affairs, because he was entirely given over to drink and hazard. Yet there are

redeeming points in this sottishness. The Muslims of the days of good Hārūn, and not less of the other "golden prime" of Beybars and Barḳūḳ, did not take their wine moodily or in solitude. They loved to have a jovial company round them, and plenty of flowers and sweet scents on the board; they perfumed their beards with civet, and sprinkled their beautiful robes with rose-water, while ambergris and frankincense, burned in the censers we still possess, diffused a delicious fragrance through the room. Nor was the feast complete without music and the voices of singing women, and the scene of their revels was often a palace such as Kubla Khan might have pictured in his dreams. We can scarcely realize now the stately pleasure domes which the mamlūks once decreed; how they hung them with rich stuffs, and strewed them with costly carpets; what wealth of carving and ivory-work embellished their doors and ceilings; how delicately inlaid were their drinking and washing vessels; how softly rich the colouring of their stained windows. In this flowering time of Saracenic art, a real interest belongs to the life and social condition of the people who made and encouraged the finest productions of the oriental artist. History can show few more startling contrasts than that offered by the spectacle of a band of disorderly soldiers—a standing army of foreigners, rarely intermarrying with the natives, a class absolutely apart—to all appearance barbarians, prone to shed blood, merciless to their enemies, tyrannous to their subjects, yet delighting in the delicate refinements which art could afford them in their home life, lavish in the endowment of pious foundations, magnificent in their mosques and palaces, and fastidious in the smallest details of dress and furniture. Allowing all that must be allowed for the passion of the barbarian for display, we are still far from an explanation how the Turks chanced to be the noblest promoters of art, of literature, and of public works, that Egypt had known since the days of the Ptolemies.

During this brilliant period the population of Egypt was sharply divided into two classes, who had little in

common with each other. One was that of the mamlūks, or military oligarchy, the other the mass of the Egyptians. The latter were useful for cultivating the land, paying the taxes which supported the mamlūks, and manufacturing their robes; but beyond these functions, and that of supplying the judicial and religious posts of the empire, they had small part in the business of the state and appear to have been very seldom incorporated into the ranks of their foreign masters. The names[1] of the mamlūks that have descended to us in the accurate and detailed pages of Maḳrīzī are generally Turkish, and even when they are ordinary Arabic names, they were borne by Turks who had put on an Arabic name along with the speech, dress, and country of their adoption. In the glories, military and ceremonial, of the mamlūks the people had no part. They were indeed thankful when a mild sovereign, like Lāǵīn, ascended the throne, and when taxes were reduced and bakhshīsh distributed; and they would join, like all mobs, in the decoration of the streets and public rejoicings, when the sultan came back

[1] It will be useful here to explain the system of mamlūk names and titles. Every mamlūk had (1) a proper name, such as Ketbughā, Lāǵīn, Beybars, Ḳalā'ūn, generally of Turkish derivation; (2) a surname or honourable epithet, as Ḥusām-ed-dīn, "Sword-blade of the Faith," Nūr-ed-dīn, "Light of the Faith," Nāṣir-ed-dīn, "Succourer of the Faith"; (3) generally a pseudo-patronymic, as Abū-l-Feṭḥ, "Father of Victory," Abu-n-Naṣr, "Father of Succour"; (4) if a sultan, an epithet affixed to the title of sultan or king, as el-Melik es-Sa'īd, "The Fortunate King," el-Melik en-Nāṣir, "The Succouring King," el-Melik el-Manṣūr, "The Victorious King"; (5) a title of possession, implying by its relative termination ī that the subject has been owned as a slave (or has been employed as an officer or retainer) by some sultan or lord, as el-Ashrafī, "The slave or mamlūk of the sultan el-Ashraf," el-Manṣūrī, "The mamlūk of the sultan el-Manṣūr." The order of these titles was as follows: first, the royal title, then the honourable surname, third, the patronymic, fourth, the proper name, and last the possessive: as es-Sulṭān el-Melik el-Manṣūr Ḥusām-ed-dīn Abū-l-Feṭḥ Lāǵīn el-Manṣūrī, "The Sultan, Victorious King, Sword-blade of the Faith, Father of Victory, Lāǵīn, mamlūk of the Sultan El-Manṣūr." It is usual, in abbreviating these numerous names, to style a sultan by his title, el-Manṣūr, etc., or by his proper name, Lāǵīn, etc., omitting the rest, while a noble (emīr) is conveniently denoted by his proper name alone.

from a career of conquest, or recovered from an illness; but they had no voice in the government of the country, and must make the best they might of the uncertain characters of their ever-changing rulers.

The following list shows the names and order of succession of the twenty-five sultans of the Baḥrī dynasty, few of whom call for detailed biography:—

	A.D.
Queen Sheǵer-ed-durr [1]	1250
el-Mo'izz 'Izz-ed-dīn Aybek [1]	1250
el-Manṣūr Nūr-ed-dīn 'Alī b. Aybek	1257
el-Muẓaffar Seyf-ed-dīn Ḳuṭuz [1]	1259
ez-Ẓāhir Rukn-ed-dīn Beybars [1]	1260
es-Sa'īd Nāṣir-ed-dīn Baraka Khān b. Beybars	1277
el-'Ādil Bedr-ed-dīn Selāmish b. Beybars	1279
el-Manṣūr Seyf-ed-dīn Ḳalā'ūn	1279
el-Ashraf Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn Khalīl b. Ḳalā'ūn [1]	1290
en-Nāṣir Nāṣir-ed-dīn Moḥammad b. Ḳalā'ūn	1293
el-'Ādil Zeyn-ed-dīn Ketbughā [2]	1294
el-Manṣūr Ḥusām-ed-dīn Lāǵīn [2]	1296
en-Nāṣir, second reign	1298
el-Muẓaffar Rukn-ed-dīn Beybars II. [2]	1308
en-Nāṣir, third reign	1309
el-Manṣūr Seyf-ed-dīn Abū-Bekr b. Nāṣir	1341
el-Ashraf 'Alā-ed-dīn Ḳūǵūḳ b. Nāṣir	1341
en-Nāṣir Shihāb-ed-dīn Aḥmad b. Nāṣir	1342
es-Ṣāliḥ 'Imād-ed-dīn Ismā'īl b. Nāṣir	1342
el-Kāmil Seyf-ed-dīn Sha'bān b. Nāṣir	1345
el-Muẓaffar Seyf-ed-dīn Ḥāǵǵī b. Nāṣir	1346
en-Nāṣir Nāṣir-ed-dīn Ḥasan b. Nāṣir	1347
es-Ṣāliḥ Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn Ṣāliḥ b. Nāṣir	1351
en-Nāṣir Ḥasan, second reign	1354
el-Manṣūr Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn Moḥammad b. Ḥāǵǵī	1361
el-Ashraf Nāṣir-ed-dīn Sha'bān b. Ḥoseyn b. Nāṣir	1363
el-Manṣūr 'Ala-ed-dīn 'Alī b. Sha'bān	1376
eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn Ḥāǵǵī b. Shı'bān	1381
[Barḳūḳ, Burǵī mamlūk	1382
Ḥāǵǵī, second reign, with title el-Manṣūr	1389
	—1390

1250 May After the murder of Tūrānshāh it was inevitable that the mamlūks should seize the throne of Egypt, yet

[1] Original Baḥrī mamlūks of Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb.

[2] Mamlūks of Ḳalā'ūn. It will be observed that from 1290 all the sultans were descendants of Ḳalā'ūn, except those who were his mamlūks.

they showed their respect for the late dynasty as well as gratitude for her former statesmanship by electing Ṣāliḥ's widow, Sheǵer-ed-durr, as their queen—almost the only queen who has ruled a Moḥammadan country before the present Empress of India. 1250 May

Fig. 56.—Dīnār of queen Sheǵer-ed-durr, Cairo, 1250.

Sheǵer-ed-durr combined the qualification of a mamlūka and comrade of the Baḥrīs with that of marriage with the Ayyūbid sultan, to whom she had born a son. The son, Khalīl, died in infancy, but how insistently she based her right to sovereignty upon her motherhood of a prince of the royal line is proved by her official signature on all state documents: she styled herself merely Umm-Khalīl (or Wālidat-Khalīl), "the mother of Khalīl." The prayers were recited in her name, and coins were struck with the feminine titles "el-Musta'ṣimıya, eṣ-Ṣāliḥīya, Melikat-el-Muslimīn, Wālidat el-Melik el-Manṣūr Khalīl-Amīr-el-Mu'minīn," which signify "the [former] slave of [the caliph] Musta'ṣim [and afterwards] of Ṣāliḥ; queen of the Muslims, mother of el-Melik el-Manṣūr Khalīl [friend] of the Commander of the Faithful."[1] The first act of the new sultan was to

[1] The only coin known of Sheǵer-ed-durr is in the British Museum (Lane-Poole, *Catalogue*, iv. p. 136), and bears these titles, together with those of the contemporary 'Abbāsid caliph Musta'ṣim, and the date, Cairo, A.H. 648 (which began 5 April, 1250). The titles are the same as those given in Maḳrīzī. The coin is the sole numismatic record of her reign, which lasted less than three months, and is the only known coin of a Muslim queen, except Riẓīya of Dehli, Abish of Fārs, and Nūr-Jahān on the Mogul emperor Jahāngīr's coinage. The queen's surname or *laḳab* was 'Asmat-ed-dīn, "Defender of the Faith," and her royal style was sulṭān: there is no such feminine form as "sultana" in Arabic. The generic name Sheǵer-ed-durr, so written by Abū-l-Fidā and other historians, is often altered to the noun of unity Sheǵeret-ed-durr by Maḳrīzī and later writers.

confirm the previous treaty with king Louis, and despatch him and his army safely out of the country. It is at least highly probable that partly to her the Crusaders owed their lives; since in the excitement after the murder of Tūrānshāh, and again when they were drunk with the re-occupation of Damietta, the mamlūks were in two minds whether to massacre the Christians or not. The ransom probably turned the scale. Louis's queen, who had been at Damietta, paid the first half of the 800,000 besants, and the king lost no time in leaving the coast.

The anomaly of a Muslima queen was too repugnant to Moḥammadan ideas to last. The blessed Prophet had said, "the people that make a woman their ruler are past saving," and the caliph of Baghdād, far from being conciliated by the apparent fact that the new sultan of Egypt had once been in his ḥarīm, wrote to the Egyptian leaders that "if they had no *man* among them, he would send them one." The hint was taken, and 'Izz-ed-dīn Aybek, one of the leading Baḥrīs and then *atābeg-el-'asākir*, or commander-in-chief, was chosen by the emīrs to be the husband of Sheǧer-ed-durr and
1250 July 31 sultan of Egypt, with the title of el-Melik el-Mo'izz.[1]

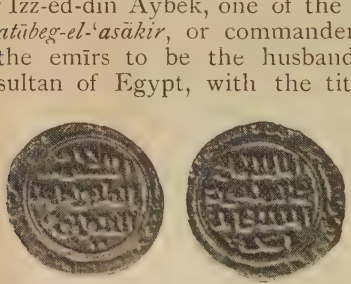


Fig. 57.—Dīnār of Aybek, Alexandria, 1256.

A further precaution was observed in view of the hostility of the Ayyūbids in Syria. The descendants of Saladin were not disposed to let Egypt pass from their possession without an effort to preserve it to the family, and en-Nāṣir of Aleppo, Saladin's great-grandson, had already seized Damascus (which then belonged to Egypt) as a step towards a march

[1] Aybek's rare coins are from old dies of es-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, with the addition of the name Aybek (no title), and with the dates Cairo, 651 and 652 (1253, 1254). No coins bear the joint names of Aybek and el-Ashraf Mūsā.

upon the Nile. In order to deprive him of a pretext, the mamlūks set up a joint-king, to reign with Aybek, in the person of el-Ashraf Mūsā, a child of six, great-grandson of el-Kāmil.[1] But the real power still rested in the queen's hands; she controlled the finances, refused to inform Aybek where the treasure of the late sultan Ṣāliḥ was deposited, and kept her husband in strict subordination. His real function was to fight the queen's enemies; whilst she managed the internal affairs of state, always, however, in the names of the joint kings, and with the assistance of a military oligarchy composed of the leading mamlūks, of whom Āḳṭāi, Beybars, and Balban were the most prominent and held the chief official posts. 1250 Aug. 5

Aybek had two dangers to guard against; one was invasion by the legitimist Ayyūbids of Syria, the other, conspiracy among his brother mamlūks and Arab subjects —the risk of trouble from the native Egyptians might be neglected. The most pressing peril was from the legitimists. Already a portion of the mamlūk army at Ṣāliḥīya near the Syrian frontier had proclaimed a rival king in el-Mughīth 'Omar, a son of 'Ādil II and grandson of Kāmil, a candidate with a good title to the throne,—so good, indeed, that his uncle Ṣāliḥ had kept him a close prisoner at Shawbek (Montreal). Thence he had only just been released by his opportunist gaoler, and had immediately occupied the strong fortress of Karak. Aybek's reply to this competition was to throw Egypt under the protection of the caliph of Baghdād, by proclaiming it a province of the 'Abbāsid caliphate and himself as the caliph's viceroy. Having thus set up another legitimist title, far older than that of the Ayyūbids, Aybek turned to measures of war. He first sent Āḳṭāi, the commander of the Baḥrī mamlūks, to relieve Gaza, which the Syrians were besieging, and meanwhile he exerted himself to convince the people of Egypt of his respect for the late dynasty. The body of Aug.

[1] Mūsā was the son of en-Nāṣir Yūsuf, the son of el-Mes'ūd Yūsuf (Kāmil's son) who ruled the Yemen from 1215 to 1228.

Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb was removed from the castle of Rōḍa, where it had been hurriedly concealed by Sheǵer-ed-durr, and
1250 Oct. was accorded a magnificent funeral in the tomb-mosque (still existing) which she had built for it in the Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn: Aybek and Ashraf, the joint-kings, and the officers of state attended in great pomp; all the mamlūks were dressed as mourners in white and cut off their hair; the tomb was reverently covered with banners, and the bow and quiver of the late sultan were laid upon it. The people were also encouraged to believe that the Ayyūbid opposition was divided, that Mughīth of Karak had become the ally of Aybek, and all sorts of false rumours were put about.

1251 Nevertheless everybody predicted the triumph of the old dynasty, and when Nāṣir of Damascus arrived on the frontier, the people of Cairo were confident in his success and prepared a welcome. Aybek and Āḳṭāi, with a large army of mamlūks and Arabs of Upper Egypt, met the legitimist claimant near 'Abbāsa, and an obstinate
Feb. 3 battle ensued. The Egyptian Arabs, routed at the first onslaught, fled to their homes, announcing on their way the defeat of Aybek. Cairo at once ranged itself on the side of the supposed victor; Nāṣir's name was honoured next day in the Friday prayers, and preparations were made for his entertainment. The battle, however, was not over when the Arabs fled; the Egyptian right drove in the Syrian left; the centres were evenly balanced, and the issue wavered. At last, the desertion of Nāṣir's mamlūks to their comrades of the other side turned the scales, and the remnant of the Syrian army fled to Damascus, abandoning camp and baggage, and losing many killed and prisoners. Among the latter, who graced Aybek's triumphant entry into Cairo, was eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl, the former lord of Damascus (see p. 229), and several other princes of Saladin's blood. Ismā'īl was paraded before the tomb of his old rival, Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, and strangled in the Citadel as an inveterate enemy of Egypt.

Encouraged by this victory, Aybek sent Āḳṭāi to recover Gaza and Palestine, and took the opportunity of

increased prestige to depose his nominal partner, the child Ashraf, and send him away to Constantinople (1254). Meanwhile the caliph intervened to promote a peaceful understanding between his contending subjects of Syria and Egypt. His motive was evident: the Mongol invasion was already touching his frontiers, the barbarians were in Diyār-Bekr, and it was imperative to sink all minor differences and present a united front to the enemies of Islām. Peace was arranged by ambassadors from Baghdād on the basis that Egypt should hold Palestine west of the Jordan, including Jerusalem and the Muslim part of the coast. The treaty was renewed in 1256, when Nāṣir abandoned his protection of Egyptian malcontents, and Aybek had no further trouble from the legitimists.[1] 1252 1253 Apr.

The danger from the intrigues of his own household was more difficult to guard against than the open attacks of the enemy. Āḳṭāi, who was the most distinguished of the mamlūk generals and had not only completed the discomfiture of Louis IX but repeatedly beaten the Syrians, was a serious rival to Aybek. The Baḥrī mamlūks would obey no other leader, and with Āḳṭāi's connivance this truculent soldiery became a terror to the inhabitants; they indulged their licence in atrocious acts of violence, pillaged innocent houses, and raided the public baths for women. The very Franks, says Maḳrīzī, could not have done worse. To add to the general anarchy, the Arabs of the Ṣa'īd broke into revolt with the cry of "Egypt for the Arabs," not the Turks, and this race movement became so popular that the Arabs were able to muster some 12,000 horse and a multitude of foot soldiers. They were met near the apex of the delta by Āḳṭāi with only 5000 of his trusty mamlūks, but his usual skill and their courage once more brought victory. A campaign in the north quickly reduced the Arabs of the delta who had caught the spirit of revolt, and Aybek treacherously entrapped their leader

[1] The Egyptian frontier, according to Abū-l-Fidā, was then fixed near el-'Arīsh, as it is to-day.

and many of his followers, and punished the tribes by increased taxation. The result was their ruin. The Arabs of Egypt had been rich and owned many horses and large herds: henceforward, says the historian in the fifteenth century, they were reduced to the state in which they now decline.

This latest triumph made Āḳṭāi more insupportable than ever; and Aybek resolved to get rid of him. The general was trapped in the citadel of Cairo, and his head was thrown to his escort standing below the walls. Many Baḥrī mamlūks, appalled at this sudden blow, fled the country, and some who stayed behind were arrested. For the moment Aybek had saved his throne. The exiled mamlūks, however, remained a perpetual menace: they raided Palestine, sought to stir up Nāṣir at Damascus, and when he was induced by the caliph to dismiss them, they joined Mughīth at Karak and hovered on the borders of Egypt. Aybek spent the best part of three years in camp on the frontier, guarding against their attack. He was now bent on legitimizing his title, and sent an embassy to the caliph at Baghdād to request the robes of honour and usual insignia of investiture. At the same time he proposed to marry a daughter of Lu'lu, the prince of Mōṣil. This produced a final rupture with his wife, Sheǧer-ed-durr, who, although she lived on the worst terms with her husband, was intensely jealous of sharing him with other women. She had already made him divorce a former wife, and she would not tolerate a fresh marriage, especially to a princess of rank. Aybek had been told by the court astrologer that he would die of a woman's plot, and he was privately warned that the queen was meditating his removal. He seems to have entertained corresponding designs on his own part, but
1257 she anticipated them. Inviting him to the Citadel with
10 every assurance of sincerity, she had him murdered in his bath. When it was done, she tried to pass it off as a natural death, but the mamlūks soon extracted the truth from tortured slaves. In vain the queen offered the throne to several nobles; none dare to accept so perilous a gift. The mamlūks would have killed her in their

fury, but the old ties of comradeship secured her the protection of the Baḥrīs, who had moreover no cause to love Aybek. She was shut up in the Red Tower, and foreseeing her doom the heroic lady devoted her last hours to pounding her jewels in a mortar, that no other woman should wear them. Three days later she was dragged before the wife whom she had compelled Aybek to divorce, and in her rival's presence queen Sheǵer-ed-durr was battered to death by the wooden clogs of the women slaves. They threw her half-naked body into the citadel ditch, where it lay several days to be devoured by dogs, until at last some one buried it. Her tomb still stands near the chapel of Sitta Nefīsa, and some pious modern hand has covered it with a cloth embroidered with her name. Her end was like Jezebel's: yet she had saved Egypt. 1257 Apr. 13

Aybek's son (by the divorced wife) was set upon the vacant throne by the choice of the mamlūks, but the lad of fifteen, who spent his time in the frivolous amusements of cock-fighting and donkey-rides, was only a make-shift to avoid a struggle between the jealous emīrs. El-Melik el-Manṣūr 'Alī,[1] as he was styled, was no sovereign for the crisis at hand, and in Nov., 1259, he was deposed by the regent, Ḳuṭuz (formerly Aybek's deputy or *nāïb-es-salṭana*) who ascended the throne with the title of el-Melik el-Muẓaffar.[2] As he observed to his followers, this was no time for boy puppets, "we want a fighting king." The danger now was not from the legitimists, for Ḳuṭuz had completely routed the Ayyūbid el-Mughīth of Karak when he attempted with the support of the exiled Baḥrīs to conquer Egypt. A far greater peril threatened the whole Moḥammadan east in the advance of the Mongols under Hūlāgū, who took Baghdād and murdered the caliph in Feb., 1258, conquered all Syria in 1260, and pushed on to Gaza, 1259

[1] A gold coin of el-Manṣūr Nūr-ed-dīn 'Ali bears the date Cairo, 656 (1258).

[2] A gold coin of el-Muẓaffar Seyf-ed-dīn Ḳuṭuz has the date 658 (1259-60), but the mint is effaced, and a silver coin has the mint Damascus, but the year effaced.

harrying and destroying everything in their way. Hūlāgū sent an embassy to the sultan of Egypt, bearing a letter full of menace and requiring his abject submission. Ḳuṭuz replied by executing the ambassadors and hanging up their heads at the gate Zawīla. He would have no parleying with the enemy, lest some of the fainter-
1260 July hearted emīrs should be won over. As it was, he had to administer a stern reproof to them before he could lead a united and determined army to the frontier. Murmurs were stifled, and courage raised, when Beybars with the vanguard drove the Mongol garrison out of Gaza; and the whole army of Egypt marched north along the coast, secured the neutrality of the Franks of 'Akka, and then went to encounter the barbarians. They found them near
Sept. 3 Beysān at Goliath's Spring ('Ayn G'ālūd—a famous site in Crusading warfare), and the tremendous shock of the Mongol charge shattered the Egyptian militia. But the headlong flight led to victory; for the Mongols, dispersed in pursuit, lost formation, and were easily cut off by the steady attack of the unshaken mamlūks. The Mongol general, Ketbughā, fell, and his army was soon
Sept. 6 in full retreat, joined by the garrison of Damascus, where the Muslims immediately rose and slew its Christian population, who had triumphed prematurely over the downfall of Islām. Ḳuṭuz restored order throughout the devastated cities, replaced the Ayyūbid princes as tributaries in their old seats at Ḥimṣ and Ḥamāh, and the public prayers were recited in his name as far as Aleppo and the Euphrates. As he was returning in triumph from the brilliant campaign which had rescued Egypt and recovered Syria, he fell a victim to the jealousies which are the inevitable bane of a military dictatorship. Beybars, the ablest of his generals, baulked of his desire for the government of Aleppo,
Oct. 24 conspired with other nobles, and Ḳuṭuz was assassinated whilst returning from the chase within the Egyptian frontier. The chief regicide was elected sultan on the spot.

Beybars—or es-Sulṭān el-Melik eẓ-Ẓāhir[1] Rukn-ed-

[1] "The Ascendant King, prop of church and state, Beybars [mamlūk] of the Arbalesteer [and] of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ." He first chose the title el-

dunyā-wa-dīn Beybars el-Bunduḳdārī eṣ-Ṣāliḥī—was the real founder of the mamlūk empire. His predecessors had barely and briefly held their power against rivals, revolts, and foreign foes: Beybars made himself supreme over all. He was a native of Kipchak, between the Caspian and the Ural Mountains,—a tall ruddy fellow, with blue eyes, one of which was disfigured by a cataract: hence he only fetched about £20 in the slave market. He had belonged to the emīr Aydekīn el-Bunduḳdār, "the arbalesteer," whence his epithet el-Bunduḳdārī, which Marco Polo wrote "Bendocquedar." Afterwards he passed into the service of Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb, and became one of the most conspicuous of the Ṣāliḥī or Baḥrī mamlūks, especially distinguishing himself at the battle of Manṣūra. He was the first great mamlūk sultan, and the right man to lay the foundations of the empire. "Bondogar," says William of Tripolis, "as a soldier was not inferior to Julius Caesar, nor in malignity to Nero"; but he allows that the sultan was "sober, chaste, just to his own people, and even kind to his Christian subjects." So well did he organize his wide-stretching provinces that no incapacity or disunion among his successors could pull down the fabric he had

Fig. 58.—Dīnār of Beybars, Alexandria, 1261.

Ḳāhir, but this was found to possess unlucky precedents, and was changed for eẓ-Ẓāhir, "the Ascendant." After re-establishing the 'Abbasid caliphate at Cairo he added the title Ḳasīm-Amīr-el-mu'minīn, "partner of the Commander of the Faithful." His coinage (like most of the mamlūk currency) is frequently so rubbed as to be illegible, but there are dated coins of Cairo, 664, 665, 666, and 667 (1265-9); Alexandria, 659, 661, 664, 667 (1260-9); and Damascus and Ḥamah, with uncertain dates. His coins bear his badge, a lion passant—a notable innovation in the Egyptian type of currency. The name is usually written Beybars, but on the coins the *y* is not inserted, and the name would appear to be Bibars, as Quatremère spells it.

raised, until the wave of Ottoman conquest swept at last upon Egypt and Syria. To him is due the organization of the mamlūk army, the rebuilding of a navy, the allotment of fiefs to the lords and soldiers, the building of causeways and bridges, and digging of canals in various parts of Egypt. He strengthened the fortresses of Syria and garrisoned them with mamlūks; he connected Damascus and Cairo by a postal service of four days, and used to play polo in both cities within the same week. His mosque still stands without the north gates, and his college once stood—only an angle remains—in the Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn. He founded an endowment for the burial of poor Muslims. In many respects he was a great ruler, and his qualities must have been remarkable to have raised him from the level of a one-eyed slave to be the consolidator of an empire that lasted for 250 years.

1260 Oct. Beybars was determined to be a second Saladin, to revive the power and prestige of the Egyptian empire, and to wage war against the "infidels" who still lingered on the Mediterranean coast. Syria had indeed been recovered by his predecessor,—and Beybars was careful to confirm his local appointments and conciliate the governors,—but it was held on a precarious tenure. A rival proclaimed himself king at Damascus, and though suppressed (Jan. 1261) his ambition was significant. The first object of the new sultan was to keep the Mongols—who now formed an established dynasty known as the Īlkhāns of Persia or Hulaguids—on the further side of the Euphrates; the second object was to punish the Crusader states which had made common cause with the barbarians against the remnant of the once extensive caliphate. In order to emphasize his position as the pre-eminent sultan of Islām, he not only spent largely upon mosques and pious endowments, but invited an exiled representative of the extinguished 'Abbāsid caliphate to come to Cairo, where he enthroned

Fig. 59.—Lion of Beybars on boss of mosque-door, 1268.

him with splendid pomp as the rightful pontiff of Islām, with the title el-Mustanṣir, and received from him the gold-embroidered black turban, the purple robe, and the gold chain and anklets, which denoted the duly appointed and spiritually recognized sovereign of the caliph's realm.[1] 1261 June

Having thus acquired the title to act as the head of the Muslims, Beybars set about consolidating his power by alliances with foreign princes. By a fortunate coincidence Baraka, the khān of the Golden Horde, or Mongols of Kipchak, who pastured in the valley of the Volga, had embraced Islām, and was in deadly rivalry with his kinsmen the Īlkhāns of Persia. Embassies were exchanged (1261-3) between Baraka and Beybars, accompanied by valuable presents, and the two became allies against Persia.[2] Baraka's name was even prayed for

[1] At first Beybars seems to have contemplated the restoration of the caliphate at Baghdād, and furnished the caliph with an army and a splendid retinue for the purpose; but when the actual advance upon Mesopotamia began, his fears were excited lest a restored caliphate might prove hostile to himself, and he left the unlucky Mustanṣir almost unsupported to make the attempt, in which he apparently lost his life. Another 'Abbāsid caliph was then set up at Cairo (1262) with the title of el-Ḥākim; but there was no more talk of reconquering Baghdād, and thenceforward the second or Egyptian dynasty of 'Abbāsid caliphs were restricted to such spiritual functions as the ritual of the mosque afforded. They formed, however, the technical centre of Islām, and served to connect the old caliphate of Baghdād with the modern sultans of Turkey, to whom they bequeathed such rights as they were able to bestow. The succession of the 'Abbāsid caliphs of Egypt may here be noted:—el-Mustanṣir 1261, el-Ḥākim I 1262, el-Mustekfī I 1302, el-Wāthiḳ I 1339, el-Ḥākim II 1340, el-Mo'taḍid I 1352, el-Mutawekkil I 1362, el-Mo'taṣim 1377, el-Mutawekkil restored 1377, el-Wāthiḳ II 1383, el-Mo'taṣim restored 1386, el-Mutawekkil, third time, 1389, el-Musta'īn 1405 (sultan 1412), el-Mo'taḍid II 1413, el-Mustekfī II 1440, el-Ḳāïm 1451, el-Mustenṣid 1454, el-Mutawekkil II 1479, el-Mustemsik 1497, el-Mutawekkil III 1498, el-Mustemsik restored 1516, el-Mutawekkil III restored 1521, to assumption of caliphate by 'Othmanlī sultan, 1538.

[2] Detailed accounts of the Egyptian embassy in 1263 to the khan of the Golden Horde are given by Ibn-el-Furāt and en-Nuweyri, translated in Quatremère's Maḳrīzī, i. 213, note. The envoys went to Constantinople, crossed to the Crimea, and thence to the Itil (Volga) where they found the camp of Baraka. Ambassadors from Baraka reached Cairo in 1263.

next to the sultan's on Fridays in the mosques of Cairo, Jerusalem, Mekka and Medīna, and his daughter became the wife of Beybars. The sultan's envoys went to the khān by way of Constantinople, where a friendly understanding had already been established with the emperor Michael Palaeologus, who was naturally disposed to side with anybody who was the sworn foe of Latin Christianity, as represented by the Crusaders, from whose violence and misrule the East Roman empire had suffered for half a
1262 century. Beybars, at the emperor's request, had supplied a Melekite patriarch for Constantinople, now at last reclaimed to the orthodox church; and in return Michael had authorized the restoration of the old mosque which had existed in his capital for centuries until destroyed by the Latins. Another embassy from Cairo waited upon Manfred, king of Sicily and Tuscany, who, as the son of Frederick II and the enemy of the papacy, welcomed the envoys, though he had no assistance to give. Commercial treaties, moreover, were signed between the sultan of Egypt and James of Aragon, and afterwards (1271-2) with Alfonso of Seville. Charles of Anjou, brother of Louis IX, sent a mission to Cairo in 1264. An ally was also found in Kay-Khusru, one of the struggling Selǧūḳ princes of Asia Minor, then falling under Mongol sway. All these engagements display Beybars in the character of a prudent and far-sighted statesman; but it was the alliance with the powerful khān of the Golden Horde that preserved the Muslim empire from serious invasion by the Mongols of Persia. They did indeed repeatedly attack Bīra, at the passage of the Euphrates, and pushed a raid into Syria as far as Apamea; but Beybars wisely laid the northern districts waste, that the invaders should find no food or fodder, and thenceforward, though a perpetual menace, the Mongol armies effected no important successes during his reign.

There were, however, sympathizers with the Mongols along the Syrian coast who had to be dealt with. The Franks, especially Boemond VI, prince of Antioch and Tripolis, finding them disposed to favour Christianity at

the expense of Islām, were supporters of the Īlkhāns. Consequently they were special objects of Beybars's attack. For ten years—1261 to 1271—he waged almost annual campaigns against the Crusader states. At first these were merely raids into the territory of Antioch, Cilicia, and the district of 'Akka, accompanied by much cruelty and devastation, or enlivened by great battues of game. Amongst others, the church of Nazareth was destroyed. In 1265, however, he began a series of conquests. In that year Caesarea and Arsūf were taken and razed to the ground, lest they should again become strongholds of the "infidels." By a refinement of insult the Christian defenders of the conquered fortresses were compelled to help in their dismantling, and then led with broken crosses round their necks, and banners reversed, to grace the victor's triumphal entry into Cairo. Dervishes and fakīrs, seconded by religious women, had encouraged and inflamed the zeal of the Muslim troops and worked at the trenches; and Beybars himself toiled like a navvy at the demolition of the fortifications. In 1266 the troops were again called out from their homes; and after piously visiting Jerusalem and Hebron and distributing alms, the Sultan seized 'Arka, raided the Christian lands about 'Akka, Tyre, and Sidon, and won Ṣafed, after three attempts to storm it, from the Templars, who were nearly all slain. Unlike the coast towns, Ṣafed was now garrisoned and its fortifications strengthened. In all this Beybars took a personal share, encouraging the men by taking the post of danger, helping in the labour of bringing up the siege train, and displaying unwonted solicitude for the sick and wounded, providing hospital tents, physicians and surgeons. At the same time he severely repressed disorder and pillage in Muslim territory, forbade wine to be used in camp, and slit the noses of officers who indulged in private looting or damage to the crops. In the autumn he again overran the dominions of the king of Little Armenia (Cilicia) as far as Tarsus, and Haithon purchased peace by the surrender of Derbesāk and the country east of the G'eyhūn river. Jaffa was captured in 1268, and

1265 Mar.–Apr.

1266 May

July

1267

1268 Mar.

razed to the foundations :[1] its fine marbles were used to decorate the mosques of Cairo. Shekīf Arnūn (Belfort) surrendered in April, and the crowning triumph of the
1268 May 19 campaign was the storming of Antioch, the head-quarters of Christianity in northern Syria. The noble city was burnt to the ground.

Beybars took the occasion of the conquest of Antioch to write to its prince, Boemond VI, one of those boastful and sarcastic letters for which he was famous. Addressing him as "ccunt," since he had now lost his princedom, he reminds him that he has been "looking on like a man in a mortal swoon" whilst piece after piece of his dominions has been taken from him. Then the conqueror describes the campaign which ended in the storming of Boemond's capital, sparing him no details : "Hadst thou but seen," he wrote, "thy knights trodden under the hoofs of the horses ! thy palaces invaded by plunderers and ransacked for booty ! thy treasures weighed out by the hundredweight ! thy ladies bought and sold with thine own gear, at four for a dīnār ! hadst thou but seen thy churches demolished, thy crosses sawn in sunder, thy garbled gospels hawked about before the sun ; the tombs of thy nobles cast to the ground ; the monk, the priest, the deacon slaughtered on the altar ; the rich abased to misery, princes of royal blood reduced to slavery ! could'st thou but have seen the flames devouring thy halls ; thy dead cast into the fires temporal, with the fires eternal hard at hand ; the churches of Paul and of Cosmas rocking and going down ! —then would'st thou have said, 'Would God that I were dust !' . . . . This letter holds happy tidings for thee : it tells thee that God watches over thee to prolong thy days, inasmuch as in these latter days thou wert not in Antioch ! Hadst thou been there, now wouldst thou be slain or a prisoner, wounded or disabled. A live man rejoiceth in his safety when he looketh on a field of

[1] There had been a treaty between John of Ibelin, count of Jaffa, and the Ayyūbid sultan, en-Nāṣir, of Damascus, which Beybars confirmed in a personal interview with John in 1261. The death of John of Ibelin, however, terminated the agreement.

slain . . . . As not a man hath escaped to tell thee the tale, we tell it thee ; as no soul could apprise thee that thou art safe, while all the rest have perished, we apprise thee."[1]

This loss so dispirited the Franks that they asked for peace, and Beybars himself accompanied his own ambassadors into Tripolis, disguised as a groom, in order to spy out the place with a view to a future siege. The Franks of 'Akka also opened peace negotiations, which fell through. A raid upon the country near Tyre and 'Akka in 1269 was followed by a more vigorous campaign in 1271, when the great castle of Crac des Chevaliers (Ḥiṣn-el-Akrād) was surrendered by the Hospitallers ; Tortosa and Markab won a truce by a sacrifice of territory ; Akkār capitulated, and the Teutonic knights were unable to defend the fortress of Montfort (el-Ḳureyn). "Our yellow flag hath overcome thy red," wrote Beybars again to Boemond, "and thy bells are silenced by Allāhu Akbar," the call to prayer. After further hostilities Tyre made terms by dividing its territory with Egypt ; and Hugh III of Cyprus, styling himself king of Jerusalem, succeeded in obtaining a treaty of peace for 'Akka and Cyprus for ten years, ten months, and ten days. This arrangement was partly due to the arrival of reinforcements from England, under prince Edward Plantagenet, in May 1271, who inspired the 'Akkans to renewed courage and even secured a couple of small successes; and partly to the threatening movements of the Mongols, who made incursions into northern Syria in 1271 and 1272. The Egyptian fleet, moreover, had been disastrously wrecked at Limasol in an attempt to conquer Cyprus—the main support of Boemond—and Beybars was busy repairing the injury by the rapid construction of fresh vessels. On the death of Boemond in 1275, peace was renewed with his successor, who agreed to pay an annual tribute of 20,000 *D.*

1271 Apr. 7
May 11
June 12
1272 Apr. 22

The Franks were now harmless, and before this another

[1] The letter is printed in Arabic (from Nuweyrī) and French in Quatremère, *Mamlouks*, I., ii. 190-4 ; in German in Weil, iv. 63-7, and the spirited English version is by Sir H. Yule, *Marco Polo*, i. 25.

danger had been removed by the submission of the "Assassins." These fanatics of the Ismā'īlian sect, secure in their nine rocky fortresses among the Anṣārīya mountains between Markab and Ḥamāh, had been the terror of Syria since the beginning of the twelfth century, and their *fidāwīs* or emissaries had carried out the lethal orders of their sheykh in many a secret murder. Saladin had vainly attempted to suppress them, and since his failure they had been courted by many Christian powers, and were under the special protection of the Knights Hospitallers. In 1267, however, by a treaty with the knights, Beybars took over the tribute of the Assassins, and having acquired an influence over them[1] he set about disarming their power. Between 1270 and 1273 he took their fortresses one by one, by force or by capitulation, and induced the most dreaded of all secret societies to take up its abode in Egypt, where it gradually lost its fanatical character and became merged in the peaceful population.

1275 Meanwhile, relieved from hostilities on the Syrian coast, Beybars turned his arms northwards; once more he overran Cilicia, surprised and burnt el-Maṣṣīṣa and Sis, and raided up to Tarsus, where the prayers of Islām were recited in triumph. He had defeated the Mongols near Bīra early in 1273, after swimming the Euphrates at the head of his troops; and in 1277 he waged his last campaign against the most powerful of his foes. They now ruled Asia Minor and the young Selǧūḳ princes by means of a governor, or Perwāna, Mu'īn-ed-dīn, and against him Beybars led the yellow standards of his ever-victorious army. Near Abulusteyn he fell upon the
1277 enemy, with his 11,000 mamlūks, and inflicted so terrible
Apr. 16 a defeat that the Mongols left nearly 7000 dead upon the field. Their camp was taken and the prisoners put to death. The sultan seated himself upon the throne at
Apr. 23 Ḳayṣarīya (Caesarea) where the Selǧūḳ sultans of Rūm had reigned for two centuries, and here he received the

[1] Beybars was reported to have urged the Assassins to the murderous assault upon Edward Plantagenet, but he strenuously denied the charge.

homage of the people, was prayed for in the mosque, belauded by the poets, hymned by the royal Selǧūḳ band ; and here he caused coins to be struck in his name, and divided the Perwāna's treasure among the troops. Here too he received the allegiance of the Turkmān ruler of Ḳaramān, whose tribesmen proved a useful buffer on the northern frontier. It was but a temporary occupation, for the Persian Īlkhān was already mustering a vast army to recover his losses, and Beybars prudently returned to Syria, leaving Caesarea to the pitiless butchery of the enraged Mongols : but the glory of having sat on the Selǧūḳ throne was not the least among his triumphs.

Nor was this northern expansion the only side on which the empire of Egypt was enlarged. Slightly more permanent was the annexation of the Sūdān. Dāwūd, the Christian king of Nubia, who should by ancient custom have paid an annual tribute or *baḳt* of slaves to the sultan (see above, p. 23), had sent various expeditions into the Egyptian territory, and taken Muslims captive at Aswān on the Nile and at Aydhāb on the Red Sea coast. In return the Egyptian governor of Ḳūṣ had raided Nubia as far as Dongola in 1272-3; and in 1275 Beybars seized the opportunity of the arrival of Dāwūd's nephew Shekenda in Egypt to espouse his cause and set him up in opposition to his uncle. A fresh army was sent into the Sūdān, the forts of Daw, Sūs and Dongola were taken, Dāwūd defeated, and Shekenda set upon the throne, after taking the most solemn and 1275
tremendous oath by all he held sacred to be a true and loyal vassal to the sultan of Egypt, to render the customary *baḳt* of slaves, and to pay half the revenue of the kingdom, together with various elephants, giraffes, panthers, dromedaries, and oxen, as tribute, as well as a gold dīnār for each adult male of the population, who were also compelled to take an oath of allegiance. The conquest of the Sūdān had been attempted before in 652, and again by Saladin's brother in 1173, but its dependence had been merely nominal, and such it soon became again.

Beybars had now reached the goal of his aspirations.

The slave had risen (by a twofold murder of his leaders, it is true) to become the greatest sultan of his century. His orders were obeyed from the fourth cataract of the Nile to the river Pyramus, and on the east from Bīra along the Euphrates to Ḳarḳīsiyā on the Khābūr. The Bedawīs of the deserts were his auxiliaries, the sherīfs of the holy cities of Arabia were under his control; all Syria was subject to him, save the few cities on the coast which the Christians still held, and the principality of Ḥamāh. The king of the Yemen courted his friendship, and sent him costly gifts; the ruler of Abyssinia sought a patriarch at his hands. Sawākin on the Red Sea was his, and the chiefs of north Africa from Barḳa
1277 westwards paid him tribute.[1] At the height of his
July 1 renown he died, probably from a poisoned cup which he had prepared for another.

The greater part of his reign was spent in campaigns outside Egypt, but he generally passed the winter months at Cairo, whilst his troops rested and rains or snow hindered marching, and he devoted these intervals to improving the country and the capital. It was not only in founding and restoring mosques and colleges, or rebuilding the Hall of Justice at the foot of the citadel, that he showed his public interest. He enlarged the irrigation canals and dug new ones, made roads and bridges, fortified Alexandria and repaired the pharos,

[1] Weil, iv. 96-97. Ḳarḳīsiyā was taken from the Mongols in 1265; a year later the sherīf of Medīna received his appointment from Beybars, who also nominated the sherīf of Mekka. Ḥamāh was the last vestige of the Ayyūbid power, and its princes retained their title of king, though really subordinate to the mamlūk sultans, until their extinction in 1341; the last king but one, Abū-l-Fidā, more famous as an historian and geographer, was born in 1273 at Damascus, whither his parents had fled in dread of a Mongol invasion. Ḥimṣ (Emesa), the penultimate possession of the Ayyūbids, fell into Beybars's hands on the death of its last king in 1263. The rest of their dominions was taken by the Mongols about 1260, and the Syrian part was recovered by Ḳuṭuz. In 1263, Beybars had treacherously entrapped Mughīth, the Ayyūbid prince of Karak, and probable claimant for the throne of his father 'Ādil II of Egypt, and shut him up in the citadel of Cairo. Karak then became a fortress of Egypt, as Shawbek had been since 1261. Sawākin was taken in 1266.

and protected the mouths of the Nile from the risk of foreign invasion. He revived the Egyptian fleet, built forty war galleys, and maintained 12,000 regular troops —not reckoning, one must assume, the Arab and Egyptian militia or occasional levies. His heavy war expenses entailed heavy taxation; and though with a view to popularity he began his reign by remitting the oppressive taxes imposed by Ḳuṭuz to the amount of 600,000 *D.* a year, he found himself compelled to increase the fiscal burdens as his campaigns developed. Yet we read more often of old taxes repealed than of fresh duties imposed, and his treasury was filled less by the imposts of Egypt than by the contributions from the conquered cities and districts of Syria, the tribute of vassal states and tribes, and the valuable custom-dues of the ports. Some idea of his wealth may be gained from the list of the presents he sent to his ally, the khān of the Golden Horde. There was a throne inlaid with carved ebony and ivory, a silver chest, choice prayer-carpets, curtains, cushions innumerable, fine sword-blades with silver hilts, saddles from Khwārizm, bows from Damascus, Arabian javelins, silver and enamelled lamps and chandeliers, a priceless Ḳorān in a gold-embroidered case, black eunuchs, cooks, Arab horses, dromedaries, mules, wild asses, giraffes, apes, parrots, etc.

His government was enlightened, just, and strict. He met the severe famine of 1264 by measures at once wise and generous, by regulating the sale of corn, and by undertaking, and compelling his officers and emīrs to undertake, the support of the destitute for three months. He allowed no wine (though the tax on it used to produce 6000 *D.* a year), beer, or hashīsh in his dominions; he attempted to eradicate contagious diseases by scientific isolation; he was strict with the morals of his subjects, shut up taverns and brothels, and banished the European women of the town; though, personally, he was addicted to the Tatar kumiz, and was suspected of oriental depravity. He was no sybarite, whatever his vices; no man was more full of energy and power of work. If his days were often given to hunting or polo, lance-play or

marksmanship, his nights were devoted to business. A courier who arrived at daybreak received the answering despatches by the third hour, with invariable punctuality. We have seen (p. 247) how once fifty-six documents were drawn up, signed, and sealed in one night.

With the people he was popular: the Muslims always admired a fighting sultan, especially if he had an open hand, and Beybars was lavish in largesse, as well as in alms. He was also approved by the religious, not only on account of his pious endowments, but because he showed no favour to any one party in Islām. For the first time he appointed four ḳāḍīs, one for each of the four orthodox schools, and, by playing off one against another, contrived to get his own way in everything affecting law and religion. The nobles and officers of the state and army stood in dread of his wrath. He suspected every one, and constantly shifted his governors from post to post to prevent their acquiring local influence. If an emīr showed a trace of treason there was no mercy for him; on the other hand, a loyal servant was sure of good pay, rapid promotion, and a share of the conquered lands. The sultan's worst quality was his perfidy; his word and his oath were worthless, and he prided himself upon tricking an enemy to his death. The insidious device by which he got rid of an Armenian ecclesiastic, by sending him a compromising letter and causing it to be waylaid by an Egyptian agent and shown to the Mongol governor, is but one of many instances. But it is fair to remember that he only met like with like, and that the court in which he was trained, supplemented by the experience of his own career, was not such as to encourage boundless confidence in his comrades or servants. By such steps as he had climbed, others might climb too, and it is not surprising that suspicion kept his dungeons in the Citadel constantly full. His mistrust of his agents led to various devices in order to watch them unseen; he was supposed to be confined to his tent by illness in Palestine when he had really ridden incognito all the way to Cairo,[1] where he stayed several days concealed in the

Citadel, studying the behaviour of his unsuspecting representatives. On another occasion he is said to have ventured in disguise into Asia Minor to spy out the land, and having left a ring in pledge at a cook-shop, he had the effrontery to write to the Mongol Īlkhān Abāgā to request that it might be returned. His courage and daring, whether in battle or in dangerous exploration, were extraordinary. The heroic qualities of sultan Beybars have outlived his faults and pettinesses, and to the present century the audiences in the coffee-shops [1] of Cairo have delighted in the story-tellers' recital of the daring exploits and princely generosity of the king who has impressed the imagination of the Egyptians more than any other, scarcely excepting Alexander and Saladin.

[1] See the account of the romance of Eẓ-Ẓāhir (Eḍh-Ḍhāhir) in Lane, *Modern Egyptians*, ch. xxi.

CHAPTER X

THE HOUSE OF ḲALĀ'ŪN

1279—1382

Authorities.—Abū-l-Fidā, en-Nuweyrī, Ibn-Baṭūṭa, el-Maḳrīzī, Abū-l-Maḥāsin, el-Ḳalḳashandī, Ibn-Iyās; modern: Quatremère's *Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks* and *Mémoires sur l'Egypte;* Weil, *Geschichte der Chalifen*, iv.; Lane-Poole, *Art of the Saracens* and *Cat. Or. Coins in B.M.;* Casanova, *Hist. de la citadelle du Caire* (*Mém. miss. archéol. franç.* vi.).

Principal Monuments in Egypt.—Mosque, māristān, and kubba (*medfen*) Ḳalā'ūn, 1284—1303; mosque emīr Beydar; tomb Khalīl, in south Karāfa, 1288; Lāǧīn's restoration M. of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, 1296; T. Zeyn-ed-din Yūsuf, 1298; Medr. en-Nāṣir, 1299; restorations M. of el-Ḥākim, Azhar, Ibn-Ruzzīk, etc., 1302—4; khānaḳāh Beybars II, 1310; Medr. Ṭaybars (in Azhar), 1309; aqueduct and buildings in Citadel, 1313, and M. en-Nāṣir, 1318; M. emīr Ḥoseyn, 1319; M. Āl-melik, 1319; Medr. Senǧar el-Gʻāwalī and Salār, 1323; T. princess Ordutegīn, 1324; M. Aḥmad el-Mihmendār, 1325; part of M. Ḳawṣūn, 1329; M. Almās, 1330; Medr. Āḳbughā, 1334; T. of Tāshtimur, 1334; palace Beshtāk, c. 1335; T. and M. Altunbughā el-Māridānī, 1338—9; M. Sitta Miska, 1339; M. Aṣlam, 1346; M. Kuǧuk, 1346; M. Aḳsunḳur, 1347; M. Arghūn el-Ismāʻīlī, 1348; M. Ḳutlūbughā, 1348; M. Mangak, 1350; M., khānaḳāh, and sebīl Sheykhū, 1350—5; cistern of Lāǧīn, 1351; M. Ṣarghitmish, 1357; M. and T. sultan Ḥasan, 1356—62; restorations M. el-Ḥākim, 1359, and Azhar, 1360; Medr. princess Tatar el-Ḥiǧazīya, 1360; T. princess Ṭulbīya, 1364; T. Tinkiz, 1363; Medr. el-Gʻāi el-Yūsufī, 1373; M. el-Ashraf Shaʻbān, 1368.

Principal Inscriptions in Egypt.—On the mosques and tombs enumerated above, often with dates of commencement as well as of completion; Baraka Khān in mosque (disappeared), 1278; Bektimur in M. of Ṭalāiʻ, 1300; Beybars II in M. Ḥākim, 1303; Nāṣir on Citadel, 1313, and in M. Ḳalā'ūn, 1303.

Principal Inscriptions in Syria.—Baraka (associated as prince with his father Beybars) on citadel of Damascus, and castle of Karak; Ḳalā'ūn on mausoleum built by him for Beybars and Baraka at Damascus, tablet commemorating conquest of Markab 1285, inscr. at

Balāṭunus, Ba'albekk, Karak, Jerusalem, Hebron, Nābulus, and Sheyzar; Khalīl at Yubna, on mosque at Tripolis, citadel of Aleppo; Ketbughā on great mosque (church) of Ramla, and Ḥamāh; Lāgīn on great mosque (church) of Gaza, at Shawbak, and Munākhir; Naṣir Moḥammad in ḥaram of Jerusalem, M. el-Aḳṣā, k. eṣ-Ṣakhra, etc., in mosques of Gaza, G'ebela, Tripolis, Ramla, on tower of Ramla, wall and gate of Damascus, and G'isr Tora near by, on castle of Karak, at Latakia and on Mt. Hor; Kāmil Sha'bān in M. el-Aḳṣā at Jerusalem, on castles of Karak and Tripolis; Ḥasan in M. el-Aḳṣā and in great mosque of Ba'albekk; eṣ-Ṣāliḥ in M. el-Aḳṣā and mosque at Mu'ta near Karak; Nāṣir Sha'bān on citadel of Aleppo (MSS. notes of M. van Berchem).

Coins (see under each reign), *armorial badges*, numerous *bowls and other vessels, enamelled glass lamps*, etc. in British, Victoria and Albert, Cairo, Paris, and other museums, and in private collections.

Of the three sons of Beybars, the eldest, by a daughter of Baraka Khān of the Golden Horde, was raised to the throne with the titles el-Melik es-Sa'īd Nāṣir-ed-dīn Baraka Khān. Beybars had proclaimed him his heir as early as 1264, and three years later had caused him to be saluted as "sultan," so anxious was he to secure the dynastic succession to his line. Unhappily he had not transmitted his great qualities to his sons. Es-Sa'īd was a weak pleasure-loving youth of nineteen, the tool of his Mongolian mother and of the gay young courtiers of his choice, upon whom he lavished the best appointments of the empire. The old emīrs of his father's wars were neglected; some were imprisoned, or even poisoned by the queen-mother; their discontent grew into open rebellion, and Sa'īd, besieged in the citadel of Cairo, was forced to abdicate, and to retire to the fortress of Karak.[1] The mamlūks begged Ḳalā·ūn, one of the most capable of the elder generals, to accept the throne; but the prudent emīr foresaw opposition, and preferred to set up the youngest son of his master, Bedr-ed-dīn Selāmish with the title of el-'Ādil. For a hundred days Ḳalā·ūn acted as atābeg or regent for the child of seven years, meanwhile placing his own supporters in all the

1279 Aug.

[1] He died in March, 1280, and was buried beside Beybars at Damascus. His brother, el-Mes'ūd Khiḍr, succeeded him as prince of Karak.

offices of state, and thus preparing the way for the next
1279 step. Selāmish was then quietly deposed, and Ḳalā'ūn
Nov. became sultan of Egypt.

El-Melik el-Manṣūr Seyf-ed-dīn Ḳalā'ūn el-Elfī eṣ-Ṣāliḥī,[1] a Turk of the Burǵ Oghlu tribe of Kipchak, more fortunate in his progeny than Beybars, founded a princely house which lasted a hundred years, maintained and even increased the prestige and territorial extent of the Egyptian empire, and filled the capital with noble monuments. He had, however, a stern fight to go through before he was settled on his throne. The mamlūk system had this special weakness, that on the death of the sultan, whom they had elected from their number, the leading emīrs were all possible candidates for the vacant place. There was as yet no hereditary order of succession, though the tendency had been to prefer—pending party combinations—the temporary recognition of a late sultan's son. There were several of Beybars's generals who felt that they had as good a claim to the throne as Ḳalā'ūn, and one of them, Sunḳur, proclaimed
1280 himself king of Syria with the style of el-Melik el-Kāmil.
Apr. He had the support of several of the leading Ẓāhirīs or mamlūks of Beybars, together with that of the Bedawīs of the desert, and the Ayyūbid prince of Ḥamāh. Their united forces were defeated by Ḳalā'ūn only after a
June combat of many hours, aided by desertions, in a great battle at el-G'esūra, near Damascus; and partly by discriminating severity, partly by wise conciliation, the
1281 disaffection was brought to an end. Soon after, he
May 3 renewed the truce which Beybars had made with the Hospitallers of Markab (in spite of their infractions), and

[1] "The victorious king, sword of the faith, Ḳalā'ūn the milliary, [mamlūk] of eṣ-Ṣāliḥ." Ḳalā'ūn, so pronounced in Egypt, but written Ḳilāwūn in Turkish, means "duck"; and the representation of a wild duck is very common upon bowls and other works in inlaid silver and brass bearing his name or his son's. See my *Art of the Saracens*, pp. 164, 190, 194. The "milliary" refers to his having been purchased for a thousand dīnārs. He was a thorough Turk, and spoke very little Arabic. Very few of Ḳalā'ūn's coins have been preserved; one has a date, Damascus, 682 (1283-4).

concluded treaties with the prince of Tripolis (16 July, 1281), the Templars of Tortosa (15 April, 1282) and the lord of 'Akka (3 June, 1283). These treaties were nominally for ten years, and the most notable provisions they contained were freedom of access for Egyptian vessels to the Christian ports, and ominous restrictions upon further fortifications. That the Christian states agreed to abandon measures of self-defence is evidence that they must have felt their helplessness against the armies of Egypt. Their end was not far off.

These various treaties with the Crusader cities were concluded under the stress of a Mongol invasion. Ḳalā·ūn wanted his hands free to engage his only formidable enemy, who, taking advantage of the confusion of the Syrian revolt, had crossed the Euphrates, and sacked Aleppo. The sultan raised every man he could, mamlūks and Turkmāns, troops from Ḥamāh and Karak, Bedawīs of the deserts, and Arabs from the Ḥiǵāz and from the Euphrates.[1] His total muster was about 50,000. The Mongols under Mangūtīmūr, a brother of the Īlkhān Abāghā, numbered according to different estimates from 50,000 to 80,000, of whom about a third were composed of contingents from Georgia, Armenia, and the East Roman borders. The two armies met near Ḥimṣ, and the decisive battle was fought on Thursday, 30 Oct., 1281. The bewildering tactics of the Mongol horsemen, who doubtless employed their famous *tulughma* or turning movement, completely broke the Muslim left, which fled helter-skelter to the gates of Ḥimṣ, hotly pursued by the swift archers of the steppes. Some of the Egyptians were there slaughtered; some continued their flight towards Egypt, bearing lamentable tidings of the sultan's defeat; whilst the victorious pursuers bivouacked outside Ḥimṣ, and feasted upon their spoils. It occurred to neither party that what had happened to the Egyptian left might not

1281 Oct. 30

[1] Maḳrīzī describes the contingent of 4000 Arabs of the tribe of Mura as all well mounted, armed with helmet and cuirass covered with silk, carrying sword and lance, and accompanied by a damsel who sang a war-song.

have happened to the right and centre. The steady old troops of the Ayyūbid prince of Ḥamāh were stationed here, with the active and elusive Bedawīs, and these had not only stood the brunt of the Mongols' attack, and put their left to flight, but had wounded their general, and taking them in the moment of leaderless hesitation, had charged home and driven the enemy to utter rout. Just as the Mongol right had chased the Egyptian left, so did the Egyptian right pursue the Mongol left, and the extraordinary spectacle of the two halves of two large armies vehemently hunting each other in opposite directions was exhibited to the amazed sultan of Egypt, as, with a guard of only a thousand mamlūks, he stood deserted upon a hill! The feasting Mongols, however, soon learned the disaster to their left, and hastened to join their retreating comrades. They were in such a hurry that they did not even turn aside to cut up the sultan's small brigade, though they passed so close to him that he anxiously concealed his banners and silenced his drums. As soon as he saw their backs, however, he fell upon them, harassed their retreat, and sent orders by pigeon to his governors at the Euphrates to bar the fords. It was the worst disaster the Mongols had met with in their attempts upon Syria: Ḳuṭuz, Beybars, and now Ḳalā·ūn had defeated them, and the greatest defeat was the last.

1282 Apr. 1 The result was an armed truce for seventeen years. Both Mangūtīmūr and Abāghā died in the following spring, and the next Īlkhān of Persia, Aḥmad, was a Mongol converted to Islām. He did not on that account renounce the policy of his predecessors, and the correspondence with Ḳalā·ūn exchanged through his ambassador hinted not obscurely at war; but a rival in his own country mended his manners, and a second embassy brought handsome presents and friendly assurances. The ambassadors were received at Damascus by Ḳalā·ūn, who was surrounded by a guard of 1500 mamlūks, dressed in red atlas satin, with golden girdles, and turbans of cloth of gold, each holding a wax candle. But at this moment Aḥmad was dead, and the sultan of

1284 Aug.

Egypt had no further trouble with the Mongols for the rest of his reign. With the rival Mongol of the Golden Horde he preserved the amicable relations established by Beybars, and also with the emperor of Constantinople, the kings of France, and Castile, and Sicily, the republic of Genoa, and the emperor Rudolf of Habsburg. With Genoa he concluded a commercial treaty, whilst Alfonso of Castile and James of Sicily actually made a defensive alliance with the Muslim sultan against all comers (1289). The king of the Yemen sent him costly presents, and even the ruler of Ceylon despatched an embassy with a letter which no one at Cairo could read, and with a more intelligible oral communication inviting trade with his rich country and offering the aid of twenty ships. Ḳalā·ūn, like Beybars, was a far-sighted statesman, and did his utmost to attract merchants to Egypt. His passports, ensuring protection throughout his dominions to foreign traders, were current as far as India and China.

When the fear of the Mongols had abated, the sultan lost no time in reducing the Crusader cities. His treaties[1] were valid only so long as he found them convenient, and his oath was no more sacred than that of Beybars. In spite of his ten years' engagement with the Hospitallers, he suddenly fell upon their great 1285 May 25
fortress of Markab, which was totally unprepared for a siege, and surrendered. The count of Tripolis was then forced to yield him Marakīya on the coast, though its position defied a siege by land. Margaret of Tyre purchased peace for ten years (on paper) by surrendering Aug.
half her revenues and engaging never to renew her fortifications. The kingdom of Little Armenia was raided and compelled to buy a ten years' truce by a tribute of 1,000,000 dirhems yearly, to release all Muslim prisoners, and also to desist from all measures of defence. In defiance of the treaty with Tripolis, Latakia was 1287
seized; and after the death of Boemond VII—the death of a signatory was then held to void a treaty—

[1] Some of these documents are printed in Arabic, with French translation, in the appendix to Quatremère's Maḳrīzī, II., i. 166 ff.

1289 Apr. 2 Tripolis itself was besieged, sapped, and stormed, the men put to the sword, the women and children enslaved, and the city burnt. Finally, the people of 'Akka having broken the truce, and any pretext being welcome, a Holy War was proclaimed, and the sultan had just set 1290 Nov. 10 forth to its conquest, when he suddenly died in his tent at the age of seventy.

Ḳalā·ūn followed closely in the steps of Beybars. Their circumstances were identical, and he had confronted the same difficulties with the same policy, fortifying himself by foreign and commercial alliances, temporizing with minor enemies near at hand, in order to meet the one real danger, the Mongol invasion, with his full strength. He had fully maintained the prestige and extent of the empire, and though two expeditions into Nubia (1287, 1289) [1] had not succeeded in suppressing a contumelious king, Shemamūn had at least been so far impressed by the repeated and temporarily successful invasions of the Egyptians, that he renewed the annual *baḳṭ* or tribute which he had rashly renounced. The army was kept in a high state of efficiency, and never before had the 12,000 mamlūks been so strictly disciplined and restrained from their natural excesses. About a third of these were quartered in the citadel of Cairo, and this brigade was known as "the Burǵīs" (men of the Burǵ or tower). Many of them were Circassians, or Mongols from the Golden Horde. Ḳalā·ūn is extolled by his eastern contemporaries as a king at once brave and prescient, just and mild, who abhorred bloodshed; yet he could be stern and severe to disloyal emīrs, many of whom were executed, imprisoned, or despoiled, whilst his punishments were sometimes barbarous. A Christian who had married a Muslima, contrary to the law, was burnt, and his wife was disfigured. Against Christians, whether on the Syrian coast or in the Egyptian chanceries, he was prejudiced, and by the end of his reign they were

[1] For the various Egyptian campaigns in Nubia and the Sūdān, which cannot be fully narrated here, see Quatremère's *Mémoires géographiques et historiques sur l'Égypte, etc.*, ii. 39-126.

excluded from all government offices. Towards his Muslim subjects he was benevolent, and his chief pious foundation was devoted as much to the physical as to the spiritual well-being of the people. When Ḳalā·ūn was lying seriously ill in Nūr-ed-dīn's hospital at Damascus he made a vow that if he recovered he would build a hospital at Cairo. The result was the well-

Fig. 60.—Tomb-mosque of Ḳalā·ūn, 1284.

known Māristān, completed in 1284. The buildings are really three: a mosque, a hospital, and the founder's tomb-chapel (*medfen*). The tomb-chapel is decorated with wonderful arabesque tracery and reliefs in plaster, and with fine marble mosaic; and the red granite pillars, and the robes of the sultan and his son here preserved, have been touched by sick people, barren wives, and dumb

children for centuries in a belief in their curative virtues. The mosque is less striking, but the hospital is one of the most remarkable buildings in Cairo. It contains three courts, two of which are surrounded by small cells, whilst from a larger court with a colonnade on each side open a number of rooms. There were originally wards for every known disease, and a regular medical staff, lecture room, laboratories, dispensary, baths, kitchens, and every appliance then understood. Musicians soothed the wakeful hours of the sufferers, whilst in the adjoining mosque fifty salaried readers of the Ḳorān taught the consolations of religion, and a librarian with five assistants presided over a fine collection of medical, theological, and legal books. Sixty orphans were maintained and educated in the neighbouring school. The hospital was the first ever built in Cairo, and its value was immediately appreciated. Rich and poor were alike treated gratuitously, and this great work has made the name of Kalā·ūn blessed among sultans in Egypt, for with Muslims charity covers a multitude of sins.[1]

Of the four sons of Ḳalā·ūn, 'Alā-ed-dīn had been declared his successor in 1280, but when he died mysteriously in 1288, the next son Khalīl was appointed heir, though his father, whether from dislike of his violent and godless character, or because he suspected him of poisoning his brother, could never be induced to sign the formal deed of appointment. "I will not give the Muslims," he said, "a king like Khalīl." He was waiting probably for the younger son Moḥammad to grow up. But meanwhile Ḳalā·ūn's death and the public recognition did what the unsigned diploma intended. Without opposition el-
1290 Nov. Melik el-Ashraf Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn Khalīl[2] sat on his father's throne. From the first he set himself to humiliate

[1] For the condition and use of the Māristān early in the present century, see Lane, *Cairo Fifty Years Ago*, 92 ff., and for the architecture and ornament consult my *Art of the Saracens*, 73—5, 91, 101, 123 ff.

[2] Coins of Khalīl are known with the dates, Cairo, 691 (A.D. 1292); Alexandria, 692.

or get rid of the trusted henchmen of his father's court and army. His brief reign of three years is full of execution, imprisonment, and spoliation of the great emīrs. The highest ministers of state were the first to suffer : Ṭurunṭāi, the chief wezīr, was cut down before the sultan's eyes, and Lāǧīn only escaped death before the throne because the bowstring snapped at his windpipe, and the emīrs begged him off. The confiscation of Ṭurunṭāi's goods brought the sultan 600,000 *D.* in gold, 17,000 lb. of silver coins, and countless slaves, horses, and jewels ; whilst the blind son of the murdered man was reduced to beg his bread.

Khalīl, at the age of twenty-seven, combined in a superlative degree the worst vices of a cruel and capricious tyrant. His one virtue was courage, and his one exploit the conquest of 'Akka. Although the campaign was the legacy of his hated father, he was eager to carry out the policy of extirpating the "infidels"; and little as he cared for religion, he had enough superstition to preface every campaign by a solemn service of prayer and Ḳorān-reading under the beautiful dome of his father's tomb. The Syrian officials were ordered to send their troops to the plain of 'Akka, together with such quantities of siege material and machines that they filled a hundred ox-carts. Khalīl with the army of Egypt joined the camp on April 5, and in a week, ninety-two siege engines were playing upon the walls and outworks. 'Akka had the reputation, dating from Saladin's time, of the most formidable fortified place in Syria, and Khalīl had brought together an unusually heavy siege train. The defence, however, was not what it had been in former and better days. The fall of so many Christian cities in the campaigns of Beybars and Kalā·ūn had filled 'Akka with a dangerously mixed and

Fig. 61.—Dīnār of Khalīl, Cairo, date effaced.

1292 Apr.

demoralized population, the offscourings of the refuse of Europe.

"Within its walls were gathered representatives from every nation in Christendom. For every one there was a separate commune, and the various lords of the land, the masters of the great orders, the representatives of the kings of France, England, and Jerusalem, each exercised separate authority, so that there were in one city seventeen independent powers, 'whence there sprang much confusion.' It is not strange that in such circumstances the city became, as it were, the sink into which all the vileness of Christendom found its way. Over its mixed population many ruled but none had authority; within its walls the precepts of religion, law, and morality were alike void, so that in its last days 'Akka became a byword in all Christian lands for the luxury, turbulence, and vice of its inhabitants. . . . There were not wanting enough soldiers to have successfully defended the city; but even in this the last hour of their extremity, its inhabitants were more intent upon feasting than upon fighting. Cowardice and discord also played their part in ruining the hopes of a successful defence. Many at the first threat of danger made haste to flee over-sea; whilst others who stayed for a time departed when the prospects of success grew desperate. . . . Not even when the whole purpose of their existence was in peril could the Templars and Hospitallers lay aside their mutual jealousy; and so the defence, if conducted with valour in parts, lacked that general unity of purpose which could alone have made it successful. At length on Friday, May 18, Khalil's engines had wrought such a breach in the walls that, the moat being filled with stones and bodies of the dead, his army forced its way into the city. The people fled before him to the towers, the palaces of the nobles, or the great house of the Templars. Others, making their way to the harbour, crowded on board the ships in such numbers that some vessels were swamped as they lay at anchor. Henry II of Cyprus, who had played a not unworthy part in the early days of the siege, had already escaped to his island

kingdom, whither the grand master of the Hospital and a number of other fugitives now followed him. But there yet remained 60,000 Christians whose fate was slavery, or the sword, or worse. The Templars and those who had taken refuge with them met the noblest end; for, resisting to the last, they succumbed only when their fortress was undermined, and together with numbers of their assailants perished in its ruins." [1]

So the last stronghold of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem was stormed, sacked, and given to the flames; its renowned towers and bastions were thrown down, its fortifications razed to the earth; and, though a new town rose in its place, the 'Akka of the Middle Ages, the city of a valiant century of fighting, vanished for ever. With its fall the last remnant of the crusading dominions disappeared: for when 'Akka was lost, Tyre, Sidon, Beyrūt, and the few remaining cities of the Franks could only succumb to fate. Some were taken, some surrendered, but all, save Beyrūt, were demolished, their inhabitants massacred or enslaved, and the name of Crusader wiped clean out of the land. The "debate of the world" was closed.

Khalīl entered Damascus with a multitude of captives, and a brave display of Christian skulls upon his spear-heads. His success heightened his resolve. He extracted the old caliph Ḥākim from his quiet retreat in the Citadel of Cairo, and made him thrice preach a Holy War in the mosque. He had another solemn service at the tomb of his father. He marched to the Euphrates, besieged and took the "fortress of the Greeks," Ḳal'at-er-Rūm, and renamed it Ḳal'at-el-Muslimīn. He announced that he was about to conquer the whole of Asia and the land of the Romans, till his rule should be supreme from the dawn to the sunset; and then he went home to Cairo. He proclaimed a conquest of the Yemen, and then a campaign in Armenia, but it ended at Damascus, where the prudent Cilician surrendered Mar'ash and Behesna in order to keep the peace. The

1292 June 29

1293

[1] Archer and Kingsford, *The Crusades*, 414—418.

Īlkhān of Persia sent an envoy to say that he wished to live at Aleppo, which had once been taken by his father, and to request its surrender ; Khalīl replied that he had similar views about Baghdād, which had belonged to his caliphs, and they would see which would get to his goal first. This idle boasting came to an abrupt end
1293 Dec. 12 when Khalīl was lured into a shooting party and murdered by some of his disgusted emīrs. When the chief regicide was caught—no less a personage than Beydara, the prime minister of Egypt—before his execution he addressed the assembled emīrs in justification of his act. "A man," he said, "like Khalīl, who drinks wine in the month of fasting, who is given over to unnatural vice, who turns his slaves into nobles, and slights the old emīrs of his father, throws some into chains, and puts others to the sword, is not fit to rule over Muslims."

The next half century of mamlūk history is occupied by the three interrupted reigns of Ḳalā·ūn's surviving son (by the Mongol princess Aslūn Khātūn) el-Melik en-Nāṣir Nāṣir-ed-dīn Moḥammad, who was set up by the leading emīrs, at the age of nine, after his brother's death; was deposed in a year; brought back five years later (1298); retired again after ten years; and when a year more had passed came back for the third time in 1309, and retained the throne for thirty years till his death (1340). His repeated restoration was due less to any principle of hereditary right—though respect for the memory of his father inclined people to his descendants —than to the jealousies of the leading emīrs, which rendered any choice of a sultan from among them little better than an incentive to civil war and murder. En-Nāṣir's first reign was of course purely nominal. The real power lay in the hands of the great nobles who divided the high offices of state among themselves. Ketbughā was viceroy (*nāïb-es-salṭana*), Seng̀ar esh-Shuǵā'ī was wezīr, Beybars the Taster (*ǵāshnegīr*) was master of the household. The new government at first displayed virtuous energy in capturing the regicides, and avenged Khalīl's murder upon such as they caught by

horrible forms of death. A favourite torment was to nail the criminal to boards and parade him through the streets on a camel till he died of thirst and agony. Like all such military cliques, the party soon split up into jealous factions, one supporting Ketbughā, the other Shuǵā'ī. Street fights ensued, and at last Shuǵā'ī was closely besieged in the citadel by an angry mob demanding his head. He was at length betrayed by en-Nāṣir's Mongolian mother, who sympathized with her fellow countryman Ketbughā outside the walls. The head of Shuǵā'ī was paṛaded on a pike, and the populace protested their undying loyalty to the royal house.

Ketbughā was now virtually sultan, and his name was prayed for on Fridays next to en-Nāṣir's. To strengthen his position he obtained pardon for the two leading regicides—Lāǵīn and Ḳarāsunḳur, who enjoyed large popularity and had a strong following—with whom he began to scheme for the possession of the throne. His favour to these emīrs roused the indignation of the Ashrafīs, or mamlūks of the murdered Ashraf Khalīl, 300 in number, who rose in revolt, seized the royal stables and the armourers' market, and after plundering and destroying whatever lay to their hands, encamped at the Citadel gate and laid siege to the fortress. Ketbughā's troops mounted and rode down to disperse them, and after their defeat the rebels were given over to sundry forms of torture, blinded, maimed, drowned, beheaded, and hanged, or nailed to the city gate Zawīla; and only a few were so far spared that they were allotted as slaves to their conquerors. Thus the rebellion was put down ; but the next day, the vicèroy, calling a council of the great nobles of the court, protested that such exhibitions were dishonourable to the kingly state, and that the dignity of sultan would be irreparably compromised if a child like en-Nāṣir were any longer suffered to occupy the throne. The child was therefore sent away to grow up, and Ketbughā, as a matter of course, succeeded. He was unlucky in being associated in the people's mind with a great famine and a terrible plague, when 700 corpses were borne out of 1294 Dec.

a single gate of Cairo in one day, and 17,500 deaths were recorded in a month. These calamities, added to the discontent excited by the new sultan's favouritism towards the Mongol officers, led to a conspiracy. At the end of 1296, on his return from a journey to Syria, his tent was attacked; his guards and mamlūks, by a devoted resistance, succeeded in enabling their master to fly; and the leader of the rebellion, the new viceroy Lāǧīn, was forthwith chosen sultan in his stead.

Ḥusām-ed-dīn Lāǧīn el-Manṣūrī,[1] who now ascended the throne under the title of el-Manṣūr, had originally been a slave of el-Manṣūr 'Alī,[2] son of Aybek, and had then been bought for about £30 by Ḳalā'ūn, under whom he rose from the grade of page to that of *silāḥdār*, or armour-bearer; and Ḳalā'ūn, coming to the throne, gave him the rank of emīr, and made him viceroy of Syria. Khalīl sent Lāǧīn into prison, and in return Lāǧīn assisted in his murder. During the brief reign of Ketbughā, he held the highest office as viceroy, and now he had turned against his latest lord, and had seized the crown for himself. He had at least some claim of connexion with the royal family (if any hereditary principle was then acknowedged), for he had married a daughter of Ḳalā'ūn. The terms of his election throw an interesting light upon the precarious authority of the mamlūk sultans. His fellow-conspirators marched at his stirrup, hailed him sultan, and paid him homage; but they exacted as a

Fig. 62.—Dīnār of Ketbughā, Cairo (1294-95).

[1] The few coins preserved of Ketbughā and Lāǧīn generally have their dates effaced by wear, but one of Ketbughā has the date [69]4 (1294-5).

[2] The European idea that Lāǧīn was a German is not confirmed by any Arabic authority, and is probably baseless.

condition of their fealty that the new monarch should continue as one of themselves, do nothing without their advice, and never show undue favour towards his own mamlūks. This he swore ; but so suspicious were they of his good faith, that they made him swear it again, openly hinting that when he was once instated he would break his vow and favour his own followers to the injury of the nobles who had raised him to the throne. 1294 Dec. 7

When this had been satisfactorily arranged, Lāǵīn rode on to Cairo, attended by the insignia of sovereignty, with the royal parasol borne over his head by the great lord Beysarī ; the prayers were said in his name in the mosques, drums were beaten in the towns he passed through ; the nobles of Cairo came out to do him fealty ; and, escorted by a crowd of lords and officers, he rode to the Citadel, displayed himself as sultan to the people in the *meydān*, and made his royal progress through the streets from the Citadel to the gate of Victory. The 'Abbāsid caliph, a feeble relic of the ancient house of Baghdād, rode at his side ; and before them was carried the caliph's diploma of investiture, without which no sultan would have considered his coronation complete. The streets were decorated with precious silks and arms, and great was the popular rejoicing ; for the benevolence and generosity of Lāǵīn made him a favourite with the people, and he had already promised to remit the balance of the year's taxes, and had even vowed that if he lived there should not be a single tax left. The price of food, which had risen to famine height during the late disturbances, now fell sixty per cent. ; bread was cheap, and the sultan was naturally adored.

In spite of his share in a royal murder and a treacherous usurpation, he seems to have earned the affection of his subjects. Not only did he relieve the people from much of the pressure of unjust and arbitrary taxation under which they had groaned, but he abstained, at least until he fell under the influence of another mind, from the tyrannical imprisonments and tortures by which the rule of the mamlūks was too commonly secured. His conduct to his rivals was clement to a degree hardly

paralleled among the princes of his time. He did not attempt to destroy the ex-sultan Ketbughā, but gave him the government of Sarkhad by way of compensation.[1] The child Nāṣir had nothing to fear from Lāǧīn, who told him that, as his father's mamlūk, he only regarded himself as his representative, holding the throne until Nāṣir should be old enough to reign himself. Lāǧīn was zealous in good works, gave alms largely in secret, and founded many charitable endowments. His restoration of the mosque of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, at a cost of £10,000, was impelled by the circumstance that he had found refuge in the then deserted cloisters during the pursuit which followed the murder of Khalīl. Hidden in the neglected chambers and arcades of the old mosque, whither so few worshippers repaired that but a single lamp was lighted before the niche at night, and the muëdhdhin deigned to come no further than the threshold to chant the call to prayer, Lāǧīn vowed that he would repay his preservation by repairing the mosque that had sheltered him. Such good deeds, and the magnanimous release of many prisoners, could not fail to endear him to the populace; and after he was confined to the Citadel for two months with injuries resulting from a fall at polo, the rejoicings on his return to public life were genuine and universal. All the streets were decorated with silks and satins, the shops and windows were hired by sight-seers eager to catch a glimpse of the sultan, and drums were beaten during his state progress through the capital. He celebrated the occasion by giving a number of robes of honour to the chief lords, freeing captives, and distributing alms to the poor. His private life commended him to the good Muslims of Cairo; for although in his youth he had been a wine-bibber, gambler, and too much absorbed in sport, when he ascended the throne he became austere in his practice, fasted two months in the year besides Ramaḍān, affected the society of good pious ḳāḍīs and divines, was plain in his dress, as the Prophet

[1] Ketbughā lived to serve his old master's son, en-Nāṣir, loyally in his wars, revisited Cairo, and died in 1303, much respected for his high character and piety.

ordains that a Muslim should be, and strict in enforcing simplicity among his followers. His ruddy complexion and blue eyes, together with a tall and imposing figure, indeed marked the foreigner, but his habits were orthodoxy itself; he bastinadoed drunkards, even if they were nobles; and his immoderate eating was not necessarily wicked.

Fig. 63.—Inscription on medresa (college) of en-Nāṣir at Cairo, 1299.

But Lāǵīn, in spite of his promise, began to make favourites. He had at first appointed his fellow-conspirators to the great offices of state; but gradually he began to replace the old emīrs by new men, and a certain Mangūtīmūr acquired a supreme and unhappy influence over his amiable sovereign. Tried and honoured nobles were tested on the proposal that the new viceroy should be Lāǵīn's successor, and on their indignant negation of the possibility of such a step, they were cast into prison, where they died with suspicious regularity. At last even the great lord Beysarī, the richest and most popular emīr in Egypt, was thus arrested, though the marshal led him to prison with tears in his eyes. Murmurs became louder, and to silence them Lāǵīn sent the army to ravage Little Armenia, and took the opportunity to disperse the Syrian nobles whom he distrusted. Some fled to the Mongols of Persia, and Syria was given over to anarchy. Egypt was scarcely less disturbed: Mangūtīmūr's oppressions and reprisals were not tamely endured by the emīrs; but it was

no light thing to risk the horrors of incarceration in the Citadel dungeon, a noisome pit, where foul and deadly exhalations, unclean vermin, and bats, rendered the darkness more horrible. At length a plot was formed by two
1299 Jan. 16 determined men; Lāǵīn was murdered as he was in the act of rising to say the evening prayers, and immediately afterwards Mangūtīmūr was entrapped. He was for the moment consigned to the pit under the Citadel; but the emīr who had dealt the fatal stroke to Lāǵīn arrived on the scene, and crying with a strident voice, "What had the sultan done that I should kill him? By God, I never had aught but benefits from him; he brought me up, and gave me my steps of promotion. Had I known that when the sultan was dead this Mangūtīmūr would be living, I would never have done this murder, for it was this man's acts that led me to the deed." So saying, he plunged into the dungeon, slew the hated favourite with his own hands, and delivered his house over to the soldiers to pillage.

The murderers, one of whom assumed the throne for a few days, were duly executed with that sense of justice which the mamlūks always displayed towards other people's crimes. But after this experience of the rule of an emīr, the only course was to revert to the established line; and en-Nāṣir was brought back to Cairo and
Feb. 7 welcomed with a burst of enthusiasm. Two days later he was again enthroned[1] with a new diploma of investiture from the nominal caliph. Robes of honour were distributed, cities decorated, drums beaten throughout the empire. He was still only fourteen, and no match for the stern emīrs who really governed. The new governors who now departed to their provincial posts, after kissing the threshold of the Citadel according to custom, were all creatures of the emīrs Salār and Beybars "the Taster" (ǵāshnegīr), the one a Uirat Tatar, the

[1] Coins of Nāṣir's second reign (1299—1310) bear the dates Cairo, 69x (which must be 698 or 699 = 1299-1300), and Cairo, 707 (1307-8). Many more coins bearing the name of Nāṣir, and the mints Cairo, Aleppo, Ḥamāh, Tripolis, Damascus, may belong either to this or to the first or third reign.

other a Circassian, who managed the affairs of state much to their own advantage. The caliph held councils on Saturdays, but all he had to do was to register the decisions of his emīrs: Salār suggested a certain measure, and Nāṣir announced its sanction. Whilst the great nobles were amassing vast fortunes from their landed fiefs and various perquisites—Salār's daughter was given a dowry of 160,000 *D.*—the sultan was kept almost in penury, and deprived of the delicacies and luxuries to which he was accustomed. The only question seemed to be which of the two leaders, Salār or Beybars, would overthrow the other and seize the throne. So far they were acting together, inseparable in public acts and ceremonies, but the duel must come before long.

Meanwhile every other consideration was merged in the renewed struggle with the Mongols. The Baḥrī mamlūks, who had fled to Ghāzān, one of the greatest and best of the Īlkhāns of Persia, had fully revealed to him the distracted condition of Syria at the close of Lāǵīn's reign, and with their counsel the Mongols again crossed the Euphrates in great strength to recover what they had lost in 1282. The young sultan, though no warrior, rode at the head of the army of Egypt to meet 1299 Sept.
the invader, leaving the real command to the emīrs, to whom war was as the breath of life. Bad fortune attended the march from the outset. The emīrs were jealous and quarrelsome; a conspiracy of Uirat refugees of Syria against the Egyptian leaders, though savagely suppressed, bred wider suspicions; much of the camp baggage was lost in the flooded torrents; a dense flight of swallows, an evil omen, darkened the sky—the army was dismayed. Then as they neared Damascus crowds of Nov.
fugitives from Aleppo and the north testified to the terror of the invasion. Still advancing, but with sinking hearts, the Egyptians came in sight of the Mongols at Ḥimṣ. "Throw away your lances," was the order, "and trust to sword and mace." The only chance lay in close fighting, eye to eye, when the Mongol bowmen could not use their arrows. In the "Ghyll of the Treasurer" (Wādy-el-Khāzindār) 20,000 or so of mamlūk

1299 Dec. 23 horsemen met a Mongol army estimated at four or five times their number. But all the great emīrs were there, mighty men of war, and the troopers were heavily armed and bound by clannish ties to their leaders. The usual formation in three divisions, centre and right and left wing, was observed, and a body of 500 grenadiers armed with naptha tubes was placed in front of the line. Holy divines went up and down the ranks, exhorting the men not to waver, till the soldiers wept in self-compassion! Ghāzān kept his Mongols dismounted, behind their horses, and threw the first move upon the Egyptians. The naptha was discharged, without effect, and then the Mongols abandoned their reserve, and after pouring a deadly volley of arrows into the advancing Egyptians, mounted and charged with their usual dash. As at the earlier battle of Ḥimṣ, each side scored a success on opposite wings, and for a moment the issue wavered. Then Ghāzān, stemming his fears, rallied his men to a second charge, which broke the centre, and the splendid cavalry of Egypt turned and fled. The great emīrs, Salār, Bektīmūr, Burlughī, all were riding for their lives, with the arrows of their pursuers hissing past their ears. The weeping sultan was left with eighteen mamlūks for his guard. He was saved by the Egyptian left, who had been successful at the outset of the battle, and coming back from the pursuit of their opponents were amazed to find the day lost and the king abandoned. Their arrival, coupled with the heavy loss of the Mongols, checked the rout, and the remnant of the army retreated in fair order to Damascus, and thence with the utmost speed to Egypt.

1300 The Mongols immediately occupied Damascus without resistance, and to his credit, Ghāzān, who was a Muslim, and also a wise and generous king, showed the utmost clemency to the inhabitants, not only of his own religion, but Jews and Christians as well. No pillage or annoyance was to be permitted.[1] The community of religion

[1] The decree of capitulation (from Nuweyrī) is printed in Quatremère's Maḳrīzī, II., ii. 151, note, and the subsequent firmān constituting the new government of Syria, *ibid*, 156, note; see also Howorth, *Hist. of the Mongols*, iii. 441 ff.

naturally distinguished this conquest from the earlier invasions when the Mongols were still heathen ; but there was a good deal of the old leaven among them, they were hard to hold, and outside Damascus they committed much havoc. Even inside a vast amount of injury was done, nearly 10,000 inhabitants were killed or sold, and many precious monuments of the age of Nūr-ed-dīn burnt and destroyed ; but this breach of faith must be ascribed less to Mongol perfidy than to the impossibility of restraining a barbarous army, and to the inevitable destruction caused by the valorous defence of the citadel, which Arġawāsh, the Egyptian commandant, resolutely refused to surrender, and whence he waged a vigorous contest with the city. Meanwhile Egypt was strenuously working for revenge. Immense preparations in arms and money were made. The demand for mounts was so great that the price of a horse rose from £12 to £40 ; and gold was so plentiful that the dīnār fell to the exchange value of seventeen instead of twenty-five dirhems. In view of these preparations, and of danger on the eastern frontier, and finding the citadel inexpugnable, the Mongols evacuated Damascus, after an orgy of drink and debauchery such as had never before been known in that home of orthodoxy. 1300 Mar.

The Baḥrī mamlūks who had accompanied Ghāzān were left in command, and reverted to their Egyptian allegiance. Arġawash came down from the citadel he had so valiantly defended, restored order, repressed rioting, poured out the Mongols' wine and broke their bottles. The Egyptians reoccupied Damascus and Aleppo and the whole of Syria; and the Druzes of the Lebanon, whose 12,000 bowmen had harassed the mamlūks in their retreat four months before, were brought to a heavy reckoning. Apr.

Negotiations followed : after a disastrous expedition into north Syria, where rains and snow decimated his army, Ghāzān sent two embassies to Cairo to treat for peace, but without result.[1] Once more the issue of war 1301-2

1 The correspondence is given in Quatremère, *l.c.*, Appendix, II., ii. 289 ff., where (309 ff.) will be found an elaborate account of oriental diplomatic and the technical formalities of despatches.

must be tried, and 100,000 Mongols under Ḳuṭlughshāh
1303 marched into Syria. Damascus was in panic; men deserted their families and fled for protection, people were trampled to death in the crowds that thronged out of the gates, extravagant prices were paid for horses and asses to carry out the terror-stricken population. No such fears disturbed Beybars and the great mamlūks who entered the frightened city in April. They rode out to meet the Mongols, whom they found, 50,000 strong, at Shakhab on the plain of Marǵ-es-Suffar,[1] where the Saracens had defeated the army of Heraclius nearly seven centuries before. Nāṣir with the caliph and the main body of the Egyptian army came up from Cairo on the same day. The spectacle was repeated of the defeat
Apr. 21 of the Egyptian right, with severe loss, by the Mongols, whilst the left and centre remained steady and resisted every assault. At the end of the day the Egyptians were in possession of the field, and the Mongols had retired to a neighbouring hill. "The sultan and his people passed the night on horseback, while the drums were beaten and the cymbals sounded to direct the fugitives to the rallying place, and the mountain on which the Mongols had taken refuge was speedily blockaded. Salār, Kipchak, and the other emīrs spent the night in going round the ranks encouraging the men. At sunrise the Egyptian army was seen ranged in order . . . an imposing spectacle. Presently the Mongols descended to meet them, and a vigorous struggle recommenced, several of the sultan's mamlūks having their horses shot under them. The combat lasted till noon, when Ḳutlughshāh withdrew again to the mountain."[2] Again the Mongols, urged by thirst, came down to force their way through the surrounding enemy, and this time the Egyptians craftily let them through, only to fall upon their retreating squadrons. The exhausted enemy were cut to pieces, or lost in the desert, and it was a miserable remnant that followed Ḳutlughshāh over

[1] The historians Abū-l-Fidā and en-Nuweyrī both personally took part in the battle.

[2] Howorth, *Mongols*, iii. 470.

the Euphrates. 10,000 prisoners and 20,000 head of cattle fell to the conquerors. The catastrophe almost broke Ghāzān's heart: he died soon after, and his successor, Ulǵāitū, was careful never to risk an encounter with the mamlūks, who had now for the fourth time beaten back the most dangerous enemy that Egypt had encountered since the Muslim conquest. May 17

Nāṣir returned to Cairo in a wave of glory. Messengers had announced the news, and the emīrs vied with one another in setting up costly pavilions, or grand stands, richly decorated and furnished, along the route of his procession. Workmen were forbidden to do anything but set up these triumphal erections. Rooms along the route were let at from £2 to £4 for the day. Silken carpets were laid in the street; and the proud sultan rode between the brilliant façades and admired the nobles' pavilions, while troops of Mongol prisoners in chains, each with a fellow Mongol's head hanging from his neck, completed the triumph. So noisy were the rejoicings and so deafening the tumult of drums and music throughout Egypt that nothing short of an earthquake sobered the people.[1]

The Mongol war was the great event of Nāṣir's second reign. Beside it the frequent campaigns waged in Cilicia to compel the king of Little Armenia to pay his tribute, or to divert the attention of the mamlūk soldiery from ambitions at home, and a fruitless invasion of Nubia (1304-6), are unimportant. An expedition was equipped in transports built on the Nile to expel the Templars from the island of Aradus (Anṭarṭūs) on the Syrian coast, the last foothold of the Crusaders, and accomplished its object with the usual slaughter. The relations of the Egyptian sultan with foreign powers continued friendly. The old alliance with the khāns of the Golden Horde was maintained, though the mamlūks had no longer any necessity for making common cause against the Persian Mongols. Nubia sent tributary presents (1305), ambassadors came from Morocco,

1 See below, p. 301.

France, and the emperor of Constantinople (1306), who obtained permission to reopen the church of the Muṣallīya at Jerusalem.

Abroad all was favourable, but the internal condition of Egypt left much to be desired. The taxation for the war-chest had caused much poverty and discontent. The Bedawī tribes in Upper Egypt had thrown off the sultan's authority after the disaster at Ḥimṣ in 1299, and had mockingly nicknamed their own chiefs "Salār" and "Beybars" after the two dominant emīrs at Cairo. They levied blackmail on the villages, and called it
1302 taxes. The mamlūks made short work of this revolt; the real Salār and Beybars led their troops respectively on the east and west of the Nile, Bektāsh went towards the Fayyūm, other emīrs to Suez, whilst the governor of Ḳūṣ, with friendly Arabs, cut the desert routes. The various movements were executed with secrecy and rapidity, and the unhappy Bedawīs were taken completely by surprise. From G'īza and Aṭfīḥ upwards the inhabitants were put to the sword, to the number of about 16,000 men, whose wives and children and property were seized. If a man claimed to be no Bedawī but a townsman, they bade him pronounce the word *daḳīḳ* (which no Egyptian can say), and as soon as they heard the true Arab guttural, they cut off his head. The shibboleth disposed of a multitude of evaders. The country-side became the scene of horrible massacres, and the corpses poisoned the air. The Bedawīs fled to caves in the hills, but their enemies smoked them to death. Among the spoil were the goods of 1600 landowners, 8000 oxen, 6000 sheep and goats, 4000 horses, and 32,000 camels. The supply was so abundant that a fat tup sold for a couple of shillings, a goat for ninepence, a pound of butter for twopence. After looting the country the punitive expedition returned to Cairo, leaving behind them an empty land where no man was to be seen.

The Christian and Jewish population also suffered by irrational persecution. Recently they had enjoyed remarkable immunity, and had amassed great wealth.

They rode richly caparisoned horses or mules, wore sumptuous apparel, and held a number of valuable government offices. They waxed, indeed, so independent and (in Muslim eyes) so insolent, that an envoy from Morocco—where such tolerance was incredible—took upon himself to remonstrate with the emirs; the ḳāḍis were summoned in council, and the result was a revival of the old sumptuary laws. The Christians 1301
throughout the empire were to adopt blue turbans, and Apr
the Jews yellow, and neither were permitted to ride horse or mule; they must ride asses and yield the middle of the road to the Muslims; must ring no bells, nor raise the voice, with sundry other humiliating restrictions. Many Christians who valued their appearance became Muslims. Some churches were demolished by the gratified mob at Alexandria and elsewhere, and all the churches in Egypt remained closed for the year. It was only at the request of the emperor of Constantinople that a few churches, such as the Mo'allaḳa in the Ḳaṣr-esh-Shema', St. Michael's and St. Nicholas's, were reopened. The "feast of the martyr," or annual Nile festival, a general carnival held on the river near Shubra, was abolished by Beybars, on account of the drinking and 1303
disorders that it entailed. The manners of the people had indeed reached an unusual degree of licence. The rejoicings after the triumphant return of the sultan from Syria were prolonged into a drunken and licentious revel. Unveiled women were seen in the company of men drinking wine unabashed on barges in the Ḥākimī canal, insomuch that pleasure boats were afterwards forbidden on its waters. The tremendous shock of Aug.
earthquake that followed gave them something else to 8
think about. The oscillation, the cracking of walls, the fall of houses and mosques, caused a frantic panic. Women rushed into the streets unveiled, and gave birth to premature infants. Men saw their houses crumbling to the ground, and everything they possessed lost; or, flying in amazement, left their homes to be rifled by thieves. The Nile threw its boats a bow-shot on the land. The population encamped outside the city,

trembling for the fall of the heavens and the end of the world. The earthquake was felt all through Egypt, and injured Alexandria as well as Ḳūṣ; Damascus and 'Akka experienced the shock. At Cairo the mosques of Ḥākim, el-Azhar, Ṣāliḥ b. Ruzzīḳ, and Ḳalā'ūn, and at Fusṭāṭ the old mosque of 'Amr, suffered much damage, and for a year and more the chief emīrs, notably Salār and Beybars, expended large sums on their restoration. Cairo, after the earthquake, looked like a city that had been wrecked by a conquering army.

The wealth of the governing class was fortunately equal to the expense of mosque restoration. The nobles displayed a remarkable public or religious spirit in devoting large sums to this purpose, and besides restoring the ravages of the earthquake, the government completed (1304) and richly endowed the new college of the Nāṣirīya or collegiate mosque of en-Nāṣir (still standing in the Sūḳ-en-Naḥḥāsīn), the Gothic gateway of which had been brought from the cathedral of 'Akka during the demolition of the city by Khalīl's orders. There was no lack of money in Egypt. When Bektīmūr, the polo-master of the court, made the pilgrimage to Mekka in 1301, he spent 85,000 *D.* on the journey, largely in charitable gifts. The emīr Beysarī, the most honoured and popular of all the mamlūks, who had declined the throne after the death of Khalīl, set no bounds to his extravagance, never drank twice out of the same cup—and his cups were doubtless of chased and inlaid silver, like his perfume-burner in the British Museum—lived in the most splendid palace that money could build, and prided himself on being perpetually £15,000 in debt. The rich fiefs of the mamlūk nobles, increased by sundry

Fig. 64.—Arms of a polo-master.

emoluments and perquisites, enabled them to maintain a princely state, in spite of frequent dismissal, imprisonment, and confiscation. The luxury and artistic profusion of the times, the remarkable developments of literary and historical studies, and the honourable position of men of learning, form a strange contrast to the constant deeds of violence, the tumults, street fights, murders and atrocious tortures. Egypt was undoubtedly prosperous under this strangely compounded class of rulers. The taxes were heavy, but the Niles had been good, and the trade with Europe was immense ; a single ship entering Alexandria harbour is stated to have paid 40,000 *D.* in

Fig 65.—Bowl of emīr of en-Nāṣir in the British Museum.

customs, and the trade with India must have been equally important. Whatever passed through Egypt was dutiable, and a duty of ten per cent. on trade will account for a vast revenue.[1]

[1] According to el-Ḳalḳashandī, who died in 1418, but availed himself of the statistics of earlier writers, the principal source of revenue in Egypt, the land-tax, was paid either in kind (as usually in Upper Egypt) to the amount of from one to three ardebbs (of 5 bushels each) per acre, or in money (as in the delta). In 1370 this tax amounted to 40 dirhems (= 2 *D.*, or about a guinea) on the best land (*bāḳ*), and 30 on land (*barāïb*) exhausted by wheat crops, etc. ; but it was raised in later times. If the crops failed or were poor the tax was

The sultan himself received nothing of all this. He was kept in straitened circumstances by his overbearing ministers, and when Salār and Beybars fell out and quarrelled over the prey, he found his position yet more intolerable. Once he tried to have them murdered, but the plot was divulged, and matters became worse. The people indeed were on his side, and the rumour of a design against his life roused them to a dangerous pitch of excitement; the feeling of loyalty to the house of Ḳalā'ūn had become part of their character. But the conduct of the emīrs made Nāṣir's rule impossible, and

reduced in proportion. The towns of Egypt (meaning apparently the districts) were assigned either to the government or to the emīrs and army, except a very small proportion assigned to mosques, schools, etc. (A) The government received (1) for the wezīr's exchequer, the taxes from the land of G'īza and Manfalūt, in money and kind, together with the clover for the royal and military stables; (2) for the sultan's privy purse (*dīwān-el-khāṣṣ*), one-fifth of the revenue from Alexandria and its district. (B) The emīrs, mamlūks, and army were assigned (1) the land-tax of the remaining towns and districts, varying according to the inundations and prices, and distributed among the recipients according to their rank; (2) the receipts from (*a*) the emerald mines, which were, however, abandoned as unprofitable in the last year of Nāṣir's reign; (*b*) the alum quarries of Upper Egypt and the Oases, whence the alum was brought to Ḳūṣ or Asyūṭ, and shipped down the Nile to Alexandria, and sold, to Greeks chiefly, at 5 to 5½ *D.* the quintal (ḳinṭār, 100 lb.), of which the government (i.e. the emīrs and army) used to take a third, but the system was changed *c.* 1400; (*c*) the natron mines of Ṭarābiya (near Behnesa), worked since Ibn-Ṭūlūn's days, 100 acres which yielded 100,000 *D.* a year, and in the Fāḳūs district; the alum, being a monopoly, rose to 300 dirhems the ḳinṭār, and the sultan took one-third, chiefly for the soldiers' pay; (3) the legal alms, which (though usually distributed by the almsgiver himself) were levied by government on the net profits of merchants importing at Alexandria, and from cattle-dealers from Barḳa; (4) the tribute from protected subjects (i.e. Jews and Christians), amounting to 10 to 25 dirhems per head on their population, according to classes—this tax was used for judicial and religious salaries; (5) import duties on goods brought by foreigners to Alexandria or Damietta, who paid one-tenth; if resold in Egypt, one-fifth more was exacted, so that goods sometimes paid as much as thirty-five per cent. on their value; (6) inheritance of persons without heirs; (7) profit of coinage, then very debased. Besides these there were the customs at the ports of 'Aydhāb, Ḳoseyr, Ṭōr, and Suez, on the Red Sea, amounting to one-tenth of the value; and also on the Syrian caravans. Cp. Wüstenfeld, *Die Geographie und Verwaltung von Aegypten*, 155 ff.

one day he rode away to Karak, on the pretext of a pilgrimage, and once within the strong castle he announced his abdication. Remonstrances, sincere or not, were vain; he was resolved upon a quiet life, and the emīrs had to choose a successor.

Beybars the G'āshnegīr, as Master of the Household (*Ustāddār*), had gradually acquired the chief influence. Salār was indeed viceroy, but Beybars was supported by the whole body of the Burǵīs or citadel mamlūks, and their power was not to be resisted. They had long been planning to raise him to the throne, and the resignation of Nāṣir fitted their intentions. El-Melik el-Muzaffar Rukn-ed-din Beybars (II.) el-Manṣūrī[1] accordingly became sultan. His brief reign was an unmitigated failure. He never had the support of the people, and a succession of low Niles and the resulting scarcity were ignorantly connected in some manner with his mismanagement. A large number of the mamlūk emīrs belonged to the party of Salār, who, although he accepted the office of viceroy, secretly worked against his former colleague. The ex-sultan at Karak was not idle in the meantime. He had retired for repose, he said, but his proceedings showed that he had merely withdrawn from the control of his Egyptian emīrs in order to organize a loyal party in Syria. In face of these preparations and signals of revolution all that Beybars did was to make Suleymān el-Mustekfī proclaim his accession anew. But no one respected the fainéant "Commander of the Faithful"; the emīr Burlughī, a supporter of Beybars, laughed, "Suleymān was the Commander of the Wind"; the people, when they heard the name of Nāṣir in the proclamation, shouted "God save him," and when the name of Beybars was read they called out, "We do not want him." The news came that Nāṣir had entered Damascus, and had received the homage of the emīrs of Syria, of Aleppo, Ḥamāh, Ḥimṣ, Tripolis, Ṣafed, Jerusalem; that his advanced guard had reached Gaza, and driven back the Egyptian outposts. Beybars had no

1309 Apr.

1310 Jan.

[1] A few small copper coins of Beybars II bear the dates 708, 709, parts of which years correspond to 1309.

counter plan, and could command no efficient support. He took the only prudent course, and sent his abdication and submission to the advancing sultan. Nāṣir accepted, pardoned, and offered him the government of Ṣaḥyūn. But meanwhile his fears had so worked upon Beybars that he had fled from Cairo with his mamlūk guard (who soon deserted him), vacillated between several plans of escape, and was finally made a prisoner at Gaza.

1310 Mar. 5 Nāṣir began his third reign,[1] entering Cairo on 5 March, 1310, after eleven months' retirement. Whatever kindly virtues he may have possessed in his youth had been soured and embittered by his unhappy experience. Though only in his twenty-fifth year, he was already a cynic, a double-dealer, and thirsty to revenge the miseries of his boyhood and youth, and to free himself finally from the interference of the powerful emīrs. He managed it by trickery and deceit. Beybars, though apparently received into favour, and appointed to a government, was invited to Cairo, and there bow-strung. Nāṣir could not forgive him, among other painful recollections, for having refused him roast goose when he asked for it in his years of humiliation. Salār soon followed his rival: he had aided Nāṣir's restoration and welcomed him handsomely with costly gifts, and in reward was given the small command of Shawbek. Recalled to the capital, he was cast into prison and starved to death. After eight days of hunger, three covered dishes were sent to him by the sultan. The covers were raised, and they proved to be, the first a dish of gold money, the second of silver, and the third of precious stones and pearls. "Praise to God," he said, "who deals me out my chastisement in this life." On the twelfth day he was found dead, with a gnawed-off finger in his mouth. His vast wealth was confiscated to the state, and the income of his estates and properties were reckoned at 1000 *D.* a day. A contemporary historian, who saw the inventory of his effects, stated that the examination of his goods occupied

[1] Coins of Nāṣir's third reign bear the dates, Cairo, 710, 716, 733, 741 (1310-40); Aleppo, 710, 733; Damascus, 733, 735; Tripolis, 717.

four days, and that they found over half a million of dīnārs or their value in dirhems, besides chests of precious stones and pearls, silver vessels, dresses, horses, dromedaries, herds of cattle and sheep, and multitudes of slaves. One by one the older emīrs who had fought the wars of his father, and had dominated the son in his earlier reigns, were inveigled, betrayed, imprisoned, and executed. Nāṣir had learnt his lesson : he resolved to rule alone, and he had no scruples in "cutting off the tall poppies."

His foreign policy followed the precedents of his father Ḳalā·ūn and Beybars I, except that altered conditions made him eager to draw closer to the Mongols of Persia.

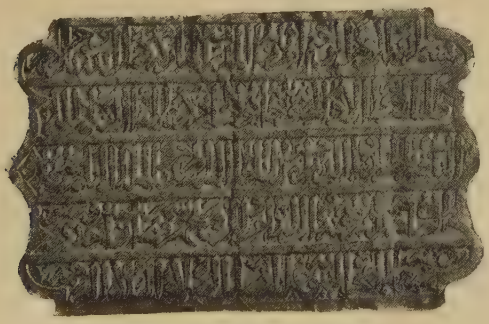


Fig. 66.—Inscription in medresa of princess Tatar el-Ḥigāzīya at Cairo, 1360.

He had frequent relations with the Īlkhān Abū-Saʿīd, with whom he concluded a friendly treaty in 1333, and on the break-up of the Īlkhānate on Abū-Saʿīd's death, he carried on various negotiations with the candidates for power, and his support was so desired that Sheykh Ḥasan Buzurg, one of the most powerful of the contending leaders, went so far as to acknowledge Nāṣir's suzerainty in prayers and coinage at Baghdād (1341) in return for the promise of armed assistance, which never

came. Nevertheless, the old friendship with the rival Mongol state, the Golden Horde of Sarāi on the Volga, was maintained and renewed, though the dealings with Persia caused some uneasiness to Uzbeg Khān, and Nāṣir's proposal to marry the khān's daughter fell through by reason of the extravagance of the dowry demanded from Egypt. A cheaper bride, however, was
1319 found in a kinswoman of the khān, the lady Ṭulbīya, whose mausoleum in the eastern Karāfa still bears witness to the alliance, and who is, perhaps, the only princess of the Saracens who has been celebrated by a western poet :—

> Mira al Cayro que incluye tres ciudades
> E el palacio real de Dultibea,
> Las torres, los jardines e heredades
> Que su espacioso circolo rodea.[1]

There were, as heretofore, many little wars with the Cilician kingdom. At Mekka the ruling sherīfs were appointed by Egypt, and supported by troops, not without conflicts, and in 1317 Nāṣir's authority was also recognized at Medīna. The sultan himself thrice made the pilgrimage to Mekka with the usual extravagant display of charity. Yemen, independent under the Rasūlid kings, had from time to time sent presents to Cairo, which the sultans were anxious to recognize as tribute, but although an expedition of 5000 Egyptian troops was sent in 1325 at the request of a Rasūlid, whose succession was disputed, it ended in disaster, and southern Arabia was in no sense under the authority of Nāṣir. Nubia, under the usurper Kenz-ed-dawla, was equally independent at that time.[2] On the other hand, to the west, the khuṭba was said in the sultan's name at Tripolis and Tunis (1311-17) by the Ḥafṣid king Abū-Zekeryā Yaḥyā, whom Nāṣir had helped to the throne.

[1] Araucana, canto 28.

[2] The tribe of Kenz had been a thorn in the side of Egypt from the time of Saladin, and there were frequent conflicts with them in the 14th century; they attacked Aswān in 1366, 1385, about 1390, 1396; and after 1403 the district of Aswān ceased for a time to be under Egyptian authority.

Most of these cases of apparent vassalage were due to Egyptian succour during a period of civil war and a disputed succession, and they testify rather to the military efficiency of the mamlūk army than to any permanent extension of the sultan's authority. Egypt had become a factor to be reckoned with whenever complications arose among her neighbours, but she did not expand beyond her normal frontiers, which had long been laid at the Syrian desert, the Euphrates and the

Fig. 67.—Tower in Citadel of Cairo.

Pyramus in the east and north, Sawākin and Aswān in the south, and Tripolis in the west. Nāṣir himself was ambitious of empire, but he was no general, and feared to arm a possible rival with the command of a large army. He was forced indeed to suppress a revolt of the Druzes and Nuṣeyrīs by force, and to wage war with Little Armenia; but he trusted rather to diplomacy to

extend his influence. His negotiations in the north procured him the adhesion of Artina of Asia Minor and the chief of Dhū-l-Ḳadr. "He continually exchanged embassies with the Mongols of Kipchak, as well as those of Persia, with the kings of the Yemen and Abyssinia and West Africa, with the emperors of Constantinople and the kings of Bulgaria. Even the sultan of India, the king of Aragon, the pope, and the king of France sent envoys to his court. The missions of the Byzantine emperors, often repeated [e.g. 1317, 1326] were apparently designed to negotiate an alliance with Nāṣir against the Turkmāns, who were growing constantly stronger about this time in Asia Minor, and already threatened the East Roman empire. The sultan of Hindustan, who sent an embassy to Nāṣir in 1331-2 by way of Baghdād, was Moḥammad ibn Tughlak, who was meditating the conquest of eastern Persia, and probably wished to engage Nāṣir in a simultaneous attack on the Mongol kingdom in western Persia. In 1327 an envoy from the pope arrived to urge him to treat his Christian subjects humanely, promising in return to protect, as far as possible, Moḥammadan subjects living in Christendom from annoyance. Philip VI of France sent an embassy in 1330 . . . demanding that Nāṣir should deliver up Jerusalem and part of the coast of Palestine to the Christians; it was naturally dismissed with scorn."[1]

The Christians were better used under Nāṣir's third reign than before, and the sultan endeavoured to relax the humiliating decree of 1301, as far as he could, not without exciting the wrath of the theologians and fanatical faḳihs. He protected the churches from destruction, and refused to believe that every fire or other calamity must be due to Christian conspiracy, as the bigoted Muslims said. But fanaticism was too strong
1321 for him; 20,000 men assembled on the meydān and clamoured: "The only true religion is Islām; God shield the faith of Moḥammad! O sultan of Islām, protect us, not the misbelieving Christians!" Nāṣir

[1] Weil, iv. 352-4.

surrendered to public opinion, and the former decree was enforced again on pain of death. The Christians closed their churches, and dared not show themselves, unless in disguise.[1] They had undoubtedly burnt many mosques and houses, and in revenge the Muslims demolished scores of their churches and monasteries. Still the sultan used his influence in their favour, whenever there was an opportunity, and his wezīrs, several of whom were Christians who had become nominally Muslims, exerted themselves for their old associates, whilst they bled the Moḥammadan subjects as far as taxation could go. Nāṣir employed Christians, i.e. Copts, as all Egyptian governments have employed them, because they were better men of business

Fig. 68.—Kursī of en-Nāṣir, 14th century, in the Cairo Museum.

[1] The best account of the state of the Christians under the mamlūk sultans—merely incidental to the present work—is in Quatremère's *Mémoires sur l'Egypte*, ii. 220-66. The émeute of 1321 alone occupies twenty-four pages, and it is impossible to give the details in a brief space.

than the Muslims, and also because they were not dangerous to his throne, as were the great Muslim officers, against whom he was perpetually on his guard, and whom he used with cruel severity.

On the other hand, his humbler servants and officers, and the bulk of the people of Egypt were well off under his rule. Many oppressive taxes—on salt, for example, on chickens, on sugar-cane, on boats and their passengers, on slaves, horses, etc.—were repealed, and the loss was made up by mulcting the great nobles. He ordered a new survey of the land and its revenues, and out of the twenty-four divisions of the country, he assigned ten to the state and the other fourteen to the emīrs and army, according to rank. He combatted the extravagant prices which prevailed in times of scarcity, and had millers and bakers flogged who charged too highly; imported corn from Syria and fixed its market price, and compelled the emīrs to open their granaries to public sale, instead of selling their corn privily at exorbitant
1336 rates. His muhteṣib or inspector of markets, Ḍiyā-ed-dīn Yūsuf, an upright and fearless man, reported any evasions to the sultan, who publicly rated the great emīr Ḳawṣūn, his own son-in-law, struck him over the head with the flat of his sword, and had the emīr's factor flogged in his presence. These vigorous measures had their effect, and a moderate price for corn prevailed. Nāṣir was strict in suppressing wine-drinking and every sort of immorality, and his punishments were as barbarous and primitive as his methods of confiscation were sweeping and illegal. Sometimes, indeed, the judges found it necessary to remonstrate with his high-handed proceedings, and they were sure of a hearing. Learned men found an appreciative patron in the cool calculating sultan, whose intellect was of no mean order. The learned historian Abū-l-Fidā, a prince descended from Saladin's brother, was his intimate friend. Nāṣir restored him (1310) to his ancestors' princedom of Ḥamāh, revived the ancient titles and privileges of his family, took him with him on pilgrimage to Mekka, made the Syrian governors treat him as a sultan,

himself addressed him as "brother," and continued to love and honour him till his death (1331). The age was rich in learned men, and they enjoyed every mark of respect and not inconsiderable emoluments under Nāṣir's rule.

It was an age of extraordinary brilliance in almost every aspect. In spite of the occasional records of

Fig. 69.—Mosque of Sengar and Salār, 1323.

scarcity and high prices, the wealth of the country, whether from its fertile soil, or from the ever-increasing trade with Europe and the east, was immense, if the fortunes of individuals are any test. The accounts of the almost fabulous prodigality of the emīrs of the time in

the Arabic chronicles show their vast resources, and the thirty or more magnificent mosques built by Nāṣir's emīrs—such as Seng̃ar el-G'āwalī, Ḳawṣūn, el-Māridānī, Aḳsunḳur, Sheykhū, to name but a few whose monuments are still standing, are proof that they sometimes spent their wealth to good purpose.[1] The architecture of this period is perhaps the finest in the history of Saracenic art in Egypt. The minor arts were never cultivated in greater perfection. Beautiful bowls, perfume-bearers, caskets, Ḳorān-cases, and *kursīs* or small tables, were made of bronze or brass, often cut out *à jour*, and inlaid with admirably chased designs in silver. Enamelled glass lamps, illuminated Ḳorāns, carved wooden panels, painted ceilings, and every kind of decoration, were worked at this period in greater perfection than ever before or since. When a beautiful example of the finest Saracenic art is preserved in our museums, we are almost sure to find in its inscription the words *el-Melekī en-Nāṣirī*, "the (mamlūk) of el Melik en-Nāṣir."

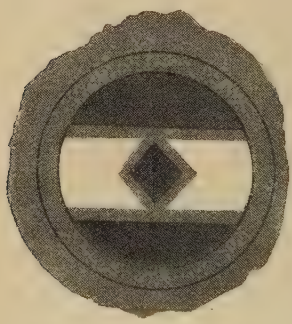


Fig. 70.—Arms of emīr el-Māridānī, 14th century, from a glass lamp.

The sultan himself led the way in these civilized tastes. Some of his own furniture—or that of his mosques—has been preserved, and his two chief buildings, the Nāṣiriya college in the Sūḳ-en-Naḥḥāsīn (corresponding to part of the old Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn), built in 1299-1304, and his mosque (1318) in the Citadel of Cairo, are among the most notable of Saracenic

[1] Ibn-Baṭūṭa, who visited Cairo in 1326, writes of the emulation of the emīrs in building mosques, chapels, and especially mentions their monasteries (khānaḳāh—such as that of Beybars II, still standing), where faḳīrs, chiefly Persian ṣūfis, lived in retreat under strict rules. Separate monasteries, he says, were allowed to married devotees. He describes Nāṣir as "of noble character and great virtues," refers to his benevo-

monuments. His exquisite palace in the Citadel, the *Kaṣr el-Ablak*, or Striped Palace, so called from its tiers of black and white stone, which cost 500,000,000 dirhems (founded 1313) has unhappily disappeared; the "Hall of Columns" was standing early in this century. The Citadel, indeed, was largely reconstructed in 1312 and following years, and a number of new buildings

Fig. 71.—Hall of Columns built by en-Nāṣir in Citadel of Cairo, 1313.

added.[1] He was reckoned to spend at one time 8000 dirhems (about £300) a day on building. Among the

lence to pilgrims, and his sitting twice a week to hear personally all complaints and petitions; and gives a short list of the chief emirs and men of learning. His account is lamentably meagre, and instead of valuable statistics he informs us that there were said to be 12,000 water-carriers on camels, 30,000 bait-masters, and 36,000 boats on the Nile. (Ed. Defrémery et Sanguinetti, i. 67 ff.)

[1] See Casanova in *Mém. de la miss. archéol. française*, vi. 619-665.

public works of his reign was the Alexandrian canal, which connected the port with the Nile at Fūwa, and contributed greatly to the commerce and fertility of the country, and to the revival of the neglected Greek capital. The great causeway he constructed beside the Nile served at once as a road and a dam during the inundation. The aqueduct from the Nile to the Citadel of Cairo was the work of this sultan (1311), though popularly ascribed to Saladin. To carry out his schemes, and indulge his tastes, he needed immense revenues, and the money was not lacking. He married eleven of his daughters to leading emīrs, and each wedding cost him 800,000 *D.*: the music alone came to 10,000 *D.* for each *fête*. He was a judge of horses, and would give as much as a million dirhems (£4000) for a fine animal. He kept of course a proper stud book, and knew the name, age, price, and pedigree of every horse. Three thousand fillies annually foaled in his stables were broken in by Bedawīs, to be given to the emīrs or entered for races, for which he was an ardent trainer. Nāṣir was a farmer, too, and would import sheep of good breeds for his flock of 30,000 kept in the Citadel. He was a sportsman, devoted to falconry, and his huntsmen, falconers, and gamekeepers held no unimportant rank in his court, and received handsome vales. He was also a collector of precious stones, but this was the ordinary mode of amassing portable and easily negotiable capital. Whilst encouraging luxury and profusion in his court, he wore no jewels himself and dressed in the simplest and least expensive way. This self-possessed, iron-willed

Fig. 72.—Arms of emīr Tukuzdemir, from a lamp in the British Museum, 14th century.

man,—absolutely despotic, ruling alone—physically insignificant, small of stature, lame of a foot, and with a cataract in the eye,—with his plain dress and strict morals, his keen intellect and unwearied energy, his enlightened tastes and interests, his shrewd diplomacy degenerating into fruitless deceit, his unsleeping suspicion and cruel vengefulness, his superb court, his magnificent buildings,—is one of the most remarkable characters of the Middle Ages. His reign was certainly the climax of Egyptian culture and civilization.[1]

Unhappily when he died, confessing his sins, in 1341, at the age of nearly fifty-eight, he left no successor capable of carrying on his work. The confidence of the people in his firm government, and their apprehensions of what would follow, was shown in the panic with which, at the bare rumour of his decease, they closed their shops and laid in provisions for the time of need. His emīrs gathered round his bed, and declared solemnly that "they were the mamlūks of his house, and so long as even a blind daughter of it remained they would support it to the death." For forty-one years, indeed, twelve descendants[2] of Nāṣir rapidly succeeded to the throne, but

1341 June 6

Fig. 73.—Dīnār of en-Nāṣir, Cairo, 1340.

[1] The best European account of Nāṣir's reign is in the careful *Geschichte der Chalifen*, by Weil, founded upon Maḳrīzī, Abū-l-Maḥāsīn, and most of the available Arabic sources. It has been epitomized, unfortunately with many errors, by Sir W. Muir, *The Mameluke or Slave Dynasty of Egypt*.

[2] Of these successors, the coins are as follows:—eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl, Cairo, 7[4]4, Damascus, 743, 744, Ḥamāh, 746, Aleppo, no date; el-Kāmil Sha'bān, Cairo, 747, Damascus, 746; el-Muẓaffar Ḥāǧǧī, Cairo, 747, Damascus, 747 (Dhū-l-Ḥiǧǧa); en-Nāṣir Ḥasan (first reign), Cairo, 748, 749, 750, 752, Damascus, 749, 750; eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ṣāliḥ, Cairo, 752, 753, 754, Damascus, 756; Ḥasan (second reign),

they cannot be said to have ruled. Eight sons, two grandsons, and two great-grandsons followed one another. Some were mere children, some held the title of sultan for a few months, one son, Ḥasan, was kept on the throne for four years, and was restored for six years more ; one grandson, Sha'bān, even retained the title of sultan for fourteen years. But when they were not helpless children they were commonly helpless debauchees, and the real power was in the hands of the great emīrs, of whom Ḳūṣūn (or Ḳawṣūn, a Mongol follower of Nāṣir's Kipchak bride), Tāshtemir, Aḳsunḳur, Sheykhū, Yelbughā and Ṣarghitmish, were the most prominent. The court remained as luxurious and extravagant as ever, the emīrs continued to amass wealth and to build exquisite mosques and palaces, and the prestige of Egypt still held the respect of foreign powers. But the contests of the emīrs and the anarchy that ensued brought the empire to financial straits, and the pilgrimage to Mekka was more than once abandoned for lack of state funds; though money seems never to have been lacking for the singers and slave girls of the palace. Sheykhū endeavoured spasmodically to stem the tide of dissolution, reduced expenses, allowed the sultan Ḥasan only £4 a day, repressed the Bedawī brigands who infested the Nile valley ; but the visitation of the plague in

Fig. 74.—Dīnār of sultan Ḥasan, Cairo, 1349.

Cairo, 754, 756, 757, [75]8, 759, 760, 761, Alexandria, 756, [75]9, Damascus, 758, 760, 761, 762 ; el-Manṣūr Moḥammad, Cairo, 761, 762, 763, 764, Damascus, 763 ; el-Ashraf Sha'bān, Cairo, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 773, 774, 776, Alexandria, 766, 777, Damascus, 766, 771, 773, 774, 777, Aleppo, Ḥamāh, Tripolis, without legible dates ; el-Manṣūr 'Alī, Cairo, 779, 781, Damascus, 778, 780, 781, 782, Aleppo, 778 ; eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ḥāǧǧī, Damascus, Aleppo, without dates ; Damascus, 792, with title el-Manṣūr.

Fig. 75.—Palace of emīr Yeshbek at Cairo, 1476, adjoining mosque of sultan Ḥasan

1348-9—the same "Black Death" that spread over Europe at this time—reduced the country to a desperate state; 10,000 to 20,000 people died in Cairo in a single day; cattle murrain and fruit disease accompanied the plague, the fish of the river were poisoned, cities were emptied and the land laid waste.

Of external affairs there is little to record in the brief reigns of Nāṣir's descendants.

1350 A little victory at Mekka over the king of the Yemen, another at Singār in Mesopotamia over a Kurdish band of brigands, a temporary adhesion of a rebel governor at Baghdād, who struck coins as a vassal of Egypt (1365), a punitive expedition against the marauding Bedawīs in Upper Egypt, and another (supplied by boats which were carried over the first cataract) into Nubia with a similar object (1365), the customary attacks upon Little
1359 Armenia (where Adhana, Tarsus, and el-Massīṣa were taken, and the first two garrisoned), were
1365 Oct. of small importance. The descent of a hostile European fleet upon Alexandria was a new experience after more than a century of rest from Crusading zeal. Peter of Lusignan, king of Cyprus, supported by the knights of Rhodes and the Genoese
Oct. and Venetians, suddenly landed 12,000 men, seized Alexandria, plundered it, and sailed away with 5000 prisoners. The Christians of Egypt were made to pay their ransoms and subscribe for the building of a fleet at Cairo and Tripolis. Again in 1369 the Cyprian fleet attacked Tripolis and appeared off Alexandria, but to little

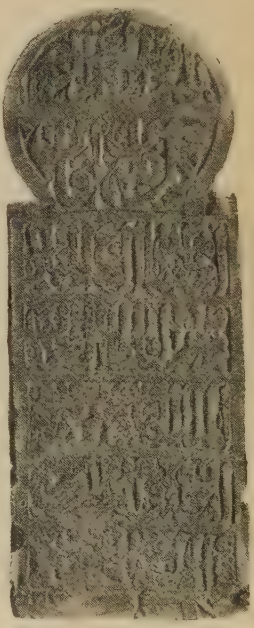


Fig. 76.—Memorial inscription in tomb of sultan Ḥasan, 1384 ½

purpose, and after some negotiation peace was made with 1370
Cyprus and the republics. More significant were the
hostilities with the Turkmān chiefs of Dhū-l-Ḳadr, on 1378
the northern frontier of Syria, whereby some useful
auxiliaries, who had guarded the marches, were con-

Fig. 77.—Mosque of sultan Ḥasan, 1362, from the Citadel.

verted into enemies—the forerunners of the Turks who conquered Egypt a hundred and forty years later.

There could be but one end to the series of puppets who had figured as nominal sultans since Nāṣir's death. Some emīr, more powerful and fortunate than the rest, would

seize the throne, as Beybars and Kalā·ūn had seized it a century ago. The man appeared in Barḳūḳ, who after disposing of one after the other of his competitors, dethroned the last of Kalā·ūn's house in 1382, and founded the dynasty of the Burǵī or Circassian sultans. The only wonder was that so feeble a line as Nāṣir's descendants should have survived so long in so stormy a world.

CHAPTER XI

THE CIRCASSIAN MAMLŪKS

1382—1517

Authorities.—El-Maḳrīzī, Abū-l-Maḥāsin, Ibn-Iyās, el-Ḳalḳashandī; Weil, *Gesch. der Chalifen*, v.; von Hammer, *Gesch. d. Osman. Reiches*, ii.

Monuments in Egypt.—Tomb of Anas, father of Barḳūḳ, 1382; Medresa of emīr Aytmish, 1383; Medr. Barḳūḳ, 1386; Medr. em. Īnāl-el-Yūsufī, 1392; Medr. em. Muḳbil, 1395; Medr. em. Sūdūn, 1402; Medr. Gemāl-ed-dīn, 1408; Khānaḳāh and tombs of Faraǵ and Barḳūḳ, 1401-11; Medr. Faraǵ; Medr. em. 'Abd-el-Ghanī, 1418; Mu'ayyad, Māristān, 1418, and M., 1420; Medr. Ḳāḍī 'Abd-el-Bāsiṭ, 1420; Bars-Bey, Medr., 1424, Khānaḳāh and T., 1432, M. at el-Khānḳāh, 1437; M. em. G'ānī-Bek, 1427; Medr. em. Feyrūz, 1427; Medr. em. Taghrī-Berdī, 1440; M. em. Ḳāni-Bey, 1441; M. and T. Ḳāḍī Yaḥyā, 1444, 1446; M. G'aḳmaḳ, 1449; Medr., Khānaḳāh, and T. Īnāl, 1451-6; T. em. G'ānī-Bek, 1465; M. em. Sūdūn, *c.* 1466; Medr. em. Ḳānim, *c.* 1466; M. em. Timrāz, 1472; M. em. Uzbek (Ezbek), 1475; Palace em. Yeshbek, 1476;—Kā'it-Bey, Medr. and T., 1474, Medr. *intra muros*, 1475, Wekāla near Azhar, 1477, restor. of bridge of G'īza, 1479, castle (Burǵ-eẓ-Ẓafar), on site of old pharos at Alexandria, 1479, Sebīl, 1479, Wekāla near Bāb-en-Naṣr, 1480, Wekāla in Surūǵīya, *c.* 1480, T. el-Faḍawīya, *c.* 1481, Palace, 1485, Mekān, 1485, restor. of southern gates, 1485, Medr. at Rōḍa, 1491;—Medr. em. Ghānim, 1478; Medr. Ḳāḍī Abū-Bekr b. Muzhir, 1480; M. em. Kiǵmās, 1481; Medr. em. Uzbek (Ezbek) el-Yūsufī, 1495; Palace of em. Māmāy (Beyt-el-Ḳāḍī), 1496; T. eẓ-Ẓāhir Ḳānṣūh, 1499; M. princess Aṣal-Bey, wife of Ḳā'it-Bey, in Fayyūm, 1499; T. el-'Ādil Tūmān-Bey, 1501; M. em. Kheyr-Bek, 1502; Medr. Ḳānī Bek emīr Akhōr, 1503;—Ḳānṣūh el-Ghūrī, Medr. 1503, T. 1504, restor. of aqueduct to Citadel, *c.* 1506, M. near Citadel, 1510, Gates of Khān-el-Khalīlī—Tombs of Ṭarā-Bey, Rezmek, Sūdūn, 1504-5; Medr. Ḳānī-Bek Ḳāra, 1506.

Inscriptions in Egypt.—On monuments enumerated above; solar quadrant in M. Ḳawṣūn, 1383; decree of Ḳāntemir in T. Ḳalā'ūn, 1389; inscr. Barḳūḳ in Citadel, 1389; 'Abd-el-'Azīz in T. of Faraǵ, 1405, 1406; waḳf act in Medr. Bars-Bey, 1424, and Khānaḳāh, 1431; tablet of Sebīl of Bars-Bey in Schefer collection, 1433; G'aḳmaḳ in Fayyūm, 1441, in Citadel, 1448, and in Medr. Barḳūḳ; sultan Ḥasan in M. Mu'ayyad; solar quadrant in Medr. Īnāl, 1466; epitaph of princess Shaḳrā, daughter of Faraǵ, in his tomb, 1482; inscr. of Ḳā'it-Bey in

same, 1483, and in Azhar, 1469, 1495; Tūmān-Bey in Citadel, 1501; el-Ghūrī on castle of Kā'it-Bey at Alexandria, 1501, in Azhar. (M. van Berchem, *Corp. Inscr. Arab.*, iii., proof sheets).

Inscriptions in Syria.—Barḳūḳ in Ḳubbat-eṣ-Ṣakhra and on a khān at Jerusalem, on great mosques of Ġaza and Ba'albekk, acropolis of Ba'albekk, citadel of Aleppo; Mu'ayyad, in mosque at Gaza, on wall and hospital of Aleppo, portico of gr. M. at Damascus and his own M.; Aḥmad, decree in ḥaram, Jersulem; Bars-Bey, decrees in Ḳubbat-eṣ-Ṣakhra, Jerusalem, in gr. M. of Damascus and Tripolis, and on castle of Sheyzar, and inscr. on bridge at Sheyzar; G'aḳmaḳ, inscr. in his medr. at Damascus, decrees on Armenian convent, Jerusalem, in the ḥaram, and in gr. M. of Damascus; Īnāl, decrees in the gr. M. of Damascus, Tripolis, and Ba'albekk; Khūshḳadam, on citadel of Damascus; Ḳā'it-Bey, numerous inscr. and decrees at Jerusalem and in gr. M. of Damascus, Tripolis, Ba'albekk, Ḥamāh, and several inscr. on citadel of Aleppo; Moḥammad b. Ḳā'it-Bey, inscr. on citadel of Damascus and in gr. M. of Gaza; el-'Ādil Tūmān-Bey, several decrees at Damascus (MSS. notes of M. van Berchem).

Coins (see under reigns), *armorial bearings*, *enamelled glass lamps*, *bowls and other vessels*, etc.

BURG'Ī MAMLŪKS.

Eẓ-Ẓāhir Seyf-ed-dīn Barḳūḳ	Nov., 1382
[Interrupted by el-Manṣūr Ḥāǧǧī	June 1389—Feb. 1390]
En-Nāṣir Nāṣir-ed-dīn Faraǧ b. Barḳūḳ	June, 1399
El-Manṣūr 'Izz-ed-dīn 'Abd-el-'Azīz b. Barḳūḳ.	Sept., 1405
En-Nāṣir Faraǧ (again)	Dec., 1405
El-'Ādil el-Musta'īn ('Abbāsid caliph)	May, 1412
El-Mu'ayyad Sheykh	Nov., 1412
El-Muẓaffar Aḥmad b. Sheykh	Jan., 1421
Eẓ-Ẓāhir Seyf-ed-dīn Ṭaṭar	Aug., 1421
Es-Ṣāliḥ Nāṣir-ed-dīn Moḥammad b. Ṭaṭar	Nov., 1421
El-Ashraf Seyf-ed-dīn Bars-Bey	April, 1422
El-'Azīz G'emāl-ed-dīn Yūsuf b. Bars-Bey	June, 1438
Eẓ-Ẓāhir Seyf-ed-dīn G'aḳmaḳ	Sept., 1438
El-Manṣūr Fakhr-ed-dīn 'Othmān b. G'aḳmaḳ	Feb., 1453
El-Ashraf Seyf-ed-dīn Īnāl	Mar., 1453
El-Mu'ayyad Shihāb-ed-dīn Aḥmad b. Īnāl	Feb., 1461
Eẓ-Ẓāhir Seyf-ed-dīn Khūshḳadam	June, 1461
Eẓ-Ẓāhir Seyf-ed-dīn Yel-Bey	Oct., 1467
Eẓ-Ẓāhir Tīmūrbughā	Dec., 1467
El-Ashraf Seyf-ed-dīn Ḳā'it-Bey	Jan., 1468
En-Nāṣir Moḥammad b. Ḳā'it-Bey	Aug., 1496
Eẓ-Ẓāhir Ḳānṣūh	Oct., 1498
El-Ashraf G'ānbalāt	June, 1500
El-'Ādil Tūmān-Bey	Jan., 1501
El-Ashraf Ḳānṣūh-el-Ghūrī	April, 1501
El-Ashraf Tūmān-Bey	Oct., 1516 —Jan., 1517

THE second dynasty of mamlūḳ sultans differed from the first chiefly in race and in the absence of any hereditary succession such as was gradually established in the earlier dynasty, in the family of Kalā·ūn. The Burǵī sultans were all Circassians by race, save two (Khūshḳadam and Tīmūrbughā) who were of Greek origin; and none of them was able to establish the hereditary principle in his family. They were in fact rather head-mamlūks or chief emīrs than kings in the absolute sense understood in the east. The Circassian sultan was but *primus inter pares*, elected by his fellow mamlūks, and depending for the tenure of his power upon his skill in managing the military oligarchy which was the real authority of the kingdom. His success or failure was in proportion to his tact or diplomacy, and still more to his liberality, and to the divisions among the several factions of the mamlūks. Each sultan's followers, after his death, formed a distinct party, known by his regnal title (as Ashrafīs, Nāṣirīs, Mu·ayyadīs, Ẓāhirīs), and animated by a strong *esprit de corps* and a determination to win and keep as much power and wealth as possible. By manoeuvring with these parties, forming coalitions or fostering jealousies, by intrigues and bribes, an emīr would contrive to be elected sultan; but when on the throne, he found himself little better than a delegate of his insubordinate electors, over whom he seldom maintained much discipline. If he held the throne till his death, his son usually succeeded him for a few months, less in deference to any hereditary tradition referring to earlier times, than for the purpose of acting as a buffer between the ambitions of rival emīrs. The son kept the throne warm, whilst the leading nobles fought for the succession; and when the best man won, the "warming-pan" was put away. As a rule he was either placed in honourable confinement, or even allowed to live freely and openly in some Egyptian city, and was seldom put to death in the old fashion. Of the twenty-three sultans of this dynasty, the reigns of six cover 103 out of the total 134 years, and the reigns of nine—Barḳūḳ, Faraǵ, Sheykh, Bars-Bey, G'aḳmaḳ, Īnāl, Khūshḳadam, Ḳāït- 1382-1517

Bey, and Ḳānṣūh el-Ghūrī, amount to 125 years, leaving but nine years for the other fourteen sultans.

It is with these nine sultans that history has chiefly to do: the rest were ciphers, but the nine were all remarkable men, as indeed their success in winning and keeping their power for eight, sixteen, or even twenty-six years implies. It needed no ordinary abilities to hold even a partial authority over rival emīrs and seditious mamlūks for any length of time. Their abilities, however, were seldom those of the warrior-king. They often fought their way to the throne over the corpses of rivals, but once there they seldom led their armies in the field, and Faraǧ was perhaps the only Circassian sultan who was conspicuously a general. Several of them—as Barḳūḳ, Sheykh, Gʻaḳmaḳ, Ḳāït-Bey, besides the short-reigned Ṭaṭar and Tīmūrbughā—were much attached to literature and the society of the learned; they were strict, sometimes even austere, Muslims, and many of their pious foundations, mosques, colleges, hospitals, and schools, still bear eloquent witness to their aesthetic refinement. Perhaps the costly elaboration of such exquisite architectural gems as the mosques of Barḳūḳ and Ḳāït-Bey were intended to atone for the many acts of barbarity and oppression of which the Circassian sultans were commonly guilty. Barḳūḳ caused his rival, Mintāsh, to be "put to the question" in order to make him reveal his hidden treasure: the wretched emīr's limbs were broken one after the other, he was tried by fire, tortured with infernal ingenuity, but all in vain; at last he was put out of his agony, and his head was displayed on a lance through the towns of Syria and exposed at the gate of Zawīla at Cairo. Other conspirators were nailed to camel saddles and paraded through the streets till they died. For such deeds Barḳūḳ's lovely medresa and noble mausoleum were all too small an atonement. His savage cruelty was emulated by his successors.

Egypt indeed suffered grievously under their sway. The perpetual conflicts of the divided factions of mamlūks, the street fights, the unbridled license of the

dominant soldiery, produced a reign of terror. The mamlūks had, of course, no bowels for the afflicted populace. They were all foreigners, though not necessarily Circassians, for Barḳūḳ, after a conspiracy among his Circassian followers, recruited his mamlūks from Greek, Turkish, and Mongolian slaves. The multitude of these mercenary pests may be judged from the fact that Barḳūḳ himself purchased 5000; and when a revolt of Bedawīs and peasants in Upper and Lower Egypt was repressed by 7000 mamlūks riding over the country, the horrors of the process may be left to the imagination.

So debauched were the soldiery that even under Bars-Bey, the strongest of the Circassian sultans, it was impossible to allow women to appear in the streets, wedding processions were prohibited, and women who tried to go forth to attend funerals or visit the tombs of their dead were driven back by force. The peasants often dared not bring their country produce and cattle to the Cairo markets, lest it should be seized by the mamlūks, or taken by the government at a compulsory rate to supply the palace, which in Bars-Bey's time required 1200 lb. of meat a day. The government was corrupt and ineffectual, justice was awarded to the highest bidder. In the reign of el-Mu'ayyad, the very Sheykh-el-Islām, the head of the law, stole trust-money: he was a Persian from Herāt, and could not speak Arabic; his ignorance was exposed in a public disputation in Mu'ayyad's mosque, and he was dismissed. In Alexandria about the same time the fisher-folk took the law into their own hands against their oppressors; they shaved one side of the deputy governor's face, like the men of Jericho, paraded him through the streets on a camel, escorted by singers and musicians, and then killed him. They made the governor himself stand naked before a judge, and beat him to death. But such successful execution of lynch-law was rare, and as a rule the people were forced to suffer without redress or vengeance. The country was frequently in revolt, especially where the Bedawī tribes were settled, and when the oppressive taxation and conscription for the wars, and the general anarchy and

insecurity of life and property, often aggravated by plague and famine, drove the people to desperation; but the rebellions only led to worse suffering, cruel reprisals, and a bloody stamping out of sedition by the implacable mamlūks. In the time of Faraǵ the population was said to be reduced to one-third of its normal number.

The sultans were really powerless to restrain their own guards. Some of the worst excesses referred to occurred under Mu'ayyad Sheykh, who was personally a devout man and a learned, a good musician, poet, and orator, scrupulous in the observance of the rules of his religion, very simple and unpretentious in his dress and mode of life, bearing himself in all religious functions as a plain Muslim among fellow worshippers, and robing himself in common white wool in mourning for the pestilence that ravaged the land. He spent little on himself, but 400,000 *D.* on the mosque which he built on the site of a gaol where he had suffered captivity; a hospital and other institutions showed his charitable soul. But, for all this, he had no hold over the ministers or the people, and though he flogged the oppressors he could not protect the oppressed. His piety was forgotten in his indecision, and his unsuccessful currency experiments outweighed his virtues; and when he died at the age of fifty-two, though there were over a million dīnārs in his treasury, he was buried without followers, without a shroud, without even a towel for the laving of the corpse. Anxiety for the succession drowned all solicitude for the dead.

A later sultan, Khūshḳadam, belonging to the degenerate race of the mediaeval Greeks, frankly recognized the impossibility of restraining his own servants, and turned their corruption and violence to his personal advantage. He played off one faction against another, Ẓāhirīs against Ashrafīs, or Nāṣirīs against Mu'ayyadīs, as it might happen, and thus nullifying their power, left the field free for the riotous debauchery of his own mamlūks, who murdered and ravished and plundered almost as they pleased. This crafty Greek

knew how to make the most out of the mammon of unrighteousness. Official posts were openly sold; the governor of Tripolis paid 45,000 *D.* to be promoted to Damascus, and his vacant post was purchased by another emīr for 10,000 *D.*, whilst Ṣafed went cheap at 4000 *D.* Worse still, Khūshḳadam took bribes from mamlūks for the privilege of torturing and killing their personal rivals. An unpopular wezīr was scourged, tortured, and at last executed without trial, after his enemies had greased the sultan's palm with 75,000 *D.* Unquestionably he made them pay for their pleasures. When he was short of money, he would make a call in state upon some wealthy noble, and before the visit was ceremoniously completed the unlucky entertainer was handsomely fleeced.

Fig. 78.—Arms of an emīr inlaid in ivory and coloured woods.

In spite of sedition, privy conspiracy, and rebellion, in spite of frequent civil wars, constant factions, and invincible corruption, the Circassian sultans and their mamlūks evidently possessed the faculty of collective self-preservation, and knew how to keep their quarrels to themselves without letting in the foreigner. Infamous as was their government, and apparently suicidal their mutual jealousies, they were a splendid soldiery, and thus continued not only to hold Egypt, and generally Syria, for a century and a third, but to beat off one seemingly overwhelming invasion and several minor assaults. When all western Asia was trembling under the shock of Tīmūr's portentous conquests, the mamlūks of Egypt braved and defeated

him. Yet the political situation at the time of his approach was singularly unfavourable for solid resistance. Barḳūḳ, the first of the Circassian sultans, had indeed
1382 Nov. 26 deposed the last of the Baḥrī dynasty, the child Ḥāǵǵī, without difficulty, and had been accepted as sultan throughout Egypt and Syria. But a year later a conspiracy to set up the caliph Mutawekkil in his place shook his authority, and though the plot was suppressed with extreme severity, the disaffection, which had spread to north Syria, grew apace. Headed by Mintāsh and Yelbughā, the governors of Malaṭīya and Aleppo, and supported by the Mongols and
1389 Apr. 17 Turkmāns on the northern frontier, the rebels routed the Egyptian army near Damascus, entered the Syrian capital, and marched upon Cairo, where Barḳūḳ, who had lost all presence of mind, after repealing all taxes, arming the raw population, barricading the streets, and entrenching the Citadel, burst into tears and took refuge in a tailor's shop.

Fig. 79.—Dīnār of Barḳūḳ, Aleppo, 1385.

The rebels plundered Cairo, and re-established the
June 1 boy Ḥāǵǵī on the nominal throne; after which they fell out among themselves, and Mintāsh and Yelbughā, from the roof of the mosque of sultan Ḥasan and the opposite battlements of the Citadel, pounded each other, and paved the way for the counter-revolution which Barḳūḳ was preparing in Syria. Escaping from the fortress of Karak
1390 he raised an army, discomfited the rebels near Sarkhab, took Ḥāǵǵī and the caliph prisoners, and entered Cairo in
Feb. 1 triumph; the garrison and people came out to welcome him, the Jews bearing their Tora and the Christians their Gospels; tapers were lighted and carpets spread in his honour. The young sultan Ḥāǵǵī was again deposed, but permitted to live in comfort in the Citadel till his

death in 1412, in spite of the trouble he caused by his extreme brutality to his female slaves, whose shrieks he endeavoured to drown in the uproar of songs and merriment. The next two years were occupied in

Fig. 80.—Pulpit (minbar) in tomb-mosque of Barḳūḳ outside Cairo, 1401-11.

reducing the rebels under Mintāsh in Syria, and hardly was this accomplished when Timūr's invasion threatened the horizon. The conqueror took Baghdād in August, 1393, overran Mesopotamia in 1394, annexing territory

(such as Māridīn) which owned Barḳūḳ's suzerainty, and thus came into direct conflict with Egypt.

Barḳūḳ was no valiant swashbuckler, and lived in fear of assassination, but he showed a firm front to the invader. He joined the northern princes—Burhān-ed-dīn of Sīwās, Ḳarā-Yūsuf, the head of the Turkmāns of the Black Pelt, Tōḳtāmish, the khān of the Golden Horde, and Bāyezīd, the 'Othmānlī sultan — in a general league of resistance. When Tīmūr sent an embassy to Cairo, ostensibly to open peaceful negotiations, Barḳūḳ, suspecting his motives, executed the envoy. Further, to show his sympathy with the victims of Tīmūr's aggression, he invited the expelled sultan of Baghdād, Aḥmad the G'elāir, to Cairo, and received him with peculiar honour. In reply to a threatening despatch from Tīmūr, Barḳūḳ used equally haughty language, and contemptuously compared the flowery style of the conqueror's secretary to the scraping of a bad
1394 fiddle. The army of Egypt mustered in great strength and marched through Damascus to Aleppo and to Bīra on the Euphrates, but Tīmūr was then fully engaged in the contest with Tōḳtāmish in Georgia, and the crisis was postponed. The invasion of Syria was averted for the time, and Barḳūḳ, who was well satisfied to see his allies attacked, and stood in far greater dread of the
1399 June 20 rising power of the 'Othmānlīs than of Tīmūr, died without crossing swords with the enemy. He was over sixty years of age, and had virtually ruled Egypt since 1378, on the whole with sagacity and mildness, despite some barbarous executions. He remitted some of the most onerous taxes, was a lover of learning, and a great builder. His tomb-mosque, with the two domes, in the eastern cemetery outside Cairo, was erected by his son Faraǵ (who was also buried there), but the beautiful medresa in the Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn, lately restored by M. Herz Bey, belongs to the early years of his reign, and testifies to his taste in art and his zeal for pious instruction.

Of Barḳūḳ's three sons, the eldest, en-Nāṣir Faraǵ, succeeded. His mother was a Greek, and his original name was Bulghak, "calamity," because he was born

during the rebellion of Mintāsh, but it was changed to Faraǵ, "deliverance," after Barḳūḳ's victory over the rebels. Faraǵ was only thirteen years old, but he did not long run in leading reins. At the close of 1400 he was in Syria at the head of a great Egyptian army,

Fig. 81.—Enamelled glass lamp of Barḳūḳ in Arab Museum at Cairo.

endeavouring to check the fresh advance of Tīmūr, who 1400
had sacked Aleppo and was threatening Damascus. At first the Egyptians seemed to be driving the invaders back, but the retreat was probably strategic; for when the

Egyptians attacked they were heavily repulsed, and Faraǵ, finding that the defeat had bred sedition among his emīrs, who naturally desired a more experienced leader at such a crisis, withdrew in haste to Cairo, leaving his army to its fate. Damascus surrendered on
1401 terms, but was nevertheless sacked, ruined, and burnt by the ruthless Tataṙs, and all northern Syria was cruelly devastated. After Tīmūr's victorious campaign in Asia
1402 Minor, and the total defeat of the 'Othmānlī army at the battle of Angora, Faraǵ consented to the terms demanded by Tīmūr's envoys, surrendered his prisoners, and even agreed to strike coins in the conqueror's name. No such coins, however, have been discovered, and Tīmūr never entered or controlled Egypt. He died in February, 1405, whilst Faraǵ was again raising a new army to resist any further demands.

The sultan, however, had lost his credit by these proceedings, and a struggle for power among the leading mamlūks, during which he was treated with contumely, and even defeated in battle, ended in his sudden dis-
1405 appearance. For about two months his brother el-
Sept. 20 Manṣūr 'Abd-el-'Azīz sat on the throne thus vacated, but by that time Faraǵ had recovered from his panic,
Nov. 20 and was brought back to power by the emīr Yeshbek. The rest of his reign was largely spent in the endeavour to restore order in Syria, which had become the cockpit of rival emīrs—one of whom, G'ekem, even went so far as to style himself el-Melik el-'Ādil—but in spite of seven more or less victorious campaigns, Syria remained in a state of anarchy, and the growing power of the emīrs Sheykh el-Maḥmūdī and Nawrūz at Damascus more and more threatened the sul-
1412 tan's throne. The seventh campaign ended in his deposition by the caliph. Faraǵ surrendered to Sheykh at Damascus on a promise of his life, but the caliph

Fig. 82.—Dīnār of Faraǵ, Cairo, 1407.

and 'ulema decreed his death, on the ground of his notoriously debauched habits. Faraǵ fought his executioners in vain; his body was cast upon a dung heap. He had been a hard drinker, and had slaughtered his mamlūks, and even slain his divorced wife with his own hands. Egypt had groaned under his taxes and his war levies; European pirates had raided Alexandria (1403), Tripolis in Syria (1404), Beyrūt and Sidon; and the 'Othmānlīs were encroaching on the northern frontier. 1412 May 28

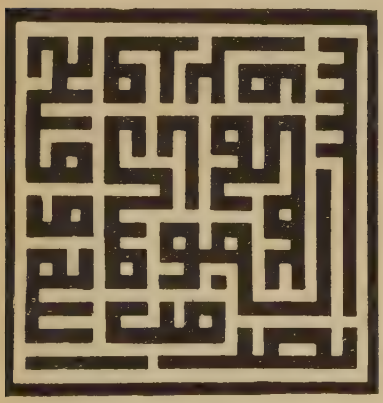


Fig. 83.—Kufic inscription of el-Mu'ayyad.

The next five reigns made little change in the situation. The caliph Musta'īn was set up as a mere stop-gap, whilst Sheykh and Nawrūz settled which was the stronger man; and he retired willingly and with relief in less in than six months, when Sheykh accepted Nov. 6 the throne, with the title of el-Mu'ayyad. The principal events of the new reign were two campaigns on the northern frontier, with a view to reducing the Turkmān border states of Ḳaramān, Dhū-l-Ḳadr, and Ramaḍān, to their former condition of vassalage. In 1418 Mu'ayyad marched upon Abulusteyn and Tarsus, and received the submission of the princes—Ḳaramān even issuing coins in the name of the Egyptian sultan—but on his departure the Turkmāns reoccupied the territory he had taken as guarantee; and accordingly in 1419 his son Ibrāhīm marched north, 1419 took Ḳayṣarīya (Caesarea), Ḳōniya (Iconium), and Nigda, striking coins in el-Mu'ayyad's name, and appointing governors from among the cadets of the Turkmān families; Erekli and Larenda (now the town

of Ḳaramān), Adhana and Tarsus, were annexed, and Ibrāhīm was welcomed with enthusiasm at Cairo, only to die next year, poisoned (as was rumoured) by his jealous father. Egypt, however gained little by these successes; Mu'ayyad was unable to control the mamlūks, and the people suffered grievously. The brief reign of his son Aḥmad, under the regency of Ṭaṭar, and the still briefer reign of Ṭaṭar himself, followed by his son Moḥammad for a few months, under the regency of Bars-Bey, ended as usual in the accession of the regent himself.

1421 Jan. 13 Fig. 84.—Dīnār of el-Mu'ayyad, Alexandria, 1415.

Aug. 29 Nov. 30

1422 Apr. 1 El-Ashraf Bars-Bey ruled for over sixteen years, and although his government was exceptionally oppressive, and Egypt groaned under his trade monopolies, the excesses of his mamlūks and the scarcity and high prices which naturally accompanied a general state of pillage and insecurity, he was not only strong enough to prevent encroachments upon or revolts within his dominions but even achieved an extension of his power by the conquest of Cyprus. The pirates who infested the shores of Egypt and Syria, though not necessarily Cypriotes, used the harbours of Cyprus as their base, and so long as they were sheltered there it was impossible to capture them. In the summer of 1424 a few ships from Būlāḳ, Damietta, and Tripolis, manned by volunteers, sailed to Cyprus, sacked Limasol (Lemsūn), and returned laden with prisoners and booty. Encouraged by this success, a fleet of forty sail was despatched from Egypt in the following year, Famagusta (Magūsa) was surrendered by its Genoese garrison, Larnaka was taken, as well as Limasol, after a brief resistance, and the Egyptian admiral G'erbāsh brought over a thousand captives and much spoil in

1424

1425 Aug.

triumph to Cairo.[1] Bars-Bey, however, had intended no such hasty return but a permanent conquest; and in the next year, rejecting the mediation of the emperor of Constantinople, he sent a larger fleet to Cyprus, manned partly by mamlūks, but chiefly by voluntary adventurers and Bedawīs. The new armament landed at Limasol, which fell in a few days despite its restored fortifications, and the troops marched upon Larnaka, the fleet escorting it along the coast. King James of Lusignan killed the herald sent to summon him to surrender, and advanced by sea and land against the invaders. In an engagement at Cheirocitium, the Cypriotes threw away their first advantage, and the mamlūks, renewing the battle, took the king and many of his knights prisoners, before the Christian fleet came up. Nikosia fell next, and the island was subdued. Cairo was *en fête* on the return of the conquerors after this brief but decisive campaign. The crown of Cyprus and the royal banners were carried in triumph through the streets, followed by a couple of thousand prisoners. King James himself entered the Citadel and was brought into the presence of the sultan, who was surrounded by a brilliant court and by the ambassadors of the 'Othmānlī Porte, the Turkmān emīrs of Asia Minor, and the representatives of the Arab tribes, the sherīf of Mekka, and the king of Tunis. Bare-headed, and in irons, he kissed the ground before Bars-Bey, and then fainted. Pressed for a ransom, James replied, "I have nothing but my life, which the sultan may deal with as he sees fit." Threatened with death, he showed no fear. The consul of Venice and the European merchants, however, interceded, and guaranteed a ransom of 100,000 *D.* down, and a similar sum after return to Cyprus; and the king was set at liberty, and allowed a house and suitable provision. He rode through the capital on a splendidly caparisoned

1426 July 1

Aug. 13

1427 Jan.

[1] To the credit of the sultan it must be recorded that, when the prisoners were publicly sold, he refused to allow parents and children and other near relatives to be separated. The proceeds of the sale went to the state treasury, after each adventurer had been paid $3\frac{1}{2}$ or 7 *D.* The double sum perhaps represents the pay of a horse-soldier.

theology, and he accepted the throne with much diffidence. His first steps were to set free the imprisoned emīrs of various factions, as well as the ex-sultans Aḥmad and 'Othmān, and to endeavour to conciliate all parties.
1468 Jan. 31 The result of his good intentions was that he found himself with no friends, and no money to buy them. The mamlūks, losing all patience with so incomprehensible a chief, burst into the citadel, locked up the learned sultan, and set up Kheyr Bek with the title of el-'Ādil. Kheyr Bek, however, had only time to plunder his predecessor's ḥarīm, when a still more powerful emīr, Ḳāït-Bey, assembled his mamlūks, ousted the usurper, and usurped the throne himself. Timurbūgha, twice deposed on the same day, was treated with the utmost consideration, and permitted to live in freedom and ease at Damietta.

1468-1496 El-Ashraf Ḳāït-Bey enjoyed the longest reign of any of the mamlūk sultans since en-Nāṣir b. Ḳalā'ūn. He reigned for nearly twenty-nine years, and was the most successful and warlike of all the Circassian line. He had worked his way up after the manner of the mamlūks. Bars-Bey had bought him for twenty-five guineas (50 *D.*); he had been resold to G'aḳmaḳ, made a lieutenant by Īnāl, a captain, and eventually a colonel,[1] by Khūshḳadam, until he became

Fig. 86.—Dīnār of Ḳāït-Bey, 1468-96.

[1] These terms are here used loosely to represent the mamlūk ranks "emīr of 10," "emīr of 40," and "emīr of 1000" horse. The ranks were not merely military, but carried with them the distinction of official nobility, like the Russian *tchin*. In Ḳāït-Bey's time there were but fourteen emīrs of 1000; in the reign of en-Nāṣir b. Ḳalā'ūn there had been twenty-four. The pay of the army, on the other hand, had been constantly increasing, from 11,000 *D.* a month under Mu'ayyad, and 18,000 *D.* under Bars-Bey, to 28,000 *D.* under G'aḳmaḳ, and 46,000 *D.* in the earlier part of Ḳāït-Bey's reign. This sum, amounting to nearly £300,000 a year, was presently reduced by striking a great many inefficients or mere pensioners off the rolls. The soldiers' rations were, of course, in addition to their pay.

Fig. 87.—Tomb-mosque of Ḳāït-Bey, 1474.

the Rasūlid territory were even confiscated, and pilgrims had to pay customs duty on what they brought home from Mekka.

There are unfortunately no trustworthy statistics to show the results of this policy. Duties were by no means restricted to the ports of importation. There were a number of government monopolies, and all sugar, pepper, wood, metal-work, etc., had to be brought to the government warehouses, and sold at such prices as the government fixed, subject to the duty. A cargo of pepper that cost 50 *D.* in Cairo was sold at Alexandria to Europeans for 130 *D.* The Venetians remonstrated through their consul, and getting no redress, broke off relations, and ordered a fleet to Alexandria to bring off all their merchants. This brought Bars-Bey to reason, and he accorded better terms to Venice, retaining only the pepper monopoly. The kings of Castile and Aragon also remonstrated, and sent cruisers to capture Egyptian shipping on the Syrian coast. Besides interfering with trade, Bars-Bey meddled with the currency, altering the relations of gold and silver (the latter coinage was exceptionally debased under the mamlūk sultans), putting foreign money out of currency, and then re-admitting it, to the extreme annoyance and loss of the merchants. Under G'aḳmaḳ we find royal monopolies and heavy duties still in force, but the Indian import duty at G'idda was still one tenth. Īnāl attempted to reform the debased silver coinage, but his changes were not popular. The currency went from bad to worse, and as the mamlūk empire declined, and had to fight for its bare existence, the taxation became more and more onerous.

Fig. 85.—Dīnār of Bars-Bey, Alexandria, 1425.

1438 June 7 Bars Bey died unregretted. He had been a stern and oppressive ruler, and the outward tranquillity of the realm was no proof of corresponding prosperity. His

conquest of Cyprus had pleased his mamlūks, and his monopolies had enriched them; but the people suffered. Egypt and Syria, says Maḳrīzī, became deserts in his reign. One of his last acts was to order the execution of two doctors, because they could not cure him; and this in face of the urgent remonstrances of the emīrs, who revered the good men. Yet he bore the character of a devout Muslim, fasted twice a week, besides five special days in the month, and delighted to hear the historian el-'Aynī reading to him in Turkish of an evening. His son el-'Azīz Yūsuf, aged fourteen, soon gave place to his regent (Niẓām-el-mulk) G'aḳmaḳ—once a slave of Barḳūḳ, a lieutenant under Mu'ayyad, a colonel under Ṭaṭar, and a high minister under Bars-Bey—whose government was mild compared with his predecessor's, and whose personal character was exemplary. He observed the laws of the Ḳorān scrupulously, touched no forbidden food, prohibited wine, and suppressed profane music. His orthodoxy induced him to persecute Jews and Christians, and to enforce the old sumptuary distinctions. Unlike Bars-Bey, he was as familiar with Arabic as with Turkish, studied Arabic theology, and was fond of the society of learned men. He died at the age of about eighty, and despite his simple life he left but a trifling fortune for his own son, the child of a Greek mother. 1438 Sept. 9 1453 Feb. 13

This son, el-Manṣūr 'Othmān, who was proclaimed sultan during his father's last illness, was deposed in a month and a half, by el-Ashraf Īnāl, an easy-going, pliable old man, who could hardly write his own name, and whose reign was embittered by the ceaseless rivalries and disorders of the mamlūks. His son el-Mu'ayyad Aḥmad was totally unequal to his difficult position, and soon abdicated in favour of his governor, the Greek ez-Ẓāhir Khūshḳadam, whose rule was conspicuous for successful corruption, and whose son ez-Ẓāhir Yel-Bey, known as *el-meǵnūn* or "the lunatic," was as usual dethroned in a couple of months by a faction of mamlūks to make room for their candidate, another elderly Greek, ez-Ẓāhir Timurbughā. The new sultan was a highly cultivated man, versed in philology, history, Feb. 1 Mar. 19 1461 Feb. 26 June 28 1467 Oct. 9 Dec. 3

theology, and he accepted the throne with much diffidence. His first steps were to set free the imprisoned emīrs of various factions, as well as the ex-sultans Aḥmad and 'Othmān, and to endeavour to conciliate all parties.
1468 Jan. 31 The result of his good intentions was that he found himself with no friends, and no money to buy them. The mamlūks, losing all patience with so incomprehensible a chief, burst into the citadel, locked up the learned sultan, and set up Kheyr Bek with the title of el-'Ādil. Kheyr Bek, however, had only time to plunder his predecessor's ḥarīm, when a still more powerful emīr, Ḳāït-Bey, assembled his mamlūks, ousted the usurper, and usurped the throne himself. Timurbūgha, twice deposed on the same day, was treated with the utmost consideration, and permitted to live in freedom and ease at Damietta.

1468-1496 El-Ashraf Ḳāït-Bey enjoyed the longest reign of any of the mamlūk sultans since en-Nāṣir b. Ḳalā'ūn. He reigned for nearly twenty-nine years, and was the most successful and warlike of all the Circassian line. He had worked his way up after the manner of the mamlūks. Bars-Bey had bought him for twenty-five guineas (50 *D.*); he had been resold to G'aḳmaḳ, made a lieutenant by Īnāl, a captain, and eventually a colonel,[1] by Khūshḳadam, until he became

Fig. 86.—Dīnār of Ḳāït-Bey, 1468-96.

[1] These terms are here used loosely to represent the mamlūk ranks "emīr of 10," "emīr of 40," and "emīr of 1000" horse. The ranks were not merely military, but carried with them the distinction of official nobility, like the Russian *tchin*. In Ḳāït-Bey's time there were but fourteen emīrs of 1000; in the reign of en-Nāṣir b. Ḳalā'ūn there had been twenty-four. The pay of the army, on the other hand, had been constantly increasing, from 11,000 *D.* a month under Mu'ayyad, and 18,000 *D.* under Bars-Bey, to 28,000 *D.* under G'aḳmaḳ, and 46,000 *D.* in the earlier part of Ḳāït-Bey's reign. This sum, amounting to nearly £300,000 a year, was presently reduced by striking a great many inefficients or mere pensioners off the rolls. The soldiers' rations were, of course, in addition to their pay.

Fig. 87.—Tomb-mosque of Ḳāït-Bey, 1474.

commander-in-chief under Timurbughā. He was an expert swordsman, and an adept at the javelin play. His career had given him experience and knowledge of the world; he possessed courage, judgment, insight, energy, and decision. His strong character dominated his mamlūks, who were devoted to him, and overawed competitors. His physical energy was sometimes displayed in flogging the president of the council of state or other high officials with his own arm, with the object of extorting money for the treasury. Such contributions and extraordinary taxation were absolutely necessary for the wars in which he was obliged to engage. Not only was the land taxed to one fifth of the produce, but an additional tenth (half-a-dirhem per ardebb of corn) was demanded. Rich Jews and Christians were remorselessly squeezed. There was much barbarous inhumanity, innocent people were scourged, even to the death, and the chemist 'Ali b. el-Marshūshī was blinded and deprived of his tongue, because he could not turn dross into gold.

The sultan had the reputation of miserliness, yet the list of his public works, not only in Egypt, but in Syria and Arabia, shows that he spent the revenue on admirable objects. His two mosques at Cairo, and his wekālas or caravanserais are among the most exquisite examples of elaborate arabesque ornament applied to the purest Saracenic architecture. He diligently restored and repaired the crumbling monuments of his predecessors, as numerous inscriptions in the mosques, the schools, the Citadel, and other buildings of Cairo abundantly testify. He was a frequent traveller, and journeyed in Syria, to the Euphrates, in Upper and Lower Egypt, besides performing the pilgrimages to Mekka and Jerusalem; and wherever he went he left traces of his progress in good roads, bridges, mosques, schools, fortifications, or other pious or necessary works. No reign, save that of en-Nāṣir b. Ḳalā·ūn, in the long list of mamlūk sultans, was more prolific in architectural construction or in the minor industries of art. The people suffered for the cost of his many buildings, but a later age has recognized their matchless beauty.

Ḳāit-Bey, however had more serious matters to deal with than architectural achievements. The northern frontier of Syria had long been a thorn in the side of the mamlūk sultans, not only on account of the chronic insubordination or revolutions among their Turkmān

Fig. 88.—Door of mosque of Ḳāit-Bey, 1474.

vassals, but because these disturbances constantly furnished a pretext for intervention on the part of their most dangerous neighbour, the ʿOthmānlī sultan, whose power was soon to be crowned by the conquest of

Constantinople. Mu'ayyad and his son had more than once reduced the troublesome border states to temporary submission. Bars-Bey had waged war with the Turkmāns of the White Pelt (1433), and even laid siege to their city of Āmid in Diyār-Bekr, without success. G'aḳmaḳ had cultivated the friendship of the border chieftains, married their daughters, and received their homage, at least in form; and his conciliatory policy towards the border Turkmāns as well as towards the 'Othmānlīs had been continued by Īnāl, who decorated

Fig. 89.—Wekāla or caravanserai of Ḳāït-Bey, 1477, near Azhar.

Cairo for several days in 1453, when an embassy from Moḥammad II brought the news of the conquest of Constantinople, and who maintained a friendly, if nominal, overlordship over the chief of the White Pelt and the Dhū-l-Ḳadr prince of Abulusteyn, though he had to send an army (1456-7) to recover Tarsus and Adhana from Ibrāhīm, the ambitious prince of Ḳaramān. The vassalage of the chiefs of the White Pelt, however, became merely ludicrous when Ūzūn Ḥasan adopted the

device of capturing Egyptian cities and fortresses (such as Karkar and Khartbirt), and pretending that he made it all correct by sending the *keys* to Cairo!

There were signs, moreover, that the 'Othmānlīs were not anxious for the friendship of Egypt. An embassy from Moḥammad II in 1464 pointedly disregarded some of the customary etiquette. In a dispute over the succession to the principality of Ḳaramān, the Porte and Egypt took opposite sides and nearly came to blows, and in another dispute between two brothers for the state of Dhū-l-Ḳadr—which was technically tributary to Egypt—the Porte secretly supported Shāh Siwār, the candidate whom Egypt opposed, and the mamlūks were defeated 1468
with heavy loss at 'Ayn-Tāb, and later on near the river 1469
G'eyhūn. Eventually, deprived of Turkish support, the rebel was forced to surrender, brought to Cairo, and hanged; but the course of the war had shown the danger of 'Othmānlī intervention. Ūzūn Ḥasan continued his policy of pretended vassalage to Ḳāït-Bey, sending him presents of camels and coats of mail and Circassian slaves; but so long as he persisted in keeping the fortresses and giving his suzerain only the keys, his career of aggrandisement gave Ḳāït-Bey no little anxiety, and the defeat of his "vassal" by Moḥammad II of Turkey was looked upon with some satisfaction.

Fig. 90.—Arms of Ḳāït-Bey.

All these minor contests proved the growing power and interference of the Ottoman Porte, and, if occasion were needed for a rupture, it was certain that it would easily be found in some border dispute. Ḳāït-Bey went out of his way to invite a quarrel, however, when he welcomed the exiled prince G'em (Djem), brother and rival of the new sultan of Turkey, Bāyezīd II, and not only treated him

with royal honours at Cairo, but supplied him with means for a fruitless rising in Asia Minor. When the unlucky exile was made the cat's-paw of the European powers, Ḳāït-Bey played his part in the ignoble tragedy, and negotiated with the pope for the surrender of so valuable a possession as the heir to the 'Othmānlī throne,[1] until finding it hopeless to extricate such a prize from Christian toils, he set about conciliating the offended brother at Constantinople. Bāyezīd at first rejected all overtures, and invaded Cilicia, taking Tarsus and Adhana; but, when in several engagements, the mamlūks, under the emīr Ezbek, had the better fortune, whilst Matthias Corvinus was threatening in Hungary, and G'em, the source of all these contests, was still alive at Rome, the Porte thought better of the overtures of peace which Ḳāït-Bey, weary of these expensive campaigns, renewed. The first envoy, Mamāy, was imprisoned; but the second, the emīr G'ānbalāt b. Yeshbek, managed to reach Bāyezīd's ear, and peace was concluded on the Turks restoring the keys of the fortresses they had seized.

Fig. 91.—Arms of Ḳāït-Bey, from a lamp.

1491

The last years of Ḳāït-Bey's reign were clouded, not only by the heavy taxation and consequent discontent due to the war, but also by an exceptionally virulent plague, which carried off 12,000 persons in a single day in Cairo, killed a third of the mamlūks, and bereaved the sultan himself of his only wife and a daughter on the same day. The plague was followed by scarcity and

1492

[1] See Thuasne, *Djem Sultan*, ch. ii, and pp. 254, 281, etc.; Weil, v. 345, note.

cattle disease; and to add to the general misery, a fierce contest broke out between two great divisions of the mamlūks. The aged sultan displayed his standard at the Citadel gate, beat to quarters, and quelled the riot for the moment, but the intrigues and jealousies continued, and at length Ḳāït-Bey, overcome by years (he was over eighty), and illness and worry, abdicated in favour of his son, and died the day after. 1495 1496 Aug. 7

Fig. 92.—Arms of emīr Ezbek, on his mosque, 1495.

After the brief reigns of Ḳāït-Bey's cruel and incapable son, en-Nāṣir Moḥammad (7 Aug., 1496—31 Oct., 1498); of ez-Ẓāhir Ḳānṣūh (2 Nov., 1498—28 June, 1500); el-Ashraf G'ān-balāt (30 June, 1500—25 Jan., 1501); and el-'Ādil Tūmān-Bey (Jan.—20 April, 1501), who were all at the mercy of the turbulent mamlūks, el-Ashraf Ḳānṣūh el-Ghūrī, a vigorous old man of sixty, once a slave of Ḳāït-Bey's, was elected to the throne, and quickly proved that age had not abated his natural strength of character. He restored order in the distracted metropolis at once, placed men whom he could trust in office, and set to work to replenish the empty treasury. Never had such drastic measures been known. He levied ten months' taxes at a stroke, laying not only the lands and shops and the other usual sources under contribution, but also the mills, water-wheels, boats, beasts of burden, Jews, Christians, palace servants, and even the *waḳf* or pious endowments. He imposed heavy customs duties, and mulcted the next of kin of the greater part of their inheritance. He still further debased the coinage for the benefit of the treasury and to the injury of the merchant. The result was a handsome revenue at the cost of the impoverishment and discontent of the people. El-Ghūrī spent his money on his mamlūks, whose number he increased by purchase; on building 1501 Apr. 20

his mosque and college in the street of Cairo named after him the Ghūrīya; on improving the pilgrims' road to Mekka, erecting rest-houses and digging wells; on making canals, aqueducts, fortifications at Alexandria and Rosetta, restoring the Citadel of Cairo, and generally improving the public works of the country. He also kept great state at court; his horses, jewels, table equipage, and kitchen were sumptuous and splendid; and though he was niggard and heartless enough to cut off the pensions of orphans, he could be princely in his presents to poets and musicians.

Beyond a few military émeutes and Bedawī risings,

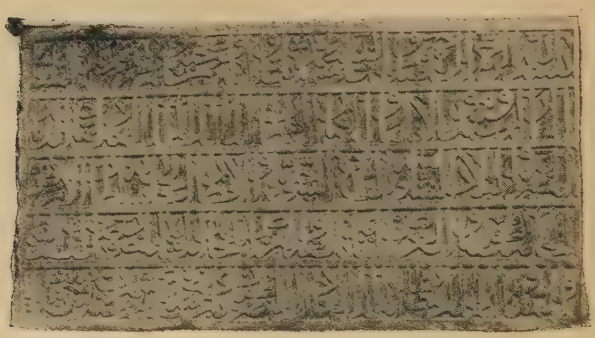


Fig. 93.—Inscription of Tūmān-Bey I in Citadel of Cairo, 1500.

there were few events to disturb the earlier years of his reign. The chief expeditions were to the Red Sea, where a new and formidable rival had appeared, who threatened to destroy the Indian transit trade which brought so much wealth to Egypt. Vasco da Gama had rounded the Cape of Good Hope in 1497, and the Portuguese had established themselves at Calicut in 1500. The trade which went to Egypt by way of 'Aden and G'idda and Sawākin was being diverted to the Cape route to Europe, and Egyptian ships, or ships trading to the Red Sea, were being seized by the Portuguese.

Fig. 94.—Sixteenth century house at Rosetta.

Ghūrī was entreated by the king of Guǵarāt and the other Moḥammadan rulers of India and southern Arabia to come to the rescue; and the importance of the menaced trade was an argument quite strong enough to move him. He first tried a diplomatic appeal to the pope to check the outrages of the Spaniards and Portuguese upon the Muslims both west and east, and threatened to destroy the holy places of Palestine if these persecutions and depredations continued. The European powers rightly judged that this was but an idle threat, and took no notice of it. Ghūrī then built a new fleet in the Red Sea, and his admiral Ḥoseyn encountered the Portuguese off Chaul, and defeated it, with the loss of the flagship and its admiral,

Fig. 95.—Dīnār of el-Ghūrī, Cairo, 1508.

1508 Lorenço, son of Almeida. The Portuguese, however, had their revenge at Diu in the following year; Albuquerque attacked ʻAden in 1513; the Egyptian carrying trade with India was doomed, but the mamlūk dynasty was doomed too.

1512 So long as Bāyezīd II was sultan of Turkey it was possible to temporize; but when his warlike and ambitious son Selīm I succeeded, in 1512, the long-impending catastrophe could no longer be averted. After the defeat of Ismāʻīl, the first shāh of the new Ṣafavid dynasty of Persia, at the battle of Chaldirān in 1514, Selīm turned southwards towards Syria and Egypt.

1514 He seized the border state of Dhū-l-Ḳadr, then tributary to Egypt, and sent its ruler's head to Cairo, although Egypt and Turkey were still at peace with one another. The annexation of Dīyār-Bekr brought the ʻOthmānlīs into close contact with the Egyptian frontiers in Syria and on the Euphrates, and Selīm continued to mass troops on the border. His grievances against Ghūrī were trifling: the sultan of Egypt had allowed the enemies of Turkey and even fugitive princes of the ʻOthmānlī house to pass through or take

refuge in his territories; he was believed to be in secret communication with shāh Ismā'īl of Persia; he had not commanded his vassal of Dhū-l-Ḳadr to support the Turks in their campaign against the Persians. But Selīm was not the man to wait for a fair *casus belli*: he had resolved to conquer Egypt, and no question of right would stand in his way.

Ḳānṣūh el-Ghūrī had missed his opportunity: he should have joined forces with shāh Ismā'īl in 1514, when the battle of Khaldirān might have had a different issue. He was over seventy years old, however, and his energies were failing. In May, 1516, too late, he left Cairo at the head of his army. Of the twenty-six colonels (or emīrs of 1000) of the Egyptian establishment, fifteen accompanied him to Syria, and the number of his personal following of mamlūks is variously estimated at 5000 to 14,000 horsemen. What was the total force under his command is not recorded, but it included the levies of Egypt and Syria and the Bedawī tribes. In June he made a triumphal entry into Damascus, and thence marched north to Aleppo. He received two embassies from Selīm, assuring him of his goodwill and repeating that the Turks were mustering against Persia, not against Egypt; but Ghūrī was not convinced, and when an embassy he sent to Selīm in reply was grossly and contemptuously outraged by the Turkish sultan, there was no longer any room for doubt as to his intentions. The two armies met on the plain called Marǵ Dābiḳ, a little north of Aleppo, on Sunday, the 24th of August, 1516, and despite the bravery of the mamlūks, the Egyptian army suffered a total defeat: the superior numbers and the artillery of the Turks, aided by the jealousy of some of the troops, and the treachery of

1516 May

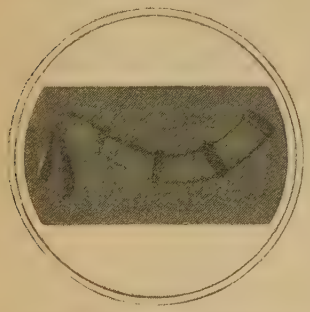


Fig. 96.—Arms of commandant Aḳtūh, c. 1516.

Aug.

Kheyr Beg, who had been won over by Selīm and now deserted with the left wing of the army, after spreading a rumour that Ghūrī was killed, completely routed the Egyptians, and they fled from the field. Their sultan was indeed dead, and they had no leader.

In Cairo, Tūmān-Bey, the viceroy, a slave of Ghūrī's was elected sultan as soon as the news was known of his

Fig. 97.—Bāb-el-Azab, Gate of the Citadel of Cairo, 18th century.

1516 Oct. 17 master's death. He accepted the office with reluctance, and only after the sheykh Abū-Su'ūd had pledged the emīrs to absolute loyalty. A letter from Selīm arrived, proposing to recognize him as viceroy of Egypt, if he would acknowledge the sultan of Turkey on the coinage and in the prayers. Tūmān-Bey was not indisposed to accept these terms, but the mamlūk emīrs compelled him to refuse, and the Turkish envoys were killed. There is no doubt that the mass of the Egyptians regarded the Ottoman conquest as a certainty not to be resisted.

1517 The Turks were soon upon them. On 22 Jan. they defeated the Egyptian army outside Cairo, and on the next day Selīm was prayed for in all the mosques of Cairo. On the 26th, Selīm himself entered Cairo in

state, accompanied by the captive caliph. The brief resistance of the mamlūks was overcome; and Tūman-Bey was betrayed, and hanged at the Zawīla gate (14 April). The caliph Mutawekkil, last of the 'Abbāsid caliphs of Egypt, was carried off to Constantinople and imprisoned; but after the death of Selīm (Sept., 1520), Suleymān the Great set the caliph free and allowed him to return to Cairo soon afterwards, where he died in 1538, after bequeathing his title and rights to the sultan of Turkey. The legality of the inheritance is repudiated, not only by the Shī'a, but by the majority of learned Sunnīs, who are aware that a caliph must belong to the Prophet's tribe of Ḳureysh; but whatever they may be *de jure*, the sultans of Turkey have been *de facto* caliphs of the greater part of orthodox Islām ever since the death of Mutawekkil.

Fig. 98.—Altūn of sultan Suleymān of Turkey, Miṣr, 1520.

After the 'Othmānlī conquest, Egypt sank into the position of a mere province of the Turkish empire, and was separated from the neighbouring provinces of Syria and Arabia.[1] The traitor Kheyr Bek was the first governor under the new régime. But the power of the mamlūks was not extinguished, and as time went on the authority of the Turkish pasha, supported by his janizaries, shrank before the reviving strength of the mamlūks, headed by their chief emīr, who was known as the sheykh-el-beled, or mayor. One of the sheykhs, 'Alī Bey, in the eighteenth century, supported by a large force of valiant mamlūks, and by the sympathy of the population, expelled the Turkish pasha, proclaimed the independence of Egypt (1768), subdued part of Arabia, and attempted to annex Syria. He was, however, betrayed, defeated,

[1] The history of Egypt under the 'Othmānlī Turks, and its development under the Khedives guided by French and latterly English influence, form a subject for a separate volume.

and killed by his favoured general Moḥammad Abū-Dhahab (1772). The leading mamlūks fought over the government of Egypt, subject, more or less, to the Porte, until Napoleon's invasion and victory at the battle of Embāba or "the Pyramids" (July 21, 1798)

Fig. 99.—Yigirmlik of 'Alī Bey, Miṣr, 1769.

converted Egypt for three years into a province of France. The British naval victory of the Nile, fought in the bay of Abū-kīr (Aug. 1, 1798) and the battle of

Fig. 100.—The Citadel of Cairo in 1859.

Alexandria (March 21, 1801), forced the French to evacuate the country (Sept.), and the authority of the Porte was restored. The perpetual jealousies of the mamlūks and their contests with the Turkish pasha were brought to an end when Moḥammad ʿAlī expelled the pasha (1805), massacred the leading mamlūks (1805 and 1811), and established the dynasty of viceroys or khedives which is still upon the throne of Egypt.

INDEX

Abâghâ, Ilkhân, 275, 279, 280
'Abbâd el-Balkhî, governor, 55
el-'Abbâs, regicide, 171, 172, 173
el-'Abbâs b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmân, marshal, 51
el-'Abbâs b. Lahî'a, marshal, 55
el-'Abbâs b. Mûsâ, governor, 55
el-'Abbâs, son of Ibn-Ṭûlûn, 68
el-'Abbâsa 76, 258
'Abbâsid caliphs of Baghdâd 30, 35, 138, 257-260; proclaimed at Cairo 193; black robes of 103; robes and throne at Cairo 139
'Abbâsid caliphs of Cairo 264, list 265; 287, 291, 305, 355
'Abdallâh b. 'Abd-el-Melik, gov., 46
'Abdallâh b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmân, gov., 51
'Abdallâh b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. Ḥudeyġ, marshal, 49, 50; vice-governor, 50
'Abdallâh b. 'Anır, governor, 45
'Abdallâh b. Beshshâr, marshal, 48
'Abdallâh b. Ḥuġeyra, ḳâḍî, 47
'Abdallâh b. Ḳeys, vice-gov., 45
'Abdallâh b. Lahî'a, ḳâḍî, 40, 51
'Abdallâh b. el-Mo'izz, 113, 114
'Abdallâh b. el-Mughîra, marshal, 49
'Abdallâh b. el-Musayyab, gov., 53; vice-governor 53
'Abdallâh b. Sa'd, general, 15; governor 20-23, 46
'Abdallâh b. Sumeyr, marshal, 48
'Abdallâh b. Ṭâhir, governor, 36, 56
'Abdallâwî melons 37
'Abdaweyh b. Ġ'ebela, marshal and governor, 56
'Abd-el-'Alâ b. Khâlid, marshal and ḳâḍî, 47
'Abd-el-'Alâ b. Sa'd, marshal, 51
'Abd-el-'Azîz, el-Mansûr, Burġî sultan, 334; inscription, 323
'Abd-el-'Azîz b. Marwân, governor, 26, 46
'Abd-el-Bâsiṭ, medresa, 323
'Abd-el-Ghânî, medresa, 323
'Abd-el-Ḥakam, Ibn-, 13, 19, 20; Moḥammad ibn, 65
'Abd-el-Laṭîf 12, 214, 215
'Abd-el-Melik b. Rifâ'a, gov., 47, 48
'Abd-el-Melik, Omayyad caliph, 26
'Abd-el-Melik b. Marwân, treasurer and governor, 49
'Abd-el-Melik b. Ṣâliḥ, gov., 53
'Abd-el-Melik b. Yezîd, gov., 29
'Abd-el-Wâḥid b. Yaḥyâ, gov., 57
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. 'Abdallâh, ḳâḍî, 54
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. 'Amr, vice-governor, 46
'Abd-er-Raḥmân, heir of Ḥâkim, 134
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. Ḥuġeyra, treas. and ḳâḍî, 46
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. Khâlid, marshal, 48; governor, 48
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. Maslama, marshal, 52
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. Mo'âwiya, marshal and ḳâḍî, 41
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. Mûsâ, marshal, 52; vice-governor, 54
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. 'Otba, gov., 46
'Abd-er-Raḥmân b. Sâlim, ḳâḍî, 49; treasurer, 50
'Abdûn, Ibn-, wezîr, 128
'Abîs, marshal and ḳâḍî, 46
'Abish, queen of Fârs, 255
Abû-'Abdallâh esh-Shî'î, 95, 96

Abū-'Alī "Katīfāt," wezīr, 167
Abū-'Awn, governor, 31, 50
Abū-Bekr b. G'unāda, marshal, 55
Abū-Bekr b. Muzhir, medresa, 323
Abū-l-Faraǵ 12
Abū-l-Fidā 136, 226, 255, 259, 272, 298, 312, 313
Abū-Katīfa, treasurer, 51
Abulusteyn 270, 335, 346
Abū-Maryam 5
Abū-Miyamīn (Benjamin) 2
Abū-Neǵāḥ b. Kennā, monk, 166
Abū-r-Rakāmak, poet, 187
Abū-Raḳwa, rebel, 128, 129
Abū-Sa'īd, Īlkhān, 307
Abū-Sa'īd of Tustar, 137, 148
Abū-Ṣāliḥ 6, 26, 86, 119, 127, 151, 152, 169, 170, 197, 205
Abū-Ṣālih *see* Memdūd
Abū-s-Seyfeyn, ch., 119
Abū-Su'ūd, sheykh, 354
Abū-Yezīd, rebel, 98
Abyār 149
Abyssinians 87, 272, 310
Abyssinians' Lake 140, 183
el-'Adawīya convent 170
'Aden 197, 339, 352
Adhana 66, 70, 336, 346, 348
el-'Āḍid, Fāṭimid caliph, 170, 176, 181, 193, 200
el-'Adil, Ayyūbid, 203, 212-221; inscription, 212
el-'Adil II, Ayyūbid, 230, 240, 257; casket, 230
el-'Ādil Ruzzīk, wezīr, 176
el-'Ādil, *see* Ketbughā, Selāmish
Adjutant-general 246, 248
Administration, provincial, 18-20, 25 ff; Fāṭimid, 156, 157
el-Afḍal, son of Saladin, 213-215
el-Afḍal, wezīr, 131, 154, 161-165
Aftegīn 114, 120, 158
Aǵdābīya 107
Aghlabids 68, 80, 95
Aḥmad Abū-l-Fawāris, Ikhshīdid, 89
Aḥmad, G'elāir, 332
Aḥmad Khān 280
Aḥmad, el-Mu'ayyad, Burǵī sultan, 341, 342
Aḥmad, el-Muẓaffar, Burǵī sultan, 336
Aḥmad el-Wāsitī, secretary, 61
Aḥmad b. Ismā'īl, governor, 54
Aḥmad b. Keyghalagh, gov., 79
Aḥmad b. Khālid, treasurer, 57
Aḥmad b. Mudebbir, treasurer, 57, 58, 61, 66, 67, 71
Aḥmad b. Mūsā, marshal, 54
Aḥmad b. Muzāḥim, governor, 58
Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn *see* Ṭūlūn
'Akaba 192
Āḳbughā, medresa, 276
el-Akhdar b. Marwān, marshal, 51
'Akka (Acre) 150, 151, 161, 163, 165; siege of 209-211; 217, 218, 227, 228, 239, 262, 267, 269, 279, 282, 285-7; gate at Cairo 302
Akkar 269
el-Aḳmar, mosque, 117, 189
el-Aḳṣā, mosque at Jerusalem, *see* Ḥaram
Aḳsunḳur, emīr, 318; mosque, 276, 314
Aḳṭāi, Fāris-ed-dīn, 243, 257-260
el-'Alā b. 'Āṣim, vice-governor, 54
'Alā-ed-dīn b. Ḳalā'ūn, 284
Alamūt 162
'Alawīs *see* 'Alids
el-'Alāya 338
Albuquerque 352
Aleppo 84, 85, 87, 88, 158, 159, 160, 174, 199, 200, 206, 213, 215, 229, 256, 295, 297, 306, 330, 332, 333, 353; inscriptions 277, 324
Alexandria 1, 6, 7, 8-17, 20, 21, 23, 30, 35, 36, 38, 41, 49, 61, 62, 65, 78, 80, 81, 83, 98, 101, 102, 107, 112, 151, 155, 157, 162, 182, 183, 188, 204, 216, 272, 316, 320, 327, 335, 350; library 12; Norman siege 198; trade 218, 240, 303, 304, 340; Ḳā'it-Bey's castle 323-4
'Alī, fourth caliph, 24, 31
'Alī Bey, rebel, 355
'Alī, el-Manṣūr, Baḥrī sultan, 261
'Alī b. el-Faḍl, marshal and vice-governor, 53
'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, Ikhshīdid, 86, 87
'Alī b. el-Marshūshī, chemist, 344

'Alī b. Moḥammad, 'Alīd, 32
'Alī b. el-Muthanna, marshal, 54
'Alī b. Ṣuleyḥ, k. of Yemen, 138
'Alī b. Ṣuleymān, governor, 52
'Alī b. Yaḥyā, Armenian gov., 57
'Alids 31, 32, 61, 92 ff.
Alliances with Christians 180, 281; *see* France
Almās, emīr, mosque, 276
Aloes 141, 147
Alum quarries 304
'Alwa 22
Amalric, k. of Jerusalem, 17, 176-185, 199
Amalric of Lusignan, k. of Cyprus, 217, 218
Ambassadors at Cairo, 180, *see* Embassies
Amber 165
Ambergris 122, 141
Āmid 229, 346
el-Āmīn, 'Abbāsid caliph, 35
el-Āmir, Fāṭimid caliph, 152, 162-166, 170
'Ammār b. Muslim, marshal, 52, 53
'Ammār, Ibn-, 107, 124, 125
'Amr b. el-'Āṣī, conqueror and governor of Egypt, 1-21, 23, 24, 26, 45; mosque at Fusṭāṭ, 17, 32, 73, 103, 132, 156, 204, 302
'Amr b. Ma'dī Kerib, sword of, 148
'Amr b. Sa'īd, marshal, 46
'Amr b. Shuraḥbīl 23
Anas, tomb of, 323
'Anbasa b. Isḥāḳ, gov., 40, 41, 42, 57
Andalusian immigrants 35, 36
Angora, battle, 334
Anjou, Charles of, 266
Anne, ch. of St., Jerusalem, inscr., 191
Anṭarṭūs (Antaradus) *see* Tortosa
Antioch 66, 70, 158, 163, 208, 217, 227, 266-9
Anūshtegīn ed-Dizberī, governor of Syria, 159, 160
Apamea (Fāmiya) 266
Aqueducts 65, 117, 203, 276, 316, 323
Arab conquest of Egypt 1-13; invasions of Nubia 15, 21-23, 41, 42; tribes in Egypt 28, 29, 31, 33-35, 38, 43, 101, 106, 113, 141, 173, 259, 260, 300, 320, 327; Arab troops 243, 278-280, 337, 353
Arabia 118, 138, 197, 207, 215, 272, 308, 310
Arabic in public documents 27
Aragon 266, 310, 340
el-A'raǵ or U'eyrīǵ 5
Araucana 308
Arbalesteer 262, 263
Arch, pointed, 63, 65
Archer, T. A., 287
Archery 250
Architecture 63, 65, 111, 123, 152, 153, 189, 201, 203, 204, 314, 315, 326, 344
Ardebb = 5 bushels, 6, 24
'Arḍ-eṭ-Ṭabbāla 139
Arǵawāsh, gov. of Damascus, 297
Arghūn, medresa of emīr, 276
Arǵūz b. Ulugh Ṭarkhān, marshal and governor, 58
el-'Arīsh, frontier town, 2, 13, 79, 83, 161, 259
'Arka 267
Armenia, Lesser, *see* Cilicia
Armenians 57, 150, 152, 162, 168, 237, 274, 279
Armenosa 3
Armour 122; armour-bearer 247
Army 2, 7, 29, 83, 85, 154, 155, 342
Arsūf 210, 267
Art 111, 112, 188, 314, 315, 326 *see* Architecture
Artabūn 5
Artīn Pasha, xi, Coll. of Coins, 55
Artīna 310
Arundel, earl of, 222
Asad-ed-dīn 186
Aṣal-Bey, mosque in Fayyūm (1499) 323
Ascalon 155, 158, 164, 165, 173, 204, 208, 210, 230, 231
Ashfīn 38
Ashnās, fiefee, 30, 56
el-Ashraf Sha'bān, Bāḥrī sultan, mosque, 276
el-Ashraf Mūsā, Ayyūbid, 257-259

el-Ashraf Mūsā, son of el-ʿĀdil, Ayyūbid, 229
el-Ashraf, *see* Bars-Bey, Ghūrī, Ināl, Ḳāït-Bey, Khalīl
el-ʿAskar, official capital, 31, 63
ʿAsluǧ, official, 114
Aslūn Khātūn, wife of Ḳalāʿūn, 288, 289
ʿAssāma b. ʿAmr, marshal, 51, 52; governor 52; vice-governor 52
Assassins (Ismāʿīlians) 162, 166, 199, 270
Asses 127, 141; as food 146
Astrology 103, 169
Aswān 22, 23, 41, 67, 151, 271, 308
Asyūṭ 4, 112
ʿAṭā b. Shuraḥbīl, treasurer, 50
Atābeg-el-ʿAsākir 247, 256
Atābegs of Mōṣil, *see* Zengids
Aṭfīḥ 179
Athārib 174
el-Athīr, Ibn-, 46, 47, 182, 240
Athribis 9
Atlantic reached by Fāṭimids 99, 100, 123
Atlas satin 165, 280
Atsīz, Selǧūḳ general, 161
ʿAttābī (taby) cloth 122
Augustamnica 6
Aviary 74
ʿAwf b. Wuheyb, vice-governor, 54
ʿAwn b. Wahb, vice-governor, 53
Aybek, el-Moʿizz, Baḥrī sultan, 256-260
Aydekīn, emīr, 263
ʿAydhāb, Red Sea port, 41, 155, 271, 304
ʿAyn-Ǧālūd 262
ʿAyn-Tāb 347
el-ʿAynī, historian, 341
Ayyūb 191; Ayyūbids 212-241, 257, 260-262, 272, 278
Ayyūb *see* eṣ-Ṣāliḥ
Ayyūb b. Shuraḥbīl, governor, 47
Azhar mosque and university, 104, 117, 188, 189, 196, 242, 302, 324
el-ʿAzīz, Fāṭimid caliph, 112, 118-123, 139, 142, 147, 158, 159
el-ʿAzīz, son of Saladin, 213, 214, 217
el-ʿAzīz *see* Yūsuf
el-ʿAzīz, Ibn-, painter, 111

Baʿalbekk 213, 229; inscr. 277
el-Bābān (Babein) 181, 191
Bāb-el-Futūḥ, "Gate of Conquests," 117, 152
Bāb-en-Naṣr, "Gate of Victory," 117, 152, 291
Bāb-Zawīla (Zuweyla), 117, 152, 172, 175, 178, 196
Bābshād, Ibn-, 149, 187
Babylon of Egypt (Ḳaṣr-esh-Shemaʿ), 3, 4, 8, 9, 13, 17, 20, 301
Badges of monks 27
Baǧa race in Sūdān 41
Baghdād 149, 160, 261, 265, 331, 332; recognizes Fāṭimid caliph 138, 139; acknowledges sovereignty of Egypt, 307, 320; *see* ʿAbbāsids
Bahā-ed-dīn Zuheyr, poet, 220, 240, 251-252
Bahrām, wezīr, 168
Baḥr-eṣ-Ṣugheyyir (Ushmūm canal) 233
Baḥrī Mamlūks 243-322
Bākbāḳ, fieffee, 30, 58, 61, 62
Baḳṭ (tribute of slaves) 22, 23, 171, 182, 271
Balāṭunus, inscription, 277
Balban, emīr, 257
Baldwin I, k. of Jerusalem, 164, 165; Baldwin IV 199, 205, 206; Baldwin V 207
el-Balkhī, governor, 55
Band, royal, 248
Baraka Khān, of the Golden Horde, 265, 266, 277; his daughter 277
Baraka Khān, es-Saʿīd, Baḥrī sultan, 277; inscriptions 276; tomb 276
Barǧawān, emīr, 124, 125; street 151
Barǧūǧ, fieffee, 30, 62
el-Barīdī 84
Barḳa 107, 128, 138, 197, 272, 304
Barḳīya troops 176
Barḳūḳ, eẓ-Ẓāhir, Baḥrī sultan,

322, 326, 330-332; medresa 323, 332; tomb 323, 332; inscription 323
Bars-Bey, el-Ashraf, Burǧī sultan, 327, 336-341, 346; medresa and tomb 323; inscr. 323
Basil II, East Roman emperor, 120, 159
Bashīr b. en-Naḍr, ḳāḍī, 46
Bashmakdār, slipper-bearer, 247
Bashmūr 104
el-Baṭā'iḥī, *see* el-Ma'mūn
Bath, Night of the, 85
Baths, public, 12, 33, 133
Bāṭilīs 141
Baṭūṭa, Ibn-, 314, 315
Bayeux casket 111
Bāyezīd, 'Othmānlī sultan, 247, 332, 348, 352
Bedawīs *see* Arabs
Bedr el-G'emālī, wezīr, 150, 151, 152, 153, 161, 168, 201
Beer 126, 273
Behnesa 4, 112, 148, 287
Bekkār b. Ḳuteyba, ḳāḍī, 57, 58, 68, 69
Bektāsh, emīr, 300
Bektīmūr (or Buktumūr, Bektemir, Bekdemir) emīr, 296, 302; inscr., 276
Beled, on Tigris, 73
Belfort (Shekīf Arnūn) 218, 268
Belhīb 10, 11
Bells 103, 127
Benjamin, patriarch, 2, 26
Berbers, 24, 31, 32, 95, 96, 97, 107, 134, 135, 137, 145, 146; troops, 118, 124, 125, 141; *see* Kitāma, Lewāta, Ṣanhāǧa
Berchem, M. van, v, xi, 59, 117, 153, 191, 201, 277, 324
Bernard, bishop of Palermo, 226
el-Besāsīrī, emīr, 138
Beshtāk, palace of emīr, 276
Bethlehem 227
Beybars, eẓ-Ẓāhir, Baḥrī sultan, 184, 235, 246, 248-251, 257, 262-275; tomb 276; inscr. 242; lion 263
Beybars II, el-Muẓaffar, G'āshnegīr, Baḥrī sultan, 288, 294, 295, 298, 300, 304-306; Khānaḳāh 276, 314; inscription 276
Beydara, emīr, 276, 288
Beyn-el-Ḳaṣreyn, 109, 166, 168, 230, 237, 258, 264, 314, 332
Beyrūt 114, 206, 217, 220, 287, 335
Beysān 218, 262
Beysarī, emīr, 251, 291, 293, 302
Beyt-el-ḳāḍī 323
Beyt-el-māl (treasury) 156
Bezoar 147
Bibars *see* Beybars
Bidding-prayer *see* Khuṭba
el-Bilādhurī, historian, 15, 19, 45
Bilbek, emīr, 242
Bilbeys 2, 3, 20, 123, 177, 178, 184, 223
el-Bīra 266, 270, 272, 332
Birket-el-Ḥabash (Abyssinians' Lake) 140, 183
Bishr b. Ṣafwān, governor, 47
Black robes 103, 127
Black troops *see* Sūdānīs
Boemond VI 217, 266, 268, 269; Boemond VII 281
Bona 112
Books, hills of destroyed, 149
Bridge of er-Rōḍa 108, 141
Brigandage 135, 318, 320
Brooks, E. W., 8, 13
Būkalamūn 112
Būlāḳ 112, 336
Bulgaria 310
Bulugīn, Yūsuf b. Zeyrī, 107
el-Bundukdār (arbalesteer) 263
Burǧ-ez-Ẓafar, Alexandria 323-324
Burǧ Oghlu tribe 278
Burǧī mamlūks 282, 305, 323-355; list of sultans 254
Burgundy, duke of, 236
Burhān-ed-dīn, Mongol gov., 332
Burlughī, emīr, 296
Bury, J. B., v, 7
Busiris 9, 20
Butcher, Mrs., 3, 240
Butler, A. J., 17
Buweyhids 106, 159
Byzantines *see* Romans, East

Caesarea (Philippi) 159, 178, 267; archbishop of 228

Caesarea *see* Ḳayṣarīya
Cairo (el-Ḳahira) 17; foundation 103; palaces 109, 110, 121, 123; manufactures 112, 122; luxury 122; described by Nāṣir-i-Khusrau 139, 140; Saladin's additions 195, 201; collection of coins 49, 51, 55, 56; *see* Citadel, Mosques
Calabria raided by Fāṭimids 97
Calicut 339, 350
Caliphate, 'Oṯhmānlī, 265, 355
Caliphs, government under, 18-58; in Egypt, 29, 37, 265; *see* 'Abbāsids, Fāṭimids, Omayyads
Calligraphy 187, 188
Canals 20, 65, 157, 203, 233, 316; cutting the canal 85, 112, 141, 142
Candles, wax, 249, 280
Cannibalism 146, 169, 216
Captain of the Guard 247
Carmathians (Ḳarmaṭis) 76, 88, 89, 94, 101, 105; siege of Cairo, 106, 107, 113; 158
Casanova, P., v, xi, 117, 193, 201, 276, 315
Castile 281, 340
Causeway 316
Cerinea 338
Ceuta 100
Ceylon 281
Chamberlains 155, 156, 176, 247
Chancery 156
Châteauroux 338
Châtillon, Reginald of, 207, 208
Chaul 352
Chess 126, 147
Chester, earl of, 222
China 147, 281
Chingiz Khān 231
Christians of Egypt *see* Copts; Christian wife of caliph 'Azīz 119; Christian alliances 180, 281
Christodulus 143
Chrysobullon, battle at, 70
Churches 5, 12, 21, 26, 127, 144, 241, 301, 311; revenue of 170
Cilicia (Lesser Armenia) 206, 217, 267, 270, 281, 287, 293, 299, 308, 348
Circassian mamlūks 323-355
Circassians 282, 295, 347
Citadel of Cairo 195, 196, 201, 203, 206, 212, 230, 246, 274, 275-277, 282, 289, 291, 294, 314-316, 323, 330, 337, 344, 350; inscr. 276, 323, 324
Cock-fighting 261
Coins 14, 49, 51, 55, etc., passim
Colleges 204 *see* Mosques
Commander-in-chief 128, 151, 156, 247; *see* Marshal
Commercial treaties 266
Concerts 251
Conrad, emperor, 174
Constantine VIII 136; IX Monomachus 143
Constantinople 259, 265, 266, 281, 300, 310, 337, 346, 355; mosque, 136, 143
Convent of the Bones 103
Copts 2, 5-9, 11, 15, 19, 20, 26-29, 32, 34, 37, 38, 39, 66, 70, 119, 120, 127, 128, 133, 143, 152, 166, 167-170, 205, 241, 282, 296, 300, 301, 310, 311, 320, 344, 349
Corbet, E. K., 17
Corn regulations 104, 142, 273, 312; import 143, 144
Correspondence office 188, 246
Corruption, official, 327, 329
Corsairs 338
Court, Fāṭimid, 141, 142, 155, 156, 180; mamlūk, 247; of justice, 104
Corvée 20, 157
Crac des Chevaliers (Ḥiṣn-el-Akrād) 217, 269
Crete 36
Crocodile Lake (Timsāḥ) 20
Crops 143
Crosses 127
Crusade, First, 163-165, 173; second 174; third 209-211; children's 218, 227; Hungarian, 218; of Frederick II 225-229; of the king of Navarre 230, 231; of Louis IX 231-239, 256
Crystal 110, 111, 122, 147
Cubit 26

Cup-bearer 247
Cup, magic 193
Curfew trumpet 100
Currency 340
Curse, public, 69
Custom dues 303, 304, 339, 340, 349
Cyprus 217, 218, 228, 232, 269, 286, 320, 336-339
Cyriacus 27
Cyrus, patriarch, 7, 11, 13

D = dīnār, half-a-guinea 6
Dahabīyas, state, 148
Damascus 66, 67, 72, 73, 75, 76, 82, 84, 85, 87, 88, 105, 106, 113, 114, 150, 158, 159, 160, 161, 174-177, 183-185, 199, 205, 211, 213-215, 229-231, 256, 258, 262, 264, 273, 278, 280, 283, 287, 295-297, 329, 330, 332, 333, 334, 353; inscr. 212, 242, 276, 277, 324
Damietta (Dimyāṭ), 9, 10, 13, 41, 76, 112, 114, 151, 155; siege by Crusaders 192; siege by John of Brienne 219-224; by Louis IX 232-239; 250, 304, 336
Damsīs 9
Darāzī, founder of Druzes, 132, 133
Dār-el-'Adl 242
Dār-el-Ḥadīth 230
Dār-el-'Ilm or Ḥikma 130, 131
Dār-el-Ma'mūn 173, 204
Dares 9
Dārūm 159
Davis, Rev. E. J., 233, 238
Daw 271
Dāwūd, k. of Nubia, 271
Dāwūd b. Ḥubeyth, vice-gov., 53
Dāwūd b. Yezīd b. Ḥātim, gov., 52
ed-Dāya, Ibn-, 71
Dead Sea castles 197, *see* Karak and Shawbek
Death, Black, 320
Debīḳ 112, 122, 148
Dehlek 339
Derbesāk 267
Dereksa 233
Derenbourg, H., 171, 172, 175
Deylemīs 141
Dhukā er-Rūmī (Ducas), gov., 79
Dhū-l-Fiḳār sword 148
Dhū-l-Ḳadr 310, 321, 335, 346, 347, 352, 353
Diḥya b. Mus'ab, rebel, 33, 34
Dikes 157, 203
Dimity (Dimyāṭī) 112
Dimrū 144
Diplomas 247, 291, 294
Diplomatic 27, 297
Dirghām 175-178
Diseases, isolation of contagious, 273
Dispatches 188, 246
Diu 352
Dīwān mufrid 128
Diyā-ed-dīn Yūsuf 312
Diyār-Bekr 352
ed-Dizberī 159, 160
Djem, Prince, *see* G'em
Docks 112, 120, 123
Dome of the Air, 31, 63
Dome of the Rock (Ḳubbat-es-Ṣakhra), Jerusalem, 190, 270, 324
Domentianus, praeses of Arcadia, 4, 9, 10
Dongola, siege, 21, 271
Doorkeeper, grand, 250
Dozy, R. P., 36
Drum, magic, 160
Drummery 248; lords of, 248
Druzes 133, 134, 297, 308
Duḳāḳ 163
Dultibea 308
Dureyd, Ibn-, 149

Earthquakes 81, 88, 216, 301, 302
Edessa 163, 174, 229; architects 152
Edward Plantagenet 269, 270
Election of sultan 290
Elephants in Egypt 41, 122, 271
Embāba 355
Embassies 109, 180, 265, 280, 288, 297, 299, 300, 337, 338, 354
Emeralds 41, 111, 147, 148; mines 304
Emīr-Akhōr 247
Emīr-'Alam 246, 248
Emīr-Bābdār 250
Emīr-el-G'uyūsh 151

Emīr-el-Kebīr 247
Emīr-Meǵlis 247
Emīr-Shikār 247
Emīr-Ṭabar 247
Emīr-Ṭablkhānāh 248
Enamel 147
English at Damietta 222
Engraved work 147
Ephraim, patriarch 119
Equerry 247
Erekli 335
Erment 41
Esnē 41, 61
Eunuchs 42, 84, 88, etc.
Exchequer 122, 157
Eyla 14, 192
Ezbek, emīr 323
Ezbek (Uzbek) el-Yūsufī, 323, 348

EL-FĀḌIL, ḳāḍī, 193, 204, 205, 212, 214
el-Faḍl, general, 129
el-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ, gov., 30, 50, 52
Fahd 128
el-Fāïz, Fāṭimid caliph, 172, 175
el-Fakahānī, mosque, 117
Fakhr-ed-din 213, 232, 235, 243
Fāḳūs 304
Falconry 171, 250, 316
Famagusta (Magūsa) 336
Fāmiya *see* Apamea
Famine 97, 101, 104, 135, 143; seven years' 146; 215, 273, 289
Faraǵ, en-Nāṣir, Burǵī sultan, 332-335; khānaḳāh and tomb, and inscr. 323
el-Faramā (Pelusium), siege 2, 82, 106, 165
Fāreskūr 238
el-Fārisī, tomb, 212
Farmer of revenues 19
Fasting 292, 341
Fāṭima, chapel of, 242
Fāṭimid caliphs 79-81, 83, 89, 90, 95-193; their pedigree 95, 108, 116, 118
el-Fayyūm 3, 4, 9, 15, 80, 81, 300; mosque and inscr. 323
Feast of Sacrifice 113, 119, 126, 135
Febronia 28
Fellāḥīn 18, 157, 253
Festivities 251-252
el-Feṭḥ, fieffee, 30, 57
Fève, La (el-Fūla) 207
Fez (Fās) 97, 99
Fiḍāwīs 270
Fiefs 30, 244
Fire, Greek, 234
Fīrūz 160
Fīrūz, medresa, 323
Fisheries 43
Flag of truce 102
Flags, Treasury of the, 148
Fleet, Arab, 23, 76, 80, 82; Fāṭimid 97, 107, 112, 120, 121, 155; Saladin's 206; Mamlūk 269, 320, 336, 338, 339
Fouquet, Dr., 44, 47, etc.
France, coast harried by Fāṭimids, 97; diplomatic relations with 266, 281, 300, 310
Francis of Assisi 241
Frederick Barbarossa 209
Frederick II 213, 225-229, 235
French at Damietta 222
Freshwater canal 20
Frontier of Egypt, *see* el-'Arīsh, Aswān, Barḳa, Hīt, Sawākin
el-Fūla (La Fève) 207
Fulcher, Geoffrey, 180
Furāt, Ibn-, 101, 104, 106, 265
el-Fusṭāṭ (Miṣr) 14, 17, 30, 31, 49, 88, 101, 102, 103, 108, 115, 119, 132, 133, 140, 141, 143, 149, 177, 179, 183; burnt 184; 187, 195
Fūwa 316

GABES (Ḳābīs) 197
G'ābir b. el-Ash'ath, governor, 54
G'a'far b. Fellāḥ, general, 105, 106, 158
el-G'āi el-Yūsufī, tomb of emīr, 276
G'aḳmaḳ, ez-Ẓāhir, Burǵī sultan, 338, 340, 341, 342, 346; mosque 323; inscriptions 323, 324
G'ālūd, Ayn, 262
G'amdār (master of the wardrobe) 247
Games 126, 147
G'ānbalāt b. Yeshbek, emīr, 348

G'ānī-bek el-Ablaḳ 338; mosque 323
Gardens of Cairo 195, *see* Kāfūr
el-G'arġarāi, wezīr, 136, 148
el-G'arrāḥ, Ibn-, calligrapher, 188
G'arrāḥ family 159
G'āshnezīr (taster) 247, 288
Gates of Cairo 117, 152, *see* Bāb
G'awhar er-Rūmī, founder of Cairo, 99-108, 111, 122
Gaza (Ghazza) 161, 175, 176, 231, 257, 258, 261, 262; inscr. 277, 324
Gazelle Valley 179
G'ebela, inscriptions, 277
G'ekem, emīr, 334
G'elāirs 332
G'em sultan (Prince Djem) 347
G'emāl-ed-dīn el-Ḥalabī, historian, 66, 122, 165
el-G'emālī *see* Bedr
G'ened 197
Genoa taken by Fāṭimids 97
Genoese 320, 338
George the Cyprian 3
Georgian troops 279
G'erbāsh, admiral, 336
Germans at 'Akka 209, 217; at Damietta 222, 224
el-G'esūra 278
G'eyhūn river 267, 347
G'eysh b. Khumāraweyh, Tūlūnid, 75
Gezīrat-es-Ṣinā'a (Rōda) 26
Ghānim, tomb of, 323
Ghāshiya 249
Ghawth b. Suleymān, ḳāḍī, 40, 50, 51, 52
Ghāzān, Īlkhān, 295-299
el-Ghūrī, el-Ashraf Ḳanṣūh, Burġī sultan 349-354; mosques and other buildings 323; inscr. 324
Ghūrīya 350
G'idda (Jedda) 339, 340, 350
Giraffe 41, 271, 273
Girġis, G'ureyġ, George, son of Menas, *see* Muḳawḳis
Girls, massacre of, 136
el-G'īza 30, 43, 102, 107, 129, 141, 170, 304; camp 80; fleet at 82; dike 203; bridge 323; pyramids 38
G'izya (poll-tax) 5, 7, 19, 25, *see* Taxes
Glass 112, 141, 147, 314; glass stamps and weights 14, 27, 44, 47-53, 117, 124, *see* list of illustrations
Golden Horde, Khāns of, 265, 266, 273, 277, 281, 282, 299, 308, 332
Golden House 26
Gothic gateway 302
Governors, provincial, 18-58
Granaries 143, 312
Grave-stones 14, 59
Greek slaves 110; sultans 325; troops 155, 121, 341
Grooms 247
Guard, body-, 61, 71, 75, 243 ff.
Guard, Young, 156, 167, 171
G'ubeyl 161, 165
G'ubeyr, Ibn-, 204
G'uff, the Ikhshīd, 82
Guġarāṭ, king of, 352
G'ūkāndār (polo-master) 247, 249, 302
G'urdīk 185
Guy of Lusignan 208, 209
el-G'uyūshī mosque 117
el-G'uyūshīya troops 168

Ḥabīb b. Abān, marshal, 52
Ḥaḍramawt 138
el-Ḥāfiẓ, Fāṭimid caliph, 140, 166-171
Ḥafṣ b. el-Welīd, marshal, 47, 48; governor 48, 49
Ḥafṣids of Tunis 308
Ḥāġġī, eṣ-Ṣāliḥ and el-Manṣūr, Baḥrī sultan, 254, 330
Ḥaifa 210, 218
Hair, women's, sent in supplication, 173, 184
Haithon 267
el Ḥakam of Cordova 35
el-Ḥākim, 'Abbāsid caliph of Egypt, 265, 287
el-Ḥākim, Fāṭimid caliph, 119, 123-134, 150, 187, 188; mosque 117, 123, 129, 189, 196, 276, 302; inscriptions 117, 276

Halberdiers 247
Ḥalḳa (bodyguard) 243ff.; *see* Guard
Hall of Columns 315
Hall of Science 130, 131
Ḥamāh 199, 213, 215, 229, 262, 270, 272, 278, 279, 280, 306; Horns of 200; inscr. 277, 324
Ḥamdānids 83-85, 87, 105, 106, 159
Hammer, J. von 117
el-Ḥamrā el-Ḳuṣwā 30
Hamza, shield of, 148
Hamza of Sūsan 132
Ḥanafī school 39
Ḥanẓala b. Ṣafwān, governor, 47, 48
Ḥaram of Jerusalem and Aḳṣā mosque 227; inscriptions, 77, 190, 277, 324
Ḥarbaweyh, Ibn-, ḳāḍī, 77, 79
Harenc 178
el-Ḥārith b. Meskīn, ḳāḍī, 57
el-Ḥārith b. Zur'a, marshal, 55
Ḥarrān 67, 160
Harthama b. A'yan, gov., 53
Harthama b. en-Naḍr, gov., 57
Hārūn b. Khumāraweyh, Ṭūlūnid, 75, 76
Hārūn er-Rashīd, 'Abbāsid caliph, 34, 35, 147
Hārūn ez-Zuhrī, ḳāḍī, 56, 57
Ḥasan el-Akhram 132
Ḥasan Buzurg, 307
el-Ḥasan, Fāṭimid pretender, 162
Ḥasan en-Nāṣir, Baḥrī sultan, 318; mosque and tomb 276, 330; inscr. 277, 323
Ḥasan b. Aḥmad, Ḳarmaṭī, 105, 113
Ḥasan b. el-Ḥāfiẓ 168
Ḥasan, brother of Ikhshīd, 87
el-Ḥasan b. et-Takhtaḫ, gov., 54
el-Ḥasan b. Yezīd, marshal, 47, 52
el-Ḥasaneyn, mosque, 212
Hāshim b. 'Abdallāh, marshal, 51, 54
Hashīsh 273
Ḥassān b. 'Aṭāhiya, governor and vice-governor 49
Ḥassān b. Daghfal, rebel, 159, 160
Ḥātim, governor, 31
Ḥātim b. Harthama, gov., 54, 57
Ḥawāīg-Khānāh 248
Hawdaġ 166
Ḥawf (eastern delta) 24, 27, 28, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 43, 75, 82
Hawking 171, 250, 316
el-Ḥawthara b. Suheyl, gov., 49
Ḥayyān b. Shureyḥ, treasurer, 47
Heads, Museum of, 171
Hebron 267, 277
Heliopolis ('Ayn-Shems) 4, 5, 106, 113, 145
Henry of Champagne 209, 216, 217
Henry II of Cyprus, 286
Henry VI, emperor, 217
Heraclius 7, 13
Hermitage Collection of Coins 55
Herz Bey v, xi, 332
Hierocles 3
el-Ḥiġāz 105, 138, 141, 279
el-Ḥiġāzīya, princess Tatar, medresa, 276
Hilāl, Arab tribe, 138
Hilāl b. Bedr, governor, 79
Hilālī taxes 43
Ḥimṣ (Emesa) 159, 199, 205, 213, 215, 229, 262, 272, 279, 295, 296; inscription on tomb of Khālid 242
Hindūstān 310
Ḥiṣn-el-Akrād (Crac des Chevaliers) 217, 269
Historians under Fāṭimids 187
Hīt 74
Ḥiṭṭīn 208, 211
Holy Land *see* Palestine
Honey 126
Hor, inscription at Mt., 277
Horse breeding 316; racing 43, 250, 316
el-Ḥoseyn, cuirass of, 148; martyrdom 92, 115
el-Ḥoseyn, admiral, 352
el-Ḥoseyn b. G'awhar 128
el-Ḥoseyn b. G'emīl, governor, 54
el-Ḥoseyn b. 'Obeydallāh, Ikhshīdid, 89, 101, 105
Ḥoseyn, mosque of emīr, 276
Hospital, Knights of the, 205, 219, 225, 269, 270, 278, 281, 286, 287, *see* Rhodes
Hospitals 283-4

Houses 139
Housings 249
Howorth, Sir H. H., 242, 296, 298
Ḥubeyra b. Hāshim b. Ḥudeyġ, marshal, 55
Ḥuġeyra, Ibn-, ḳāḍī, 47
Hugh of Caesarea 180, 181, 182
Hugh III of Cyprus 269
Hugh of Tiberias 205
Hūlāgū 261, 262
Hulaguids 264, *see* Ilkhāns
Ḥulwān 26
Ḥumeyd, governor, 32
Humphrey of Toron 200
el-Ḥurr b. Yūsuf, governor, 48

Ibelin, Baldwin and Balian of, 205; John of 268
Ibn- *see* under second word
Ibrāhīm of Ḳaramān 346
Ibrāhīm b. el-Bekkā, ḳāḍī, 54
Ibrāhīm b. el-G'arrāḥ, ḳāḍī, 55, 56
Ibrāhīm b. Isḥāḳ, ḳāḍī, 55
Ibrāhīm b. Khumāraweyh 78
Ibrāhīm b. el-Mu'ayyad 335
Ibrāhīm b. Ṣāliḥ, governor, 51, 52
Ibrīm (Primis) 197
'Īd (Bairam) 109
'Īd-el-Maghtas 86
Idrīsids 95
Ildeguz 151
el-Ikhshīd, Moḥammad b. Ṭughġ, governor, 81-86
Ikhshīdids, 86-89, 105, 107, 113
Ikrima b. 'Abdallāh, marshal, 49, 50; vice-gov. 50
Il-Ghāzī, Ortuḳid, 164
Ilkhāns of Persia 264, 265, 266, 270, 271, 275, 288, 295-299, 307
Illuminations 86
Imām, Twelfth, 167
Imāmate 93 ff., 108
Imāmians 167
Import duties 304, *see* Trade
'Imrān b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān, marshal and ḳāḍī, 46
Īnal, el-Ashraf, Burġī sultan, 338, 341, 346; medresa 323; inscriptions 324; solar quadrant 323
Īnāl el-Yūsufī, medresa, 323
Incendiarism 311
India, 281, 310
Indian slave 160
Indian trade 303, 339, 340, 350, 352
Industries 112, 122
Inscriptions 14, 59, 117, 212, 242, 276, *see* headings of chapters
Intoxicating liquors 126, 273, *see* Beer, Wine
Investiture 265, 291, 294
Irridescent manufactures 112
Irrigation 18, 20, 157
'Isa b. Abī-'Aṭā, treasurer, 49
'Isā b. Manṣūr, governor, 56, 57
'Isā b. Moḥammad, gov., 78, 79
'Isā b. el-Munḳadir, ḳāḍī, 40, 56
'Isā b. Nestorius, wezīr, 120, 121, 128
'Isā b. Yezīd, governor, 56
Isabella of Jerusalem 217, 218
Isfehsālār 156
Isfendiyār, Ibn-, 56
Isḥāḳ b. el-Furāt, ḳāḍī, 53
Isḥāḳ b. Kundāġik 72, 73, 74
Isḥāḳ b. Suleymān, governor, 53
Isḥāḳ b. Yaḥyā (Khūṭ), gov., 57
Ismā'īl b. 'Isā, merchant, 52; gov. 53
Ismā'īl b. Ṣāliḥ, governor, 53
Ismā'īl b. Sumey', ḳāḍī, 51
Ismā'īl *see* eṣ-Ṣāliḥ
Ismā'ilians *see* Assassins
Itāsh, fief fee, 30, 57
'Iyādh b. 'Abdallāh, ḳāḍī, 47
'Iyādh b. Ḥayrama, marshal, 48

J: for Arabic words beginning with J see G'
Jacobite church 2, *see* Copts
Jacob's Ford 205
Jaffa (Yāfa) 106, 107, 164, 165, 210, 211, 217, 218, 220, 267, 268
Jahāngīr 255
Jerusalem 128, 136, 143, 161, 163, 164, 192, 198, 208, 210, 211, 217-219, 222, 224-228, 259, 266, 267, 287, 300, 306, 344, *see* Ḥaram, Crusades, Baldwin, Amalric, etc.; inscr., 277, 324

Jews 11, 70, 126, 137, 300, 301, 344, 349
John of Brienne 218, 222, 225
John II of Cyprus 338
John of Mārōs 3
John the Monk 152
John, St., church at Alexandria, 8; monastery at Cairo 140
Joinville 226, 232 ff., 239, 250

Ka'ba 145; covering for 112, 113
Ḳābis (Gabes) 107
Ḳāḍī, chief, 18, 38, 39, 40, 45-58, 104, 119, 156, 187
Ḳāḍīs, four, 274
Kāfūr Abū-l-Misk 84, 87-90, 101; garden of 85, 103, 109, 125; inscription 77
el-Ḳaḥḥāl, Ibn-, ḳāḍī, 152
el-Ḳāhir, 'Abbāsid caliph, 82
el-Ḳāhir 263
el-Ḳāhir (Mars) 103
el-Ḳāhira *see* Cairo
el-Ḳāim, Fāṭimid caliph, 80, 97, 98, 148
Ḳāit-Bey, el-Ashraf, Burǧī sultan, 336, 342-349; medresas and other buildings 323, 344; inscriptions 323-324
Ḳal'at-el-Kebsh 237
Ḳāl'at-el-Rūm 287
Ḳalā'ūn (Kilāwūn), el-Manṣūr, Baḥrī sultan 277-284; mosque and hospital 276, 302; inscriptions 276, 277, 323; family of 244, 254, 276-322
el-Ḳalḳashandī, historian, 154, 184, 303
Kalmūn 148
Ḳalyūb 6; rosaries at 166
Ḳamḥīya college 204
el-Kāmil, Ayyūbid, 201, 215, 221-230, 240, 241, 257; medresa 212, 230
el-Kāmil el-Hunāī, marshal, 54
el-Kāmil *see* Sha'bān
Kāmilīya college 230
Ḳānṣūh 323, 349; *see* Ghūrī
Ḳāntemir, decree, 323
Karabaček, J., 6
Karak 197, 207, 257, 260, 261, 272, 277, 279, 305, 330; inscr. 242, 276, 277
Ḳarāḳūsh, wezīr, 193, 203, 251
Ḳaramān 271, 335, 346, 347
Ḳarāsunḳur, emīr, 289
Ḳarā-Yūsuf 332
Karkar 347
Ḳarḳīsiyā 68, 272
Ḳarmaṭis *see* Carmathians
Ḳasīm-emīr-el-mu'minīn 263
Ḳāsim el-Bekrī, ḳāḍī, 54
el-Ḳāsim b. 'Obeydallāh, treas., 29, 48
el-Ḳasīr, painter, 111
el-Ḳaṣr 23
Ḳaṣr-el-Ablaḳ 315
Ḳaṣr-esh-Shema' 17, *see* Babylon
el-Ḳaṭāi', Ibn-Ṭūlūn's capital, 63, 74, 76, 105
Ḳaṭr-en-Nedā 74
Ḳāwṣūn, emīr, 312, 318; mosque 276, 314; solar quadrant 323
Kay, H. C., xi, 117
Ḳayrawān 96, 97, 98, 100, 102, 107, 110, 138
Ḳayṣarīya (Caesarea) 270, 271, 335
Kay-Khusru 266
Kay-Ḳubād 229
Kebsh, castle of, 237
Keening women 43
Kelbīs of Sicily 138
Kemenǧa 249
Kennā, Abū-Neǧāḥ b., 166
Kenz, Arab tribe, 29, 308
Kenz-ed-dawla 308
Kerāfa 131, 204; mosque 111, 123
Kesta Stypiotes 70
Ketbughā, el-'Ādil, Baḥri sultan, 248, 262, 288-290, 292; inscr. 277
Ḳeys, Arab tribe, 28, 33, 35
Ḳeys b. Sa'd 25, 45
Ḳeysūr 147
Khalanǧ javelins 148
el-Khalanǧī, Moḥammad, rebel, 78, 79
Khaldirān 352, 353
Khaldūn, Ibn-, 6

Khālid, tomb of, at Ḥims, 242
Khālid b. Ḥabīb, vice-governor, 50
Khālid b. Yezīd, marshal, 52
Khalifs *see* Caliphs
Khalīǧ (canal of Cairo) 20, 112
Khalīl, el-Ashraf 284-288; tomb 276; inscr. 277
Khalīl, Umm- 255
el-Khallāl, Ibn-, poet, 188
Khallikān, Ibn-, 70, 123, 175, 220, 240
Khān-el-Khalīlī 245
Khān *see* Golden Horde, Ilkhāns
Khānaḳāh 314
el-Khandaḳ 115
Kharāǧ (land-tax) 6, *see* taxes
Kharibtā 24
Khāriǧa b. Ḥudheyfa, marshal, 45
Khāriǧīs 31, 32
Khartbirt 347
Khaṭṭ lances 148
Khedivial library 44
Kheyr bek, emīr, 342, 354, 355; mosque 323
Kheyr b. No'eym, ḳāḍī and vice-governor, 48, 49, 50
Khiḍr, el-Mes'ūd, Ayyūbid, 277
el-Khiyār b. Khālid, ḳāḍī, 48
Khubāsa, Fāṭimid general, 80
Khumāraweyh, son of Ibn-Tūlūn, 71-75
Khūshḳadam eẓ-Ẓāhir, Burǧī sultan, 325, 328, 329, 338, 341; inscriptions 324
Khūṭ, Isḥāḳ b. Yaḥyā, 57
Khuṭba (bidding-prayer) 69, 103, 104, 109, 193
Khuzeyma, Abū-, ḳāḍī, 40, 50, 51
Khwārizm 273
Khwārizmians 231
Kiǧmās, mosque of emīr, 323
Killis, Ibn-, wezīr, 101, 114, 120, 121, 186, 187
Kināna, Arab tribe, 232, 233
el-Kindī 20, 28, 187
Kingsford, C. L., 287
Kipchak 263, 265, 278, 310
Kipchak, emīr, 298
Kirfa, Ibn-, 168
Ḳirwāsh el-'Oḳeylī 159
Kiryawn 10
Kitāma Berbers 95, 124, 125, 128, 133, 141, 145
Kitchen 166, 248, 327, 335
Knighting of Muslims by Christians 200, 201, 213
Ḳorāns, illuminated, 149, 273, 314
Ḳubbat-el-Hawā (Dome of the Air) 31, 63
Ḳubbat-eṣ-Ṣakhra *see* Dome of the Rock
el-Ḳuḍā'ī 187
Kufic inscriptions 189, *see* headings of chapters
Kuft 41
Kuǧūk, mosque of, 276
Kulthūm, Sitta, 115
Kulzum 20, 41, 42, 106
Kumiz 273
Kundāǧik, Ibn-, governor of Mōṣil, 72, 73, 74
Kurdistān 206
Kurds 171, 191, 207, 320
Ḳurra, Arab tribe, 128, 132
Ḳurra b. Sharīk, governor, 26, 47
Kursī zarīn 162
Ḳūṣ 41, 157, 183, 271, 300
Ḳuseyr 41, 304
Ḳuṭlūbughā, mosque, 276
Ḳuṭlughshāh 298
Ḳuṭuz, el-Muẓaffar, Baḥrī sultan, 261, 262, 272, 273

EL-LAG'G'ĪN, battles of, 83, 87
Lāǧīn, el-Manṣūr, Baḥrī sultan, 253, 285, 289-294; cistern 276; inscr. 277
Lahī'a el-Ḥaḍramī, ḳāḍī, 55
Lahī'a, Ibn-, ḳāḍī, 40, 51
Lakhm, Arab tribe, 36, 38, 176
Lamps, enamelled, 314; market of, 141
Land assessment 114; grants of 244, 250; land tax 114, 142, 143, 151, 303, 344, *see* Taxes
Lane, E. W., 275, 284
Lane-Poole, S., *Art of the Saracens in Egypt*, 111, 112, 242, 244, 276, 278, 284; *Catalogue of Arabic Glass Weights* 117, 190; *Catalogue*

of Oriental Coins 242, 255, 276; *Life of Saladin*, 111, 174, 176, 191, 197, 199, 214
Larenda 335
Larnaka 337
Latakia (el-Lādhikīya) 281; inscr. 277
Lavoix, H., 89
Lay figure 165
Lebda 68
Lewāta Berbers 146, 151
Leylat-el-Ghiṭās 85
el-Leyth b. el-Faḍl, governor, 53
Library, Alexandrian, 12; Fāṭimid 130, 131, 149, 193; Mamlūk 284
Libya 24
Limasol (Lemsūn) 269, 336, 337
Lion, tame, 75; of Beybars 263
Literature 90, 91, 186-188, 230, 240, 326, 328
Looms 112
Lord of the Drums 248
Lord of the Seat 247
Lorenço, son of Almeida, 352
Louis VII of France, 174; Louis IX 231-239, 256; Louis XII 195
Lu'lu 68
Lu'lu of el-Mōṣil 260
Lu'lu, Ibn-, 159
Luxury 74, 89, 250-252, 302, 313, 318

MĀDARĀNĪ treasurers 77, 79-82
Māǵūr 66
Magūsa (Famagusta) 336
Maḥalla, canal of, 238
Mahdī, the, 94, 167
el-Mahdī, 'Abbāsid caliph, 53
el-Mahdī, 'Obeydallāh, 1st Fāṭimid caliph, 95-97
el-Mahdīya 98, 137, 138
Maḥfūdh b. Suleym, treasurer, 53
el-Maḥrūsa 103
el-Maḳrīzī 17, 21, 27, 48, 65, 90, 111, 152, 167, 173, 204, 250, 251, 253, 255, 259, 265, 279, 281, 296, 340
Maḳs, dock, 112, 120; mosque 129
Malaṭīya 330
Mālik b. Delhem, governor, 54
Mālik b. el-Ḥārith 45
Mālik b. Keydar, governor, 57
Mālik b. Sharāḥīl, ḳāḍī, 46
Mālikī school 31, 136
Malūkhīya 126
el-Māmāy, palace of emīr, 323
Mamlūks (white slaves) 60, 71, 235, 237, 239, 242-357
el-Ma'mūn, 'Abbāsid caliph, 35, 36, 37; in Egypt 37, 38; 56, 147
el-Ma'mūn el-Baṭāʾiḥī, wezīr, 131, 162, 166, 173
Manasseh, secretary, 120
el-Mandakūr b. Kurkub 5
Manfalūt 304
Manfred 266
Manǵak, mosque of emīr, 276
Mangūtegīn 159
Mangūtīmūr, Mongol general, 279, 280
Mangūtīmūr, wezīr, 293, 294
Manṣūr b. Yezīd, governor, 51
el-Manṣūr, 'Abbāsid caliph, 32
el-Manṣūr, Fāṭimid caliph, 98
el-Manṣūr b. el-'Azīz 215
el-Manṣūr *see* 'Abd-el-'Azīz, 'Alī, Ilāǵǵī, Ḳalā'ūn, Lāǵin, 'Othmān
el-Manṣūra 223, 232-237, 243
el-Manṣūrīya 98, 103, 107
Manuel the Armenian 20
Manufac'ures 112, 122, 147
Manuscripts 149
Manẓara (belvedere) 170
Map of the world 111, 148
Marakīya 281
Mar'ash 287
Marche, Count of 222
Marco Polo 263, 269
Marǵ 'Adhrā 87
Marǵ Dābiḳ 353
Marǵ 'Oyūn (Mergion) 205
Marǵ-es-Suffar 298
Margaret of Tyre 281
el-Māridānī, mosque, 276, 314
Māridīn 332
Māristān Ḳalā'ūn 283-284, 323
Markab (Margat) 217, 269, 270, 278, 281; inscr. 276
Marriage dot 74

Marshal or commander-in-chief 18, 45-58
Marwān I and II in Egypt 29, 30
Marwān b. Marwān, marshal, 49
Marwān, Ibn-, *see* 'Abd-el-'Azīz, 'Abd-el-Melik, Mo'āwiya
Mary the Copt 6
Mary of Jerusalem 218
Mas Latrie, Comte de, 338, 339
Masāl, Ibn-, wezīr, 171
Maslama b. Mukhallad, gov., 26, 46
Maslama b. Yaḥyā, governor, 52
el-Maṣṣīṣa 66, 270
Masters of the Halberds, of the Horse, of the Household, of the Wardrobe, 247
Masts, battle of the, 23
el-Mas'ūdī visits Egypt 85, 86
Mausoleum, Fāṭimid, 110
el-Medīna 15, 20, 23, 84, 105, 114, 148, 265, 272, 308, 339
el-Medīna (Cairo) 109
Medresa or collegiate mosque 204, see list under Mosques
el-Meǵnūn 341
Mehren, Prof., 226
Mekka 69, 84, 88, 105, 114, 123, 138, 148, 159, 265, 272, 308, 320, 337-340, 344, 350; pilgrimage 302, 312, 318; forbidden 32
Melekite church 2, 119, 266
Melik, title of wezīrs, 169
Melik Shāh, Selǵūḳ sultan, 161, 163
Melons, 'Abdallāwī, 37
Memdūd, Abū-Ṣāliḥ ibn-, gov., 33, 51
Memphis 3
Men of the Pen and of the Sword 155
Menagerie 63, 75
Menas 10, 15; *see* Muḳawḳis
Mercurius, St., ch., 119
Mesopotamia 190, 199, 200, 206, 207, 213-215, 229, 262, 265, 266, 320, 331
el-Mes'ūd Yūsuf 257
el-Mes'ūd *see* Khiḍr
Meteors 81
Meydān (horse-course) 63, 74
Meymūn b. es-Sarī, marshal, 55
Michael IV, emperor, 136, 160
Michael VIII Palaeologus 266
el-Mihmendār, mosque, 276
Military tyranny 118
Milne, J. G., 6, 18
Mint 18, *see* Coins
Mintāsh, emīr, 326, 330-333
Minya 181
Miracles 96, 97
Mirdāsids 160
Miska, Sitta, mosque, 276
Miskaweyh, Ibn-, 42
Missionaries, Muslim, 94-96, 99
Miṣr 3; siege by Arabs 4-9: coin 49, *see* el-Fusṭāṭ
el-Mo'allaḳa church 17, 301
Mo'āwiya, first Omayyad caliph, 24
Mo'āwiya b. Ḥudeyǵ, marshal, 45
Mo'āwiya b. Marwān, treas., 50
Mo'āwiya b. Ṣurad, marshal, 53, 54
Moḥammad the Prophet, sword of, 148
Moḥammad II of Turkey 346, 347
Moḥammad 'Alī 201
Moḥammad el-Ḳummī 41
Moḥammad b. 'Abd-el-Melik, gov., 47
Moḥammad b. 'Abd-er-Raḥmān b. Ḥudeyǵ, vice-gov., 51; gov. 51
Moḥammad b. Abī-Bekr, gov., 45
Moḥammad b Abī-l-Leyth, ḳāḍī, 57
Moḥammad b. el-Ash'ath, gov., 50
Moḥammad b. 'Assāma, marshal, 54, 45
Moḥammad b. G'eld, marshal, 54
Moḥammad b. Isā, marshal, 56
Moḥammad b. Kabīs, marshal, 55
Moḥammad b. Masrūḳ, ḳāḍī, 53
Moḥammad b. Mo'āwiya, marshal and vice-gov., 50
Moḥammad b. Nizār, Fāṭimid pretender, 162
Moḥammad b. 'Oḳba, marshal, 56
Moḥammad b. 'Omeyr, marshal, 56
Moḥammad b. es-Sarī, governor, 55
Moḥammad b. Suleymān, general, 76
Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ, sultan of Dehli, 310
Moḥammad b. Ṭāhir, marshal, 79

Moḥammad b. Ṭaṭar, Burǵī sultan, 336
Moḥammad b. Tekīn, governor, 79
Moḥammad b. Tubā, marshal, 54
Moḥammad b. Tughǵ el-Ikhshīd, 79, *see* Ikhshīd
Moḥammad b. Ziyād, treasurer, 54
Moḥammad b. Zuheyr, gov., 52
el-Moḥammadīya 98
Moḥtesib 104, 156, 312
el-Mo'izz, Fāṭimid caliph 98-118, 148; daughters of 147
el-Mo'izz of Mahdīya 137, 138
el-Mo'izz *see* Aybek
Mo'izz-ed-dawla, Murdāsid, 160
el-Mo'izzīya 103, 139, 162
Monasteries 26, 107, 140, 170, 187, 311
Mongols 259, 261, 262, 264-266, 269-271, 279-282, 295-299, 307, 330
Monks, Coptic, 26, *see* Monasteries
Monogamy 100
Monophysite church 2, *see* Copts
Monopolies 43, *see* Trade
Montfort, Simon of, 231
Montréal (Shawbek), 197, 257, 272
el-Mōṣil 123, 199, 206, 214
Mosques of Cairo with dates of foundation (medresas or collegiate mosques marked *; tomb mosques †) :—
*'Abd-el-Bāsiṭ (1420) 323
*'Abd-el-Ghānī (1418) 323
†'Abd-er-Raḥmān 242
*Abū-Bekr b. Muzhir (1480) 323
*Āḳbughā (1334) 276
el-Aḳmar (1125) 117, 166, 169
Āḳsunḳur (1347) 276
Almās (1330) 276
Āl-melik (1319) 276
†Anas (1382) 323
*Arghūn (1348) 276
el-Ashraf Sha'bān (1368) 276
Aslam (1346) 276
*Aytmish (1383) 323
el-Azhar (970-972) 117, 276; inscr. 117, 242, 324
*Barḳūḳ (1386) 323, †(1401-11) 323
*Bars-Bey (1424) 323, †(1432) 323
Mosques of Cairo—*continued.*
*Beybars eẓ-Ẓāhir (1262) 242, †(1267-69) 242
Beybars G'ashnegīr, Khānaḳāh (1310) 276
Beydar 276
Ezbek (1475)
Ezbek el-Yūsufī (1495) 323
el-Faḍawīya (1481) 323
el-Fakahānī (1148) 117
*†Faraǵ (1401-11) 323
†el-Fārisī (1225) 212
*Fīrūz (1427) 323
†el-G'āi el-Yūsufī (1373) 276
G'aḳmaḳ (1449) 323
G'ānī-Bek (1427, †1465) 323
†Gemāl-ed-dīn (1408) 323
†Ghānim (1478) 323
†el-Ghūrī (1503, †1504) 323
el-G'uyūshī (1085) 117
el-Ḥākim (990-1003) 117, 276; inscr. 117, 276
*†Ḥasan, sultan (1356-62) 276
el-Ḥasaneyn (old, 1235), 212
*el-Ḥiǵāzīya (1360) 276
Ḥoseyn (1319) 276
Ibn-Ruzzīk (1160) 117, 276; inscr. 276
Ibn-Ṭūlūn (877) 59, 63, 65, 276; inscr. 117, 150
*Īnāl el-Yūsufī (1392) 323
*†Īnāl (1451-56) 323
†Ismā'īl (1216) 212
**†Ḳā'it-Bey (1474, 1475) 323, 344
†Ḳalā'ūn (1284 — 1303) 276, 283-284; inscr. 277
*el-Kāmil (1224) 212
Ḳānī-Bey (1441) 323
Ḳānī-Bek emīr Akhōr (1503) 323
Ḳānī-Bek Ḳarā (1506) 323
†Ḳānim (1466) 323
†Ḳānṣūh (1499) 323
Ḳawsūn (1329) 276
†Khalīl (1288) 276
Kheyr-Bek (1502) 323
Kiǵmās (1481) 323
Kugūk (1346) 276
Ḳutlūbughā (1348) 276
Manǵak (1350) 276

Mosques of Cairo—*continued.*
†el-Māridānī (1338) 276
el-Mihmendār (1325) 276
Miska, Sitta (1339) 276
el-Mu'ayyad (1420) 323
*Muḳbil (1395) 323
*en-Naṣir Moḥammad (1299; 1318) 276, 302, 314; inscr. 276
Nefîsa, Sitta, 115, 195, 261; inscr. 117
Ordutegīn Khātūn (1324) 276
†Rezmek (1504) 323
*eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb (1243) 212, †(1250) 242
Ṣarghitmish (1327) 276
*Sengar el-G'āwalī and Salār (1323) 276, 314
†Sheǵer-ed-durr (1257 ?) 242
†esh-Shāfi'ī (1211) 212
Sheykhū (1350-55) 276, 314
*Sūdūn (1402) 323
†Tāshtimur (1334) 276
*Taghrī-Berdī (1440) 323
*Taybars (1309) 276
Timrāz (1472) 323
†Tinkiz (1363) 276
†Tulbīya (1364) 276
†Tūmān-Bey el-'Ādil (1501) 323
†Zeyn-ed-dīn Yūsūf (1298) 276
Mosque of Constantinople 266
Mosque of Pity 21
el-Mo'taṣim, Fāṭimid pretender, 193
el-Mo'taṣim, fieffee and gov., 37, 56
el-Mo'temid, 'Abbāsid caliph, 69, 73, 74
Mu'adh b. 'Azīz, marshal, 56
el-Mu'ayyad, Burǵī sultan, 327, 328, 334-336, 346; mosque 323; inscriptions 323, 324
el-Mu'ayyad *see* Aḥmad
el-Mu'aẓẓam b. el-'Ādil, Ayyūbid, 215, 221, 225, 226
Mudebbir, Ibn-, treasurer, 43, 57, 58, 61, 66, 67, 71
el-Mufaḍḍal b. Fudāla, ḳāḍī, 40, 52, 53
el-Mughīra b. 'Obeydallāh, gov., 49
el-Mughīth 'Omar 257, 260, 261, 272
el-Muḥāǵir b. 'Othmān, marshal, 50
Mu'īn-ed-dīn 270
Muir, Sir W., 317
el-'Mu'izz *see* el-Mo'izz
el-Muḳaṭṭam hills 31, 75, 131, 134, 195
el-Muḳawḳis, George, son of Menas, 3, 6, 7-9
Mukhārik, Ibn-el-, marshal, 55
el-Mukhtara, palace, 85
Mukīs, Abū-l-, marshal, 53
Muḳla, Ibn-, 149
Mummies 86
Mūnis, general, 81
el-Muntaṣir, fieffee, 30, 57
el-Muntaẓar, the expected Imām, 167
Mura, Arab tribe, 279
Mūsā el-Ḥanafī, governor, 57
Mūsā b. 'Īsā, governor, 31, 34, 35, 52, 53
Mūsā b. Ka'b, governor, 50
Mūsā b. Mus'ab, governor, 34, 52
Mūsā b. 'Olayy, gov., 32, 33, 51
Mūsā b. Zarīḳ, marshal, 51
Mūsā *see* el-Ashraf
el-Musebbihī 187
Muslim, Abū-G'a'far, 102
Muslim b. Bekkār, marshal, 53
el-Mustaḍī, 'Abbāsid caliph, 190
el-Musta'īn, 'Abbāsid caliph of Egypt, 335
el-Musta'lī, Fāṭimid caliph, 161
el-Mustanṣir, 'Abbāsid caliph of Egypt, 265
el-Mustanṣir, Fāṭimid caliph, 136-154, 160
el-Musta'ṣim, 'Abbāsid caliph, 255
el-Mustekfī 305
el-Mutanebbī 88
el-Mutawekkil, 'Abbāsid caliph, 41
el-Mutawekkil, last caliph of Egypt, 355
el-Muṭī', 'Abbāsid caliph, 106
el-Muttaḳī, 'Abbāsid caliph, 84
el-Muṭṭalib el-Khuzā'ī, governor, 55
el-Muwaffaḳ, 30, 63, 66-69, 72-74
el-Muẓaffar b. Keydar, marshal and governor, 56

el-Muẓaffar *see* Aḥmad, Beybars II, Ḳuṭuz
Muẓāḥim b. Khāḳān, governor, 58

EN-NĀG'ĪRAMĪ 187
Nahyā, monastery of, 170
Nā'īb-es-Salṭana 247, 261, 288
Naphtha tubes 296
en-Nāṣir, 'Abbāsid caliph, 190
en-Nāṣir, caliph of Cordova, 112
en-Nāṣir of Damascus 230*n.*, 256, 258-261, 268
en-Nāṣir Moḥammad b. Ḳala'ūn 248, 284, 288, 289, 292, 294-317, 342, 344; medresa and mosque 276, 302, 314; inscriptions 276
en-Nāṣir Yūsuf 257
en-Nāṣir *see* Farag, Ḥasan
Nāṣir-ed-dawla b. Ḥamdān 145, 146, 148, 149, 150, 160
Nāṣir-i-Khusrau 121, 139, 162
Nāṣirīya (Sherīfīya) College 204
Naṣr (Keydar), governor, 56
Naṣr b. 'Abbās 171, 172, 173
Naṣr b. Kulthūm, treasurer, 52
Naṣr, Bāb-en-, *see* Bāb
Natron mines 43, 304
Navarre 231
Nawfal b. el-Furāt, treasurer, 50
Nawrūz, emīr, 334, 335
Nazareth 220, 227, 267
Nefīsa, Sitta, 115, 195, 261; inscr. 117
Nevers, Count of, 222
Nicephorus, emperor, 159
Nigda 335
Nights, Thousand and One, 251
Nikiu 4, 8, 9, 21, *see* John of Nikiu
Nikosia 337
Nile festival 86, 301
Nilometers 26, 43, 63, 65, 112, 117
Niẓām-el-mulk 341
Nizār, el-Mustafā 162
Nobles, mamlūk, 245
en-No'mān 187, 188
en-No'mān, Ibn-, 119
Normans in Sicily 138
Nubia 5, 6, 15, 21-23, 27, 41, 42, 88, 105, 129, 143, 197, 271, 282, 299, 308, 320
Nūr-ed-dīn 174-177, 193, 196-199, 204, 242, 283
Nūr-Jahān 255
Nuṣeyrīs (Anṣārīya) 308
en-Nuweyrī, historian, 265, 269, 296, 298

OASES 304
'Obeydallāh el-Mahdī 95-97
'Obeydallāh eṭ-Ṭarsūsī, marshal, 54
'Obeydallāh b. el-Ḥabḥāb, treas., 27, 47
'Obeydallāh b. el-Mahdī, gov., 53
'Obeydallāh b. el-Mahdī, Fāṭimid general, 98
'Obeydallāh b. eṣ-Sarī, marshal and governor, 36, 56
'Obeydallāh ibn Zeyneb, gov., 54
Observatory 131
Officers of state 43, 155, 156, 247; of the army 342
'Oḳba b. 'Amir, vice-governor, 45; governor 46
'Oḳba b. Maslama, vice-gov., 47
'Oḳba b. No'eym, marshal and vice-governor 48
'Okeyl b. el-Mo'izz 114
'Oḳeyl, Arab tribe, 106
'Oḳeylids 159
Oman, C. W., 223, 236
'Omar, second caliph 1, 10, 15, 20; mosque of 227
'Omar, gov., 35
'Omar, Taḳī-ed-dīn, Ayyūbīd, 213
'Omar b. Gheylān, treasurer, 52
'Omar *see* el-Mughīth
'Omāra 186, 193, 197, 198
Omayyad caliphs 24, 26; visit Egypt 29; government 18 ff.; rebellion 33
Omayyad caliphs of Cordova 123, 128
'Omeyr b. el-Welīd, governor, 56
Ordūtegīn Khātūn, mosque, 276
Orontes 160
Ortuḳids 164, 229
Osāma b. Munḳidh 171, 172, 174, 175
Osāma b. Zeyd, treasurer, 25, 26, 47
'Otba b. Abī-Sufyān, governor, 45

'Othmān, third caliph, 23, 24
'Othmān, el-Manṣūr, 341, 342
'Othmān b. Ḳeys, ḳāḍī, 45
'Othmānlī sultans 332, 334, 337, 338, 345-348, 352-357
Oxen 135

Paintings 27, 74, 111
Palace, striped, 315
Palaces of Cairo 109, 110
Palestine 105, 106, 159, 160, 161, 163-165, 173-178, 185, 190, 192, 198, 205, 207-211, 217-219, 224-228, 258, 259, 352
Parasol of state 249
Passports 27, 281
Patriarch, Armenian, 170; Coptic, 2, 26, 27, 66, 119, 127, 143, 144
Pay office 157
Peacock 148
Pearl Palace 123, 125
Pelagius, cardinal, 222
Pelusium (el-Faramā) siege 2, 82; road to Cairo 223
Pensions 145
Pepper monopoly 340
Perfume-burner 302
Perrières 234
Persia 264, *see* Ilkhāns
Persian artists 111, 112
Perwāna 270, 271
Peter of Lusignan 320
Philip Augustus 210, 222
Philip VI 310
Philoxenos 15
Physicians 70, 157, 168
Pictures, sacred, 27, *see* Paintings
Pigeon post 246, 280
Pigs in Nubia 197
Pilgrim Castle (Mons Perigrinus) 218
Pirates 335, 336
Plague 97, 101, 104, 136, 143, 146, 216, 289, 318, 320, 328
Poets 142, 157, 188, 249
Poll-tax 5-7, 12, 15, 19, 25, *see* Taxes
Polo 167, 247, 264, 292
Polo-bearer 247
Poor-tax 25, 71
Popes 217, 218, 225, 228, 241, 310
Population 6, 15, 28, 29
Ports *see* Alexandria, Damietta, Būlāḳ, Kulzum, Ḳuseyr, Maḳs, Sawākin; access to Christian 279
Portuguese 350, 352
Post 246, 264
Pottery 112, 141, 147
Presents 108, 109, 273
Primis (Ibrīm) 197
Princess Royal (Seyyidet-el-mulk) 120, 134, 139
Prisoners 337
Prize-money 337
Progresses, state, 141, 248-250, 292, 299
Provinces of Egypt 152, 157
Pyramids 203

Quadrants, solar, 323
Quarries, alum, 304
Quatremère, E., 3, 36, 92, 117, 242, 263, 265, 269, 276, 281, 282, 296, 311
Queens, Muslim, 255, *see* Sheger-ed-durr
Quicksilver lake 75
Quince-cider 89

Rabwa, inscription, 117
Races, intermixture of, 15, 29
er-Rāḍī, 'Abbāsid caliph, 82
er-Rāfiḳa 68, 73
Rāīḳ, Ibn-, 83
Raisins 126
er-Raḳḳa 66, 67, 68, 73, 84, 160
Ramaḍān 123, *see* Fasting
Ramaḍān principality 335
er-Ramla 72, 78, 105, 106, 159, 164, 165, 205, 210, 211, 218
Ransom 337
Ra's-Nawba 247
er-Rashīd, usurping caliph, 159
Rāshida mosque 129
er-Rastan, battle at, 84
Rasūlids of Yemen 308, 339, 340
Rayān 113, 114
Raymond, count of Tripolis, 199, 205, 207
Red Sea 192, 350, 352
Regent 341

Reginald of Châtillon 207, 208
Rent of houses 139, and shops 140
Rest-houses 76, 101
Restoration of mosques 302
Resurrection, church of the, 128, 136, 143, 160
Revenue of Egypt 6, 19, 25, 36, 65, 66, 151
Reyḥānīya troops 168
Rhinoceros 122
Rhodes, knights of, 320, 338
Richard I 209-211, 213, 220
Richard of Cornwall 231
Rīf (delta) 10, 15
Riẓīya 255
Robert, count of Artois 234, 235
Robes 103, 265
er-Rōḍa (er-Rawḍa) island 7, 43, 63, 108, 141, 166; castle 237, 243, 258; medresa 323
Rogers, E. T., 60
Roman architecture 153
Romans, East (er-Rūm), 2-13, 20, 21, 23, 36, 41, 70, 74, 114, 120, 147, 159, 192, 281
Rosetta 350
Rudolf of Habsburg 281
Ruḍwān, Selǧūḳ, 163
Ruḍwān, wezīr, 152, 169
er-Rūm *see* Romans, East
Rūmīya regiment 155
Ruzzīk b. Ṭalāi', wezīr, 176
Ruzzīk, Ibn-, *see* Ṭalāi'

Sabīn, Ibn-, 226
Ṣabra 98
Sacrifice, Feast of, 2, 13, 41
Sa'd el-A'sar, general, 72, 73
Ṣadaḳa 137
Saddle cloth 249
Ṣafed 230, 267, 306, 329
Ṣafwān, Ibn-, governor of Ḳarḳīsiya, 68
Ṣāǧ, Ibn-Abī, governor of Anbār, 73
es-Ṣahbā, Abū-, b. Ḥassān, marshal, 51
Ṣaḥyūn 306
es-Sā'ib b. Hishām, marshal, 45, 46; ḳāḍī 46
eṣ-Ṣa'īd (Upper Egypt) 20, 22, 29, 30, 33, 34, 41, 66, 88, 192, 259
es-Sa'īd *see* Baraka
Sa'īd, Ibn-, 140, 240
Sa'īd b. Yezīd, governor, 46
Sakhā 9, 32, 38
Sāḳi 247
Saladin (Ṣalāḥ-ed-dīn) 139, 149, 169, 173, 177, 178, 181-183, 185-186, 188, 190-211, 242; inscriptions 190
Salār, emīr, 294-296, 298, 300, 302, 304-306; medresa and tomb 276
es-Sālār, Ibn, wezīr, 171, 174, 188
Sale of governments 329
eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb 220, 230, 231, 237, 241, 243, 255, 257, 258, 263; medresa and tomb 242
eṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl, son of 'Adil, 229, 230, 258
es-Ṣāliḥ *see* Ṭalāi' b. Ruzzīk
Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī, 'Abbāsid general, 30, 31; governor 50
Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās 159, 160
es-Ṣāliḥ b. Nūr-ed-dīn 199, 200, 206
Ṣāliḥ b. Shīrzād, treasurer, 56
Ṣāliḥ b. 'Abd-el-Kerīm, marshal, 54
eṣ-Ṣāliḥīya 257
Sālim b. Sawāda, governor, 51
Sāmarrā 63, 65, 69, 73
Ṣan'ā 197
Ṣanga 41
Ṣanhāǧa Berbers 107, 137
Saphadin (Seyf-ed-dīn) *see* el-'Ādil
Sarāi 308
Sardānīya 107
Ṣarghitmish, emīr, 318; mosque 276
es-Sarī b. el-Ḥakam, governor, 55
Ṣarkhad 292, 330
Sarrasin, J. P., 235
Sarūǧ 160
Satin 249
Sawākin 272, 308, 339, 350
Schisms in Islām 31, 38, 39
Science, Hall of, 204
Secretaries 247
Selāmish, el-'Ādil, 277
Selīm I, Osmānlī, 352-355
Selīm, Ibn-, 21
Selǧūḳs 139, 143, 160, 161, 163-165,

242 ; of Rūm 196, 199, 206, 229, 266, 271, 274
Semennūd 9, 32, 238
Seng̀ar el-G'āwalī, mosque, 276, 314
Seng̀ar esh-Shuǧā'ī 288, 289
Severus, bishop of Ushmuneyn, 119
Seville 266
Seyf-ed-dawla 84, 85, 87
Seyf-ed-dīn 199, 200
Seyyidet-el-mulk 120, 134, 135
Sha'bān *see* el-Ashraf
Sha'bān, el-Kāmil, Baḥrī sultan, inscr. 277
esh-Shābushtī 187
Shāfi'ī, Imām, 204 ; tomb 212 ; school of 31, 39, 188, 204
Shāh Siwār 347
Shakhab 298
Sharāb-khānāh (buttery) 248
Sharmesa 233
Shāwar, wezīr, 176-186
Shawbek (Montréal) 257, 272, 306 ; inscr. 277
Sheǧer-ed-durr, Queen, 237-239, 242, 255-258, 260, 261
Shekenda 271
Shekīf Arnūn (Belfort) 230, 268
Shemamun, k. of Nubia, 282
Shemsīya 112
Sherīfs 106, 108, 159, 272, 337
Sheybān, son of Ibn-Ṭūlūn 76, 77
Sheykh-el-Islām 327
Sheykhs, village, 18
Sheykhū, 318 ; mosque 276, 314
Sheyzar 72, 159, 160 ; inscr. 277, 324
Shī'a, 31, 92 ff., 104, 115, 130, 132, 138, 191
Shibboleth, Egyptian, 300
Shinūda 15
Ships, Arab, 23, 71
Ships 121, 155, *see* Fleet
Shīrkūh, general, wezīr, 177-186
Shops 140, 141 ; title-deeds 59
Shu'eyb b. el-Ḥamīd, marshal, 47
Sicily 97, 111, 112, 138, 174, 198, 226, 266, 281
Sidon 163, 217, 267, 287, 335
Siege engines 234
Siǧilmāsa 96, 99
es-Silafī, theologian, 188
Silāḥdār 247, 290
Silk 112, 249
Sīmā et-Tawīl 66
Sinān 159
Sīs 270
Sīwās 332
Slav regiment 155
Slave revolt 136
Slavonic 99
Slipper-bearer 247
Society 251, 252
Spain, immigrants from, 35, 36 ; raid on 112
Sport 250, 267, 316
Squires of the chamber 166
Stamps on glass bottles 27, 44, 47-53, see list of illustrations
Steps, Gate of the, 201
Sūdān 5, 6, 15, 21-23, 27, 41, 42, 88, 105, 129, 143, 197, 271, 282, 299, 308, 320
Sūdānī queen-mother 137, 144
Sūdānī troops 63, 110, 118, 132, 133, 141, 145, 146, 151, 155, 168, 173, 192, 197
Sūdūn, emīr, 323
Suez 304
Ṣūfīs 314
Sugar-cane 312
Suheyl 237
Sūḳ-ed-dīk 240
Suḳ-en-Naḥḥāsīn 85, 109, 314
es-Sukkara pavilion 142
Sukmān 164
Ṣuleyḥids 138
Suleym b. 'Itr, treasurer and ḳāḍī, 45
Suleymān b. Ghālib, marshal, 54 ; governor 55
Suleymān b. eṣ-Ṣimma, marshal, 53
Sulphur springs 26
Sultan, duties of, 246-250
Sulṭeys 15
Sumptuary laws 126, 127, 301
Sunḳur, el-Kāmil, 278
Sunnīs 31
Sūs 271
es-Suyūṭī, historian, 142
Swallows, omen from, 295

Swimming 250, 270
Swordmakers, college of, 173, 204
Swords, famous, 148
Syria 66, 82, 158-165, 201-211, 225-231, 266-270, 295-299, 329, etc., passim
Syrian troops 150, 151, 164

ṬABARDĀRS 247, 249
eṭ-Ṭabarī, historian, 5, 6, 8, 10, 45; MSS. of 149
Ṭabāṭabā family 108
Ṭabl-khānāh 248
Ṭabor, Mt., 218; inscription 212
Taby *see* ʿAttābī
Taghāzhān Turks 60
Taghrī-Berdī, medresa, 323
Tāhart 97
Ṭāhir, Abū-, el-Aʿraǧ, ḳāḍī, 52
Ṭalāiʿ b. Ruzzīk, es-Ṣāliḥ, wezīr, 173, 175, 176, 177, 189; mosque 117, 276, 302; inscription 276
Ṭamweyh 26
Ṭarābiya 304
Ṭarsūs 60, 66, 70, 73, 75, 76, 80, 82, 88, 336, 346, 348
Tāshtemir 318; mosque 276
Taster 247
Ṭaṭar, eẓ-Ẓāhir, Burǧī sultan, 336
Tatars *see* Mongols, Golden Horde
eṭ-Ṭawāḥīn (The Mills) 72
Taxes 5, 6, 12, 15, 19, 25, 43, 66, 71, 90, 114, 143, 151, 166, 273, 291, 303, 304, 312, 344, 349
Ṭaybars, medresa, 276
Ṭayy, Arab tribe, 106, 113
Tekbīr 11
Tekīn el-Khāṣṣa, governor, 79, 80, 82
Tekrīt 191
Tell-G'ezer 205
Temīm b. el-Moʿizz 114, 140
et-Temīmī 187
Templars, knights, 172, 205, 219, 225, 234, 235, 267, 279, 286, 287, 299
Tendūnyās, conquest, 3, 4
Tents, royal, 148, 249, 250
Terenuthis 10
Teutonic knights 219
eth-Thāïr 129
Thenaud, Jehan 195
Theodora, empress, 143
Theodorus, prefect augustal, 9, 10
Theodosius, dux of Thebaid, 3
Theophanes 7
Thouasne, L., 348
Tiberias 208, 230
Tīmūr (Tamerlane) 331-334
Timurbugha, eẓ-Ẓāhir, Burǧī sultan, 325, 341
Tinkiz, tomb, 276
Tinnīs, 9, 41, 82, 106, 112, 114, 151, 165, 174
Tisht-khānāh 248
Title-deeds of shops 59
Titles, mamlūk 253
Tōḳtāmish 332
Tomb-mosques *see* mosques
Ṭōr 304
Toron (Tubnīn) 217
Tortosa (Antaradus, Anṭarṭūs) 163, 269, 279
Torture 68, 84, 288, 329
Touching for sickness 283
Tower, Red, 261
Trade 240, 266, 303, 313, *see* Custom dues
Trade, Indian, 339, 340, 350, 352
Treasure, buried, 66, 86; of Fāṭimids 111, 147, 148, 285, 307
Treasurer 18, 19, 45-58, 65, 77
Treasury 156
Treaty of Miṣr 5, 6; with Nubians 21-23; with Amalric 179-181; between Ikhshīd and Ibn-Rāïḳ 83; Ikhshīd and Seyf-ed-dawla 85; with European powers 266, 279, 281
Tribute 7, 11, 15, 22, 23, 41, 65, 69, 83, 85, 87, 304; from Cyprus 338; to Jerusalem 177
Tribute of slaves *see* Baḳt
Tripolis (Barbary) 68, 107, 138, 308
Tripolis (Syria) 114, 158, 159, 163, 165, 208, 217, 218, 227, 266, 269, 281, 306, 320, 329, 335, 336; inscriptions 277, 324
Truffles 122
Tubā b. Nemir, ḳāḍī, 48

Tubnīn (Toron) 217
Tughḡ 82, *see* Ikhshīd
Ṭughril Beg 143, 160
Ṭughtegīn 165
Ṭulbīya 308; tomb 276
Ṭulugma tactics 279
Ṭūlūn, Aḥmad ibn, governor, 26, 60-71, 304; mosque 195, 292
Tūmān-Bey el-'Ādil, Burǵī sultan, tomb, 323; inscription 324
Tūmān-Bey el-Ashraf, Burǵī sultan, 354, 355; inscription 324
Tunis 308, 337
Tūrānshāh, Ayyūbid, 197
Tūrānshāh b. eṣ-Ṣāliḥ, Baḥrī sultan 237-239
Turbans 122, 148, 280
Turcopoles 182
Turkish governors 30, 33, 42, 82; guard 242; language 341; troops 37, 118, 125, 132, 133, 137, 141, 145 ff., 151, 252
Turkmans 177, 197, 271, 279, 310, 330, 335, 337, 345, *see* Selǵūḳs
Turkmāns of the Black Pelt 332
Turkmāns of the White Pelt 346
Ṭurunṭāi 285
Ṭustar 137, 148
Tutūsh, Selǵūḳ, 161, 163
Tūzūn 84
Tyre 159, 161, 163, 165, 208, 210, 246, 267, 268, 281, 287
Tzimisces 114

Uirat Tatars 294, 295
Uḳḥuwāna 160
Ulǵāitū, Ilkhān, 299
Umbrella bearer 156
Umm-Duneyn or Danīn 3
Unǵūr Abū-l-Ḳāsim b. el-Ikhshīd 86, 87
Ushmūm, canal of, 233
Ushmuneyn 80, 114, 119, 173
Ustād (Ustādh) 87, 124
Ustāddār 247
Ustāddār-es-Suhba 248
Uzbegs 308
Uzbek, emīr, *see* Ezbek
Ūzūn Ḥasan 346, 347

Venetians 320, 337, 340; treaties with 218, 240
Vestiary 248
Viceroy 247, 261, 288
Victory, Gate of, *see* Bāb-en-Naṣr
Vines 126
Vizier *see* wezīr
Vogüé, Vte. de, 190
Volga 265, 308

Wāḍiḥ, governor, 51
Wādy-el-Khāzindār 295
Wailing at funerals 43
Waḳf 177
el-Wāḳidī, historian, 3, 13
Walls of Cairo 117, 140, 152, 190, 201
War, Holy, 207 ff., 217 ff., 231 ff.
Wardān 6
el-Wāsiṭī 61
Wealth 111, 121, 147, 165, 285, 307, 313
Wedding expenses 316
Weights, glass, 44, 47-53
Weil, G., 242, 269, 272, 276, 310, 317, 348
Wekālas 323, 344
el-Welīd b. Rifā'a, marshal, 47; governor 48
Well of the Winding Stairs 203
Wezīr 99, 101, 104, 117, 120, 121, 124, 128, 142, 144, 155, 166, 177, 180, 247
Wezīr, Abu-l-, treasurer, 57
Wezīrs, palace of, 121, 193
William Longsword 235
William of Tyre 177, 181, 182, 201
Winchester, earl of, 222
Wine 26, 43, 126, 251, 273, 288, 297, 312, 341
Women, regulations affecting, 43, 126
Woollen stuffs 112
Wüstenfeld, F., 24, 92, 117, 122, 154, 304

Yāfa *see* Jaffa
Ya'ḳūb b. Killis, wezīr, 101, 114, 120, 121
Ya'ḳūbī 19

Yānis 84
Yānis, wezīr, 167
Yaḥyā b. Meymūn, ḳāḍī, 47, 48
Yazmān 73
Yāzūr 165
el-Yāzūrī, wezīr, 111, 137, 142-144, 148
Yel-Bey, eẓ-Ẓāhir, Burǵī sultan, 341
Yelbughā, emīr, 318, 330
el-Yemen 123, 138, 197, 220, 257, 272, 308, 310, 320, 339
Yeshbek, emīr, 334; palace 323
Yeshkūr, hill, 63
Yezīd b. ʿAbdallāh, gov., 42, 57
Yezīd b. Ḥānī, marshal, 50
Yezīd b. Ḥātim, governor, 32, 50
Yolande, heiress of Jerusalem, 225
Yule, Sir H., 269
Yūnus, marshal, 56
Yūnus b. ʿAṭīya, marshal and ḳāḍī, 46
Yūsuf, el-ʿAzīz, 341
Yūsuf, Zeyn-ed-dīn, tomb-mosque, 276

EẒ-ẒĀFIR, Fāṭimid caliph, 170, 171, 173
eẓ-Ẓāhir, Fāṭimid caliph, 134-136, 148, 159
eẓ-Ẓāhir, son of Saladin, 213, 214, 215
eẓ-Ẓāhir *see* Barḳūḳ, Beybars, G'aḳmaḳ, Khūshḳadam, Ṭaṭar, Timurbughā, Yel-Bey
Ẓāhirī mamlūks 278
Ẓawīla gate 117, 262, 289, 326, 355
Zebīd 197
Zemzem 145
Zeng 69
Zengī, Atābeg of Mōṣil, 173, 174, 191
Zengids 199, 200, 206, 207, 214
Zeyd b. ʿAbd-el-ʿAzīz, marshal, 53
Zeyn-el-ʿĀbidīn, mosque, 63
Zeyneb, Ibn-, governor, 54
Zeyrids 107
Zimāmdārs 247
Ziyādat-Allāh 95
Zotenberg, H., 4
ez-Zubeyr 3, 5, 6
ez-Zubeyr, Ibn-, 188
Zuheyr *see* Bahā-ed-dīn
Zūlāk, Ibn-, 187
Zunnārī 249
Zurʿa 128
Zuweyla Gate *see* Zawīla

DATE DUE

CENTRAL BAPTIST THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY
0 0021 0005868 0

932
P495
v. 6 Petrie, Sir William Matthew
AUTHOR Flinders, ed.
A history of Egypt.
TITLE
83142
DATE DUE | BORROWER'S NAME

932
P495 Petrie, Sir William Matthew
v.6 Flinders, ed.
A history of Egypt.

83142